

དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་དམར་རིམ་བརྒྱུད།

Essential English Grammar

ཆེ་ཤིང་ཚོར་བྱ་དང་ཟེན་པ་གཉིས་ནས་བསྐྱར་སྒྱུ་བྱས།



གངས་ལྗོངས་ཤེས་རིག་ཁྱབ་སྤེལ་ཁྲུང་གནས།

དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་དམའ་རིམ་བརྒྱ་དཔྱད།

Essential English Grammar

- བཀོལ་བཤེ་བ། དཔེ་དེབ་འདིའི་ཤོག་ངོས་ཀྱི་གཡོན་དུ་བརྒྱ་སྤྱོད་ཀྱི་དཀའ་གནད་ལ་འགྲེལ་བཤད་དང་གཡས་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཐབས་ལྟར་ཡོད་པ་དེས་གཡོན་ཤོག་གི་དཀའ་གནད་རྟོགས་ཡོད་ཅིང་ལ་བརྟག་དབྱེད་བྱས་ཆོག།
- ཁ་གསལ་བ། དཔེ་དེབ་འདི་ནི་དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་ཚུ་ཚད་རྩེད་དམའ་བ་དག་ལ་དམིགས་ནས་བསྒྲིགས་པ་ཡིན་པས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་དུ་མིང་དང་ཆོག་སྐྱོ་དག་བཀོལ་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཡོད་ལ། གཞན་ཡང་དཔེ་བརྒྱུད་རྣམས་རིམ་པ་རྩེད་དུ་འབྲེལ་ཡོད་པས་ཉ་ཅང་གོ་སྐྱབ་པ་ཡིན།
- ཟུར་བཀོད། འདིར་ཟུར་བཀོད་བདུན་བཀོད་ཡོད་ལ་དེ་དག་གིས་བྱེད་ཅག་ལ་གཟུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཆོག་དང་གཟུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་བསྐྱས་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ། དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོག་སོགས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་ས་ཁ་གསལ་གང་ཅུས་བྱས་ཡོད།
- རང་སྤྱོད། དེབ་འདི་ནི་དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་ཚུ་ཚད་དམའ་བ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་རང་སྤྱོད་ངམ་གསལ་སྤྱོད་གི་དཔེ་དེབ་བཞིན་བཀོལ་ཆོག།
- དྲིས་ལན། དེབ་འདིའི་མཇུག་དུ་གཤམ་སྤྱོད་གི་དྲིས་ལན་བཀོད་ཡོད་པས་ཤོག་པ་ཆོས་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་བསྐྱབ་པའི་དྲིས་ལན་རྣམས་འགྲིག་མིན་ལ་བལྟས་ཆོག།

ISBN 962-450-864-X



9 789624 508642

ISBN 962-450-864-X/D.44769

定价: 26.00元



དགར་ ཆག

5	སློབ་མར་ཕུལ་བ།	
7	དགེ་ཆན་ལ་ཕུལ་བ།	
	སྤྲེའུ་ཆེན།	
1	དང་པོ།	AM/IS/ARE སྤྲེའུ་ཆེན།
3	གཉིས་པ།	AM/IS/ARE འདྲི་ཆེག
5	གསུམ་པ།	I AM DOING ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།
7	བཞི་པ།	ARE YOU DOING? ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་འདྲི་ཆེག
9	ལྔ་པ།	I DO/ WORK/ LIKE སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ།
11	དྲུག་པ།	I DON'T...སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་དགག་ཆེག
13	བདུན་པ།	DO YOU.....?སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་འདྲི་ཆེག
15	བརྒྱད་པ།	I AM DOING AND I DO སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་དང་ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།
17	དགུ་པ།	I HAVE.../ I'VE GOT...
19	བརྒྱ་པ།	WAS/ WERE
21	བརྒྱ་གཅིག	WORKED / GOT /WENT སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ།
23	བརྒྱ་གཉིས་པ།	I DIDN'T... DID YOU ...? སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཆེག་དང་དགག་ཆེག
25	བརྒྱ་གསུམ་པ།	I WAS DOING འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།
27	བརྒྱ་བཞི་པ།	I WAS DOING འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ། I DID སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ།
29	བཅོ་ལྔ་པ།	I HAVE DONE གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ། 7
31	བརྒྱ་དྲུག་པ།	I'VE JUST... I'VE ALREADY... I HAVEN'T...YET གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ ༩
33	བརྒྱ་བདུན་པ།	HAVE YOU EVER.....? གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ ༩
35	བཅོ་བརྒྱད་པ།	HOW LONG HAVE YOU.....? གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ ༥
37	བརྒྱ་དགུ་པ།	FOR, SINCE དང་ AGO.
39	ཉི་ཤུ་པ།	I HAVE DONE གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་ I DID སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ།
41	ཉེར་གཅིག་པ།	IS DONE དང་ WAS DONE གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ།
43	ཉེར་གཉིས་པ།	IS BEING DONE AND HAS BEEN DONE. གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ། ༩



45	ཉེར་གསུམ་པ།	BE/HAVE/DO མོགས་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་འདས་པའི་ནང་དུ་བཞོད་སྟངས།
47	ཉེར་བཞི་པ།	གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཚིག་དང་གཞུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་
49	ཉེར་ལྔ་པ།	I USED TO.....
51	ཉེར་དྲུག་པ།	WHAT ARE YOU DOING TOMORROW?
53	ཉེར་བདུན་པ།	I AM GOING TO...
55	ཉེར་བརྒྱད་པ།	SHALL / WILL ༡
57	ཉེར་དགུ་པ།	WILL/SHALL ༢
59	སུམ་རུ་པ།	MIGHT
61	སོ་གཅིག་པ།	CAN དང་COULD
63	སོ་གཉིས་པ།	MUST MUSTN'T NEEDN'T
65	སོ་གསུམ་པ།	SHOULD
67	སོ་བཞི་པ།	I HAVE TO...
69	སོ་ལྔ་པ།	WOULD YOU LIKE...? I'D LIKE...
71	སོ་དྲུག་པ།	THERE ARE
73	སོ་བདུན་པ།	THERE WAS/ WERE དང་THERE HAS/ HAVE BEEN THERE WILL BE
75	སོ་བརྒྱད་པ།	IT
77	སོ་དགུ་པ།	I AM དང་I DON'T མོགས།
79	བཞི་བརྒྱུ་པ།	HAVE YOU? དང་ARE YOU? DON'T YOU?
81	ཞིག་ཅིག་པ།	TOO དང་EITHER SO AM I དང་NEITHER DO I
83	ཞིག་ཉིས་པ།	ISN'T དང་HAVEN'T གཞན་ཡང་DON'T མོགས།
85	ཞིག་སུམ་པ།	IS IT ...? དང་HAVE YOU...?/DO THEY...? ༡
87	ཞིག་བཞི་པ།	WHO SAW YOU? དང་WHO DID YOU SEE?
89	ཞིག་ལྔ་པ།	WHO IS SHE TALKING TO? དང་WHAT IS IT LIKE?
91	ཞིག་དྲུག་པ།	WHAT...? དང་ WHICH...? / HOW...?
93	ཞིག་བདུན་པ།	HOW LONG DOES IT TAKE...? .....དུས་ལྟན་ཅི་ཙམ་འགོར།
95	ཞིག་བརྒྱད་པ།	DO YOU KNOW WHERE...? དང་I DON'T KNOW WHAT...
97	ཞིག་དགུ་པ།	SHE SAID THAT... དང་ HE TOLD ME THAT ...
99	ལྔ་བརྒྱུ་པ།	WORK/ WORKING དང་GO/GOING ཡང་ན་DO/ DOING མོགས།



101	ང་ག་ཅིག་པ།	TO (I WANT TO DO) རང་' ING (I ENJOY DOING)
103	ང་ག་ཉིས་པ།	I WANT YOU TO རང་' I TOLD YOU TO
105	ང་ག་སྐྱམ་པ།	I WENT TO THE SHOP TO
107	ང་བཞི་བ།	GO TO... GO ON... GO FOR ... GO -ING
109	ང་ལྔ་བ།	GET
111	ང་རྒྱག་པ།	DO རང་' MAKE
113	ང་བདུན་པ།	HAVE
115	ང་བརྒྱད་པ།	I/ME HE/ HIM THEY/ THEM
117	ང་དགུ་བ།	MY / HIS /THEIR
119	རྒྱག་ཅུ་བ།	WHOSE IS THIS? IT'S MINE / YOURS / HERS མོགས།
121	རེ་ག་ཅིག་པ།	I / ME MY / MINE མོགས།
123	རེ་ག་ཉིས་པ།	MYSELF / YOURSELF / THEMSELVES མོགས།
125	རེ་ག་སྐྱམ་པ།	-S (ANN'S CAMERA)
127	རེ་བཞི་བ།	A /AN
129	རེ་ལྔ་བ།	FLOWER(S) BUS (ES)
131	རེ་རྒྱག་པ།	A CAR / SOME MONEY
133	རེ་བདུན་པ།	A CAR/ SOME MONEY
135	རེ་བརྒྱད་པ།	A /AN རང་'THE མོགས།
137	རེ་དགུ་བ།	THE
139	བདུན་ཅུ་བ།	GO TO WORK GO HOME GO TO THE CINEMA མོགས།
141	དོན་ག་ཅིག་པ།	I LIKE MUSIC I HATE EXAMS
143	དོན་ག་ཉིས་པ།	THE ... བ་ཆའི་མིང་།
145	དོན་ག་སྐྱམ་པ།	THIS / THAT/ THESE /THOSE
147	དོན་བཞི་བ།	ONE / ONES
149	དོན་ལྔ་བ།	SOME རང་' ANY
151	དོན་རྒྱག་པ།	NOT + ANY NO NONE
153	དོན་བདུན་པ།	NOT + ANYBODY / ANYONE / ANYTHING / NOBODY / NO - ONE / NOTHING
155	དོན་བརྒྱད་པ།	SOMEBODY / ANYTHING / NOWHERE མོགས།



157	དོན་དགུ་བ།	EVERY དང་ ALL
159	བརྒྱད་ཅུ་བ།	ALL MOST SOME ANY NO / NONE
161	གྲ་གཅིག་པ།	BOTH/EITHER/NEITHER སྟགས།
163	གྲ་གཉིས་པ།	A LOT MUCH MANY
165	གྲ་གསུམ་པ།	(A) LITTLE (A) FEW སྟགས།
167	གྲ་བཞི་བ།	OLD /NICE /INTERESTING སྟགས།
169	གྲ་ལྔ་བ།	QUICKLY / BADLY / SUDDENLY སྟགས།
171	གྲ་རྩ་ག་པ།	OLD / OLDER EXPENSIVE / MORE EXPENSIVE སྟགས།
173	གྲ་བདུན་པ།	OLDER THAN MORE EXPENSIVE THAN སྟགས།
175	གྲ་བརྒྱད་པ།	NOT AS ...AS
177	གྲ་དགུ་བ།	THE OLDEST THE MOST EXPENSIVE
179	དགུ་བཅུ་བ།	ENOUGH
181	གོ་གཅིག་པ།	TOO
183	གོ་གཉིས་པ།	HE SPEAKS ENGLISH VERY WELL. ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གོ་རིམ་ ༡
185	གོ་གསུམ་པ།	ALWAYS / USUALLY / OFTEN སྟགས། ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གོ་རིམ་ ༢
187	གོ་བཞི་བ།	STILL YET ALREADY སྟགས།
189	གོ་ལྔ་བ།	GIVE ME THAT BOOK! GIVE IT TO ME! སྟགས།
191	གོ་རྩ་ག་པ།	AT 8 O' CLOCK ON MONDAY IN APRIL སྟགས།
193	གོ་བདུན་པ།	FROM ... TO UNTIL SINCE FOR སྟགས།
195	གོ་བརྒྱད་པ།	BEFORE AFTER DURING WHILE སྟགས།
197	གོ་དགུ་བ།	IN AT ON ས་ཆ་ ༡
199	བརྒྱ་ཐམ་པ།	IN AT ON ས་ཆ་ ༢
201	བརྒྱ་དང་གཅིག་པ།	TO IN AT ས་ཆ་ ༣
203	བརྒྱ་དང་གཉིས།	UNDER BEHIND OPPOSITE འབྲེལ་ཆོག
205	བརྒྱ་དང་གསུམ།	UP OVER THOUGHT སྟགས། འབྲེལ་ཆོག
207	བརྒྱ་དང་བཞི།	ON AT BY WITH ABOUT འབྲེལ་ཆོག
209	བརྒྱ་དང་ལྔ།	AFRAID OF... GOOD AT ... སྟགས།
211	བརྒྱ་དང་རྩ་ག་པ།	LISTEN TO / LOOK AT སྟགས།

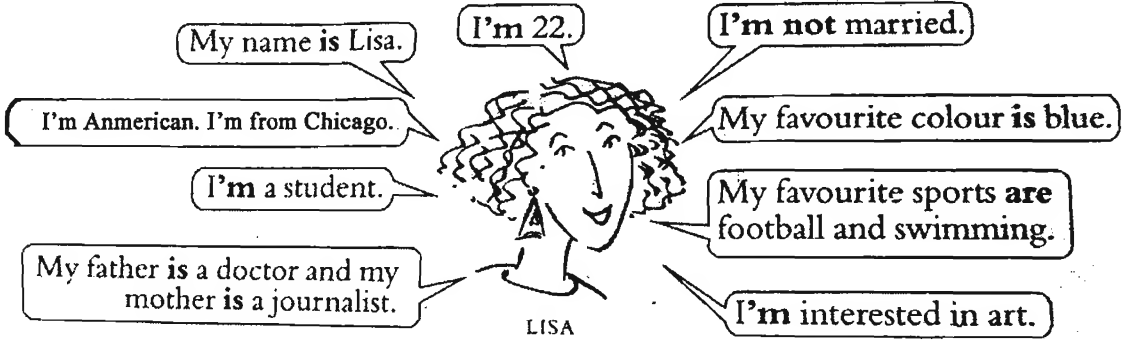


- 213 བརྒྱད་དང་བརྒྱན། GO IN FALL OFF RUN AWAY སྟགས། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོགས ༡
- 215 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱད། PUT ON YOUR SHOES PUT YOUR SHOES ON ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོགས ༢
- 217 བརྒྱད་དང་དགུ AND BUT OR SO BECAUSE སྟགས།
- 219 བརྒྱད་དང་བརྒྱ། WHEN ...
- 221 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱ་གཅིག IF WE GO... IF YOU SEE ... སྟགས།
- 223 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱ་གཉིས། IF I HAD... IF WE WENT... སྟགས།
- 225 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱ་གསུམ། A PERSON WHO... A THING THAT /WHICH... འབྲེལ་བའི་ཆ་བཞིག ༡
- 227 བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱ་བཞི། THE PEOPLE WE MET THE HOTEL YOU STAYED AT འབྲེལ་བའི་ཆ་བཞིག ༢
- རྒྱུ་བཞོད།
- 229 དང་པོ། ཆོག་གྲུབ་རང་དབང་དང་གཞན་དབང་ཅན།
- 230 གཉིས་པ། གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཆོག ༡
- 231 གསུམ་པ། གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཆོག ༢
- 232 བཞི་བ། བསྐྱས་ཆོག་གམ་སྐྱང་ཆོག
- 234 ལྔ་བ། དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ།
- 237 ནུག་པ། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོགས།
- 238 བརྒྱན་པ། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོགས + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་རྒྱུར་ཚུལ།
- 239 གྲིས་ལན།



ཐེ་ཚན་དང་ཡི། AM/IS/ARE སྐད་སྒྲུབ།

༡



ཁ is/am/are སྐད་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཡིན་པའི་དོན་ཏེ། ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྤངས་ཀྱི་སྒྱུ་འགྲེས་ནི་གཤམ་གསལ་ལྟར།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + is/am/are + བྱེད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གམ་ཡང་ན་མིང་ཆོག

དགག་མེན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ is/am/are	བསྟུས་འབྲིད་རྣམ་པ།
I am	(I'm)
He is	(he's)
She is	(she's)
It is	(it's)
We are	(we're)
You are	(you're)
They are	(they're)

དགག་ལྡན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + is/am/are not	བསྟུས་འབྲིད་རྣམ་པ།
I am not	(I'm not)
He is not	(he isn't ཡང་ན། he isn't)
She is not	(she isn't ཡང་ན། she isn't)
It is not	(it isn't ཡང་ན། it isn't)
We are not	(we aren't ཡང་ན། we aren't)
You are not	(you aren't ཡང་ན། you aren't)

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is very tall. He's a policeman.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I'm tired but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jane isn't at home at the moment. She's at work.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today but it isn't warm.



ག that's ཅི་that is ཡི་བསྟུས་འབྲིད་རྣམ་པ་ཡིན་ལ། there's ཅི་there is

བསྟུས་འབྲིད་རྣམ་པ་དང་། here's ཅི་ here is བསྟུས་འབྲིད་རྣམ་པ་ཡིན།

- Thank you. That's very kind of you.
- Look! There's Chris.
- 'Here's your key. Thank you.'





གསར་སྒྱུར།

1.1 ག་ཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་འདི་དག་གི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲིའི་ནམ་པ་མིས། (she's/we aren't སྐགས་ལྟར)

- 1) She is ...she's..... 2) It is not 3) I am not
4) They are..... 5) That is 6) You are not

1.2 am, is, are གསུམ་བེད་སྒྱུར་བྱས་ནས་ག་ཤམ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་སྒྲིང་དགོས།

- 1) The weatheris..... nice today. 2) Inot tired. 3) This bagheavy.
4) These bags.....heavy. 5) Look! ThereCarol. 6) My brother and Igood tennis players.
7) Annat home. Her children.....at school. 8) Ia taxi driver. My sister.....a nurse.

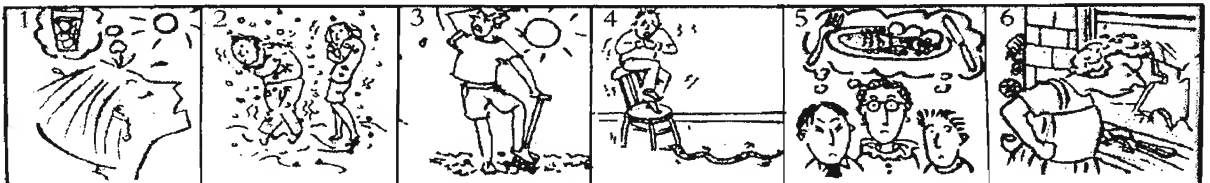
1.3 is/isn't/are/aren't སྐགས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྟངས་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆེག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) (your shoes very dirty) Your shoes are very dirty.
2) (my brother a teacher)
3) (this house not very big)
4) (the shops not open today)
5) (my keys in my bag)
6) (Jenny 18 years old.)
7) (you not very tall)

1.4 ལྷའི་སེས་བཟོས་པའི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ལ་དཔེ་བལྟས་ནས་ (ཐུ་ཆ་ནང་པའི་ཀ) རང་ཉིད་སྒྲིང་གི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- * 1) (name?) My 6) (favorite color or colors?)
2) (from?) I My
3) (age?) I 7) (interested in..?)
4) (job?) I I
5) (married?) I

1.5 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་afraid/ angry/ cold /hot /hungry/ thirsty སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. she is thirsty. 3. He..... 5.....
2 They 4..... 6.....

1.6 am/am not/is /isn't/are/aren't སྐགས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ག་ཤམ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆེག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་དགག་མིན་

དང་དགག་མེད་ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) (I/interested in politics) I am interested (or I am not interested) in politics.
2) (I /hungry) I
3) (it/warm today) it.....
4) (I /afraid of dogs)
5) (my hands/cold)
6) (Canada/a very big country)
7) (diamonds/ cheap)
8) (I /interested in football)
9) (Rome/in Spain)

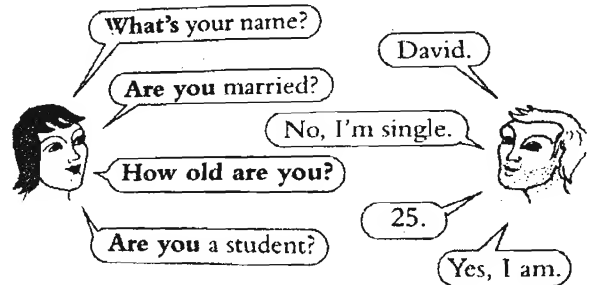


ཐེ་ཚན་གཉིས་པ། AM/IS/ARE འདྲི་ཚིག་

ཀ དགག་ཐིན་ཚིག་གྲུབ། འདྲི་ཚིག་

I am
He is
She is
It is
We are
You are
They are

Am I ?
Is he?
Is she?
Is it ?
Are we?
Are you?
Are they?



- 'Am I late?' 'No, you're on time.'
- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- 'Are your parents at home?' 'No, they are out'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

གཞན་ཡང་། ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? ('Is at home your mother? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Are they new? / are your shoes new? (Are new your shoes? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ཁ where...? / what...? / who...? / how...? / why...? སོགས་བཀོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་འདྲི་ཚུལ།

- Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- What color is your car? 'It's red.'
- How are your parents? Are they well?
- How much are these postcards? Fifty pence.
- Where are you from? 'Canada.'
- How old is Joe? 'He's 24.'
- Why are you angry?

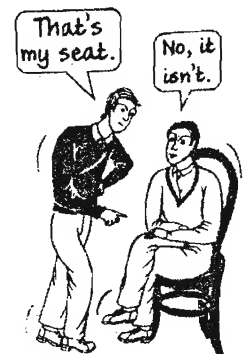
What's ནི་ what is ཡི་བཟུས་འབྲི་ནམ་པ་ཡིན། who's ནི་ who is ཡི་བཟུས་འབྲི་ནམ་པ་ཡིན། how's ནི་ how is ཡི་བཟུས་འབྲི་ནམ་པ་ཡིན། where's ནི་ where is ཡི་བཟུས་འབྲི་ནམ་པ་ཡིན།

- What's the time? Who's that man? Where's Jill? How's your fater?

ག སྐབས་བདེ་འདྲི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་ཚུལ།

Yes, I am.
Yes, he is.
Yes, she is.
Yes, it is.
Yes, we are.
Yes, you are.
Yes, they are.

No, I'm not.
No, he is not. ཡང་ན་ No, he isn't
No, she is not. No, she isn't
No, it is not. No, it isn't
No, we are not No, we aren't
No, you are not. No, you aren't
No, they are not. No, they aren't



- Are you tired? 'Yes, I am.'
- Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not but I'm thirsty.'
- Is your friend English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- Are these your keys?' 'Yes, they are.'
- That's my seat. 'No, it isn't.'



གསལ་སྒྲུབ།

2.1 ཡང་དག་པའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེམས་དགོས།

- | | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|-------------|
| 1) Where's the camera? | A: London. |G..... |
| 2) Is your car blue? | B: No, I'm not. | ..... |
| 3) Is Linda from London? | C: Yes, you are. | ..... |
| 4) Am I late? | D: My sister. | ..... |
| 5) Where's Ann from? | E: Black. | ..... |
| 6) What color is your bag? | F: No, it's black. | ..... |
| 7) Are you hungry? | G: in your bag. | ..... |
| 8) How is George? | H: No, she's American. | ..... |
| 9) Who's that woman? | I: Very well. | ..... |

2.2 Is དང་ Are གཉིས་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1) (at home/your mother?) | <u>Is your mother at home?</u> |
| 2) (your parents /well?) . | <u>Are your parents well?</u> |
| 3) (interesting/ your job?) | ..... |
| 4) (the shops/ open today?) | ..... |
| 5) (interested in sport/ you?) | ..... |
| 6) (near here/the post office?) | ..... |
| 7) (at school/ your children?) | ..... |
| 8) (why / you/ late?) | ..... |

2.3 ཐོག་མར་དྲིས་ལན་ལ་བལྟས་རྗེས་What.../who../where..../how སྟགས་བེད་སྟུང་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་འདྲི་ཆོག་ཆ་ཆ་དང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) <u>How are</u> your parents? | They are very well. |
| 2) .....the bus stop? | At the end of the street. |
| 3) .....your children? | Five, six and ten. |
| 4) .....these oranges? | 1.20 a kilo. |
| 5) .....your favourite sport? | Skiing. |
| 6) .....the man in this photograph? | That's my father. |
| 7) .....your new shoes? | Black. |

2.4 ཐོར་མར་དྲིས་ལན་བསྐྱགས་རྗེས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) (name?) what's <u>your name?</u> | Paul. |
| 2) (married or single?)..... | I'm married. |
| 3) (American?)..... | No, I'm Australian. |
| 4) (how old?)..... | I'm 30. |
| 5) (a teacher?)..... | No, I'm a lawyer. |
| 6) (wife a lawyer?)..... | No, she's a designer. |
| 7) (from?)..... | She's Italian. |
| 8) (her name?)..... | Anna. |
| 9) (how old?)..... | She's 27. |

2.5 ལྟབས་བཤེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེམས་དགོས། (Yes, I am/ No, he isn't སྟགས་ལྟར)

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1) Are you married? No, <u>I'm not.</u> | 4) Are your hands cold?..... |
| 2) Are you thirsty?..... | 5) Is it dark now?..... |
| 3) Is it cold today?..... | 6) Are you a teacher?..... |



ཟླ་ཆེན་གསུམ་པ། I AM DOING ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།

༡

I'm eating.

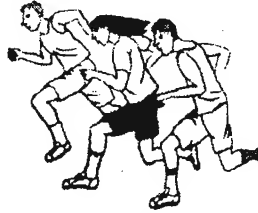


She's eating.
She isn't reading.



It's raining.
The sun isn't shining.

We're running.



They're running.
They aren't walking.

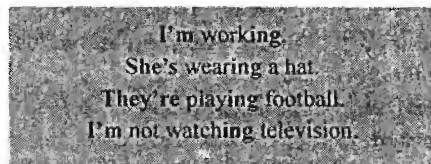
ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྐྱེད་སྒྲིལ་འགྲོས།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + Am/ is/ are + ལས་ཆོག་ + ing (do + ing = doing) + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

I	am	(not)	+ing	I'm working.
He	is	(not)	+ ing	Chris is writing a letter.
She				She isn't eating. (or she's not eating)
It				The phone is ringing.
We				We're having dinner.
You	are	(not)	+ing	You're not listening to me. (or You aren't)
They				The children are doing their homework.

ཁ ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་ནི་ལས་སམ་བྱ་བ་ཞིག་ང་ཚོས་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བྱུང་བཞིན་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་

སྐབས་སྐྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།



འདས་པ། _____ ད་ལྟ་བ། _____ མ་འོངས་པ།

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (=ད་ལྟ་ལས་བཞིན་པ)
- Look at Sue! She's wearing her new hat. (=ད་ལྟ་ཁྱོད་བཞིན་པ)
- The weather is nice at the moment. It's not raining.
- "Where are the children?" "They're playing in the park."
- We're having dinner now. Can you phone again later? (ཁ་པར་ནང་དུ)
- You can turn off the TV. I'm not watching it.

ལས་ཆོག་གི་དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ། (ཞིབ་མཐོང་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ལ་ལྟོས)

come____coming write____writing dance____dancing
run____running sit____sitting swim____swimming
lie____lying.



ཐེ་ཕུན་བཞི་བ། ARE YOU DOING? ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་འདྲི་ཆེག

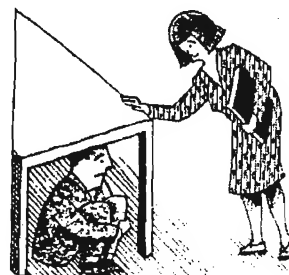
ག

དགག་མིན་ཆེག་གྲུབ

འདྲི་ཆེག

I am	
He is	doing
She is	working
It is	going
We are	staying
You are	
They are	

Am I	
Is he	doing?
Is she	working?
Is it	going?
Are we	staying?
Are you	
Are they	



- "Are you feeling OK?" "Yes, I'm fine, thank you."
- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- 'What's Paul doing?' 'He's reading the newspaper.'
- Look, there's Sally! Where's she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

ཁ ག་ཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་གྱི་གོ་རིམ་ལ་ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས།

Is/are/am + བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆེག་ + ing + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

	Is	he	working today?	
	Is	Paul	working today?	('Is working Paul today? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
Where	are	they	going?	
Where	are	those people	going?	('Where are going those people ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ག སྟབས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་ཚུལ།

Yes, བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + is/am/are

no, བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + is/am/are + not

Yes. I am
Yes, he is
Yes, she is
Yes, it is
Yes, we are
Yes, they are
Yes, you are

No. I'm not	
No. he's not	ཡང་ན། No, he isn't
No, she's not	No, she isn't
No, it's not	No, it isn't
No, we're not	No, we aren't
No, they're not	No, they aren't
No, you're not	No, you aren't

- 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Paul working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they're staying with me.'



གསལ་བྱུང་།

4.1 རིམ་བུ་སྤྲོས་ནས་འདྲི་ཚིག་བཟོ་དགོས།

1 (you/watch/it?) Are you watching it? No, you can turn it off.	2 (you/go/now?) ? Yes, see you tomorrow.	3 (it/rain?) ? No, not at the moment.
4 (you/enjoy/the film?) ? Yes, it's very funny.	5 (that clock/work?) ? No, it's broken.	6 (you/write/a letter?) ? Yes, to my sister.

4.2 རིམ་བུ་སྤྲོས་ཐེས་གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་ལས་གང་རུང་ལྟོ་བཤམས་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1 cry eat go laugh look at read What are you reading?	2 EXIT Where she ?	3 What ?
4 Why ?	5 What ?	6 Why ?

4.3 Is དང་ are གཉིས་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཚིག་དག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་ནས་འདྲི་ཚིག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (working/ Paul/ today?) **Is Paul working today?**
- (what/ doing/ the children?) **What are the children doing?**
- (you/ listening/ to me?).....
- (where/ going/ your friends?).....
- (your parents/ television/ watching?).....
- (what/ cooking/ Ann?).....
- (why/ you/ looking/ at me?).....
- (coming/ the bus?).....

4.4 གསལ་གྱི་དྲི་བ་ནུས་ལ་སྒྲུབ་ས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1) Are you watching TV? <u>No, I'm not.</u> | 4) Is it raining?..... |
| 2) Are you wearing a watch?..... | 5) Are you sitting on the floor?..... |
| 3) Are you eating something?..... | 6) Are you feeling well?..... |



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

5.1 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྩིས་སྤྱོད་ -s ཡང་ན་ -es སྟོན་དགོས།

- 1 (read) she **reads**..... 3 (fly) it..... 5(have) she.....
2 (think) he..... 4 (dance) he..... 6(finish) it.....

5.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྩིས་eat/go/live/play/play/sleep སྟོན་བཞོལ་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. **He plays** the piano. 4.tennis.
2. Theyin a very big house. 5.to the cinema a lot.
3.a lot of fruit. 6.....eight hours a night.

5.3 boil/close/cost/cost/like/like/meet/open/speak/teach/wash སྟོན་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

བཟོ་དགོས།

- Margaret **speaks** four languages.
- In Britain the banks usually.....at 9.30 in the morning.
- The City Museum..... At 5 o'clock in the evening.
- Tina is a teacher. Shemathematics to young children.
- My joy is very interesting. I..... a lot of people.
- Peter.....his hair twice a week.
- Food is expensive. Ita lot of money.
- Shoes are expensive. Theya lot money.
- Water.....at 100 degrees Celsius.
- Julia and I are good friends. I..... her and she..... me.

5.4 གཤམ་གྱི་སྟོན་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་མི་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་བཞོལ་ཚིག་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (always/ early/ Sue/ arrive) **Sue always arrives early.**
- (basketball/ I/ play/ often) I
- (work/ Margaret/ hard/ usually).....
- (Jenny/ always/ nice clothes/ wear).....
- (dinner/ we/ have/ always/ at 7.30).....
- (television/ Tim/ watch/ never).....
- (like/ chocolate/ children/ usually).....
- (Julia/ parties/ enjoy/ always).....

5.5 always/ never/ often/ sometime/ usually སྟོན་བཞོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་སྟོན་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (watch television) **I never watch television. / I usually watch television in the evening.**
- (read in bed) I
- (get up before 7 o'clock).....
- (go to work/ school by bus).....
- (drink coffee).....



ཐེ་ཚན་བྱུག་པ། I DON'T... ཟ෍ར་བྱང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་དགག་ཚིག

ག ཟ෍ར་བྱང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་དགག་ཚིག་བཟོ་སྒྲུངས་ནི་གཤམ་གསལ་ལྟར།

don't/ doesn't + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།



She doesn't drink coffee.



He doesn't like his job.

དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གྲུབ།

I	work
We	like
You	do
They	have
He	works
She	likes
It	has

དགག་ལྡན་ཚིག་གྲུབ།

I		
We	do not	work
You	(don't)	like
They		do
He		drink
She	does not	love
It	(doesn't)	

- I drink coffee, but I don't drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea, but she doesn't drink coffee.
- You don't work very hard.
- We don't watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn't rain very often.
- Gerry and Linda don't know many people.

ཁ ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ། (འདྲི་ཚིག་དང་དགག་ཚིག་ཁྲོད་དུ་བྱེད་པ་ལོ་གང་ཟག་གསུམ་པ་ཡིན་ཅུང་ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྒྱུ་ལྟ་ es དང་'s བསྟན་མི་དགོས་)

I/we/you/they don't... I don't like football.
He/she/it doesn't... He doesn't like football.

- I don't like Fred and Fred doesn't like me. ('Fred don't like' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- My car doesn't use much petrol. ('My car don't use' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- Sometimes he is late, but it doesn't happen very often.

ག ང་ཚོས་ don't/doesn't + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བཤེད་སྒྲིབ་བྱེད་དགོས།

- I don't like washing the car. I don't do it very often.
- Sandra speaks Spanish, but she doesn't speak Italian. ('doesn't speaks' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- Bill doesn't do his job very well. ('Bill doesn't his job' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- Paula doesn't usually have breakfast. ('doesn't ...has' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)



གསལ་སྒྲུབ་

6.1 གསལ་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆོག་སྒྲུབ་ནམས་དག་གི་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. I play the piano very well. | <u>I don't play the piano very well.</u> |
| 2. Jane plays the piano very well. | Jane..... |
| 3. They know my phone number. | ..... |
| 4. We work very hard. | ..... |
| 5. He has a bath every day. | ..... |
| 6. You do the same thing every day. | ..... |

6.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་like བེད་སྤྱད་དེ་ཆོག་སྒྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

<p>Do you like...?</p> <p>1 classical music?</p> <p>2 boxing?</p> <p>3 horror films?</p>	<p>Bill and Rose</p>	<p>Carol</p>	<p>YOU</p>
	yes	no	?
	no	yes	?
	yes	no	?

- Bill and Rose like classical music.** Carol.....
Iclassical music.
- Bill and Rose Carol.....
I
-
.....

6.3 I never... or I don't...very often. སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་སྒྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (watch TV) **I don't watch TV very often.** (ཡང་ན་I never ཡང་ན་ I often)
- (go to the theater)
- (ride a bicycle)
- (eat in restaurants)
- (travel by train).....

6.4 don't/ doesn't གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སྤྱད་Cost/go/know/read/see/use/wear སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་སྒྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- I buy a newspaper every day but sometimes I **don't read it.**
- Paul has a car but heit very often.
- They like films but they.....to the cinema very often.
- Amanda is married but shea ring.
- Imuch about politics. I'm not interested in it.
- It's not an expensive hotel. Itmuch to stay there.
- Brian lives near us but wehim very often.

6.5 སྐོར་བྱིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་ནམས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆོག་སྒྲུབ་ནམས་དག་མིན་དང་དག་ལྡན་ཆོག་སྒྲུབ་

ཀྱི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- Margaret **speaks** four languages –English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
- 'Where's Martin?' 'I'm sorry. I' (know)
- Sue is a very quiet person. Shevery much. (talk)
- Jim.....a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
- It's not true! Iit! (believe)
- That's a very beautiful picture. Iit very much. (like)
- Mark is a vegetarian. Hemeat. (eat)



ཞི་ཚེན་བརྟན་པ། DO YOU.....? ཟྱུར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུའི་འདྲི་ཆོག

ག ང་ཚོས་ do/does གཉིས་ནི་ཟྱུར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུའི་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནང་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས།

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

འདྲི་ཆོག

I	work
We	like
You	do
They	have
He	works
She	likes
It	does

Do	I	
	we	
	you	works?
	they	like?
Does	he	do?
	she	drink?
	it	



ཁ ག་ཤམ་གྱི་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་ལ་སློབ་སྦྱོང་བྱེད་དགོས།

Do/does + བྱེད་པ་ལོ་ + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཞུགས་

	Do	you	work	in the evening?
	Do	your friends	live	near here?
	Does	Chris	play	tennis?
Where	do	your parents	live?	
How often	do	you	wash	your hair?
What	does	this word	mean?	
How much	does	it	cost	to fly to rome?

always/ usually /often སྐད་ཆོག་གི་ནང་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

What	do	you	always	have	breakfast?
	does	Chris	often	play	tennis?
	do	you	usually	do	at weekend?

What do you do? = བྱེད་ཀྱི་ལས་ཀ་ཅི་ཞིག་ཡིན་ཞེས་པའི་དྲི་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

> 'what do you do?' 'I work in a bank.'

ག ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།

Do + I /we/you/they...

Do they like music?

Does + he/she/it...

Does he like music?

ང སླབས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་ཚུལ།

	I/we/you/they do.
Yes,	He/she/it does

	I/we/you/they don't
No,	He/she/it doesn't

- > 'Do you play tennis?' 'No, I don't.'
- > 'Do your parents speak English?' 'Yes, they do.'
- > 'Does George work hard?' 'Yes, he does.'
- > 'Does your sister live in London.' 'No, she doesn't.'



གསལ་སྒྲུབ།

7.1 Do / does གཉིས་བཞེད་ནས་འདྲི་ཆིག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1) I like chocolate. And <u>you</u> ? | Do you like chocolate? |
| 2) I play tennis. And <u>you</u> ? |you.....? |
| 3) You live near here. And <u>your friends</u> ? |? |
| 4) You speak English. And <u>your brother</u> ? |? |
| 5) I do exercises every morning. And <u>you</u> ? |? |
| 6) Sue often goes away. And <u>Paul</u> ? |? |
| 7) I want to be famous. And <u>you</u> ? |? |
| 8) You work hard. And <u>Linda</u> ? |? |

7.2 do/does བཞེད་ནས་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆིག་རྣམས་འདྲི་ཆིག་གི་རྣམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. (where / live/ your parents?) | Where do your parents live? |
| 2. (you / early / always/ get up?) | Do you always get up early? |
| 3. (how often/TV/you / watch?) |? |
| 4. (you /want/what/ for dinner?) |? |
| 5. (like/you/football?) |? |
| 6. (your brother / like/ football?) |? |
| 7. (what/ you/do/ in the evening?) |? |
| 8. (your sister/ work/ where?) |? |
| 9. (to the cinema/ often /you/go?) |? |
| 10. (what/mean/this word?) |? |
| 11. (often/ snow/it/here?) |? |
| 12. (go/usually/to bed/ what time/you?) |? |
| 13. (how much/to phone New York/it/cost?) |? |
| 14. (you/for breakfast/have/usually/what?) |? |

7.2 do/do/enjoy/go/like/ start/teach/ work སྐད་སྐད་བཞེད་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་འདྲི་ཆིག་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



What do you do ?
..... it?
What time.....in the morning?
.....on Saturdays?
Howto work?
And your husband. What?
What?
.....his job?



I work in a bookshop.
It's OK.
At 9 o'clock.
Sometimes.
Usually by bus.
He's a teacher.
Science.
Yes, he loves it.

7.4 གསལ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་སྒྲུབས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Do you watch TV a lot? | No, I don't. Or Yes, I do. |
| 2. Do you live in a big city? | ..... |
| 3. Do you often ride a bicycle? | ..... |
| 4. Does it rain a lot where you live? | ..... |
| 5. Do you play the piano? | ..... |



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

7.1 Do / does གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆེག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1) I like chocolate. And <u>you</u> ? | Do you like chocolate? |
| 2) I play tennis. And <u>you</u> ? |you.....? |
| 3) You live near here. And <u>your friends</u> ? |? |
| 4) You speak English. And <u>your brother</u> ? |? |
| 5) I do exercises every morning. And <u>you</u> ? |? |
| 6) Sue often goes away. And <u>Paul</u> ? |? |
| 7) I want to be famous. And <u>you</u> ? |? |
| 8) You work hard. And <u>Linda</u> ? |? |

7.2 do/does བཀོལ་ནས་སྒྲིབ་ནང་གི་ཆེག་ནམས་འདྲི་ཆེག་གི་ནམས་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. (where / live/ your parents?) | Where do your parents live? |
| 2. (you / early / always/ get up?) | Do you always get up early? |
| 3. (how often/TV/you / watch?) |? |
| 4. (you /want/what/ for dinner?) |? |
| 5. (like/you/football?) |? |
| 6. (your brother / like/ football?) |? |
| 7. (what/ you/do/ in the evening?) |? |
| 8. (your sister/ work/ where?) |? |
| 9. (to the cinema/ often /you/go?) |? |
| 10. (what/mean/this word?) |? |
| 11. (often/ snow/it/here?) |? |
| 12. (go/usually/to bed/ what time/you?) |? |
| 13. (how much/to phone New York/it/cost?) |? |
| 14. (you/for breakfast/have/usually/what?) |? |

7.2 do/do/enjoy/go/like/ start/teach/ work མིགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་འདྲི་ཆེག་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



What do you do ?
..... it?
What time..... in the morning?
.....on Saturdays?
Howto work?
And your husband. What?
What?
.....his job?

I work in a bookshop.
It's OK.
At 9 o'clock.
Sometimes.
Usually by bus.
He's a teacher.
Science.
Yes, he loves it.



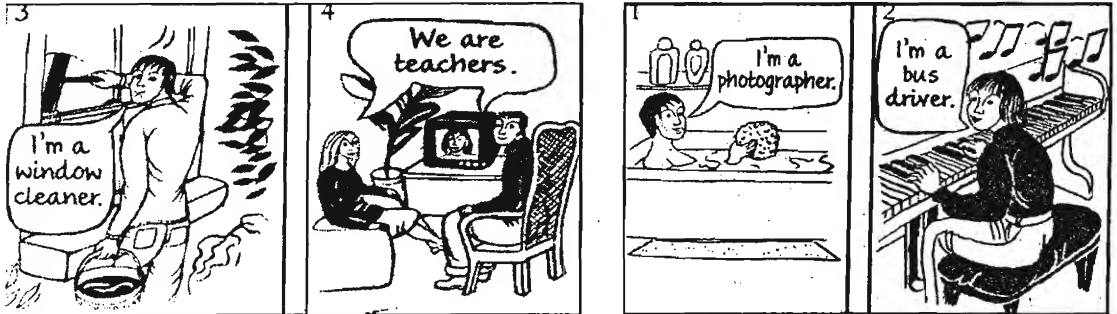
7.4 གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་སྐབས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Do you watch TV a lot? | No, I don't. Or Yes, I do. |
| 2. Do you live in a big city? | ..... |
| 3. Do you often ride a bicycle? | ..... |
| 4. Does it rain a lot where you live? | ..... |
| 5. Do you play the piano? | ..... |



གཤམ་ཁྱེད་

8.1 རིམ་བཞུགས་ནས་རྒྱུ་ལུ་འདེབས་དགོས།



- Does he take photo? **Yes, he does.** Is he taking a photo? **No, he isn't.** what is he doing? **He's having a bath.**
- Is she driving a bus?.....Does she drive a bus? **What is she doing?**.....
- Does he clean windows?..... Is he cleaning a window? **What is he doing?**.....
- Are they teaching?..... Do they teach?..... **What do they do?**.....

7.2 am/ is /are /do/don't/doesn't. སྐད་ཀྱི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལ་སྐད་ཅེས་པ་

- Excuse me, **do** you speak English?
- 'Where's Ann?' 'Iknow.'
- 'What's funny?' Whyyou laughing?
- 'Whatyour sister do?' 'She's a dentist.'
- Itraining. Iwant to go out in the rain.
- 'Whereyou come from?' 'Canada.'
- How muchit cost to phone Canada?
- George is a good tennis player but heplay very often.

8.3 རྒྱུ་བཟང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལ་སྐད་ཅེས་པ་

དགོས།

- Excuse me. **Do you speak** (you/ speak) English?
- 'Where's Tom?' '**He's having** (he/have) a shower.'
- I **don't watch** (I /not/watch) television very often.
- Listen! Somebody..... (sing)
- Sandra is tired. (she/want) to go home now.
- How often (you/read) a newspaper?
- 'Excuse me but..... (you/sit) in my place.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
- I'm sorry, (I/ not/ understand). Can you speak more slowly?
- It's late. (I/go) home now. (you/ come) with me?
- What time..... (your father/ finish) work in the evenings?
- You can turn off the radio. (I/not/listen) to it.
- 'Where's Paul?' 'In the kitchen. (he/cook) something.'
- Martin.....(not/usually/drive) to work. He (usually/walk).
- Sue:.....(not/ like) coffee. (she/prefer) tea.



ཐེ་ཆ་ན་དགུ་བ། I HAVE.../ I'VE GOT...

༡ I have ཡང་ན I've got, he has ཡང་ན he's got ཞེས་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ་དེ་འི་དོན་ཡོད་པ་ལམ་མངའ་བའི་དོན།

I We You They	have
He She It	has

I		I've got
We	have got	we've got
You		you've got
They		they've got
He		he's got
She	has got	she's got
It		it's got



- I've got blue eyes. (ཡང་ན། I have blue eyes.)
- Tim has got two sisters. (ཡང་ན། Tim has two sisters.)
- Our car has got four doors.
- Diane isn't feeling well. She's got a headache. (she's got = she has got)
- They like animals. They've got a horse, three dogs and six cats.

བ I haven't got/ have you got? མེད་ཀྱི་ཉེ་དགག་ཆོག་དང་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་སྟངས་

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་ལྟར།

२५३

ལྷ་བས་བཏེའི་བྱིས་ལན།

བྱེད་པ་པོ + have not + got + བྱ་ལྟེན།

have + ཅུང་པ་པོ་ + got + བྱ་ལྟ་ལྟ

yes/ no + བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + have not + བྱ་ལྟ་ལ།

I We You They	have not (haven't)	got
He She It	has not (hasn't)	

Have	I we you they	got?
Has	he she it	

Yes, No,	I we you they	have. haven't.
Yes, No,	he she it	has hasn't

- I've got a motor-bike but I haven't got a car.
- Mr and Mrs Harris haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.
- 'Have you got a camera?' 'No, I haven't.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Ann got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?

༡ I don't have / do you have? སློལ་མེད་ཀྱི་ཅོད་པ་ལྟར་ལ།

དགག་ཆོག་དང་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནང་དུ་do /does གཉིས་པོ་དཔྱད་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཆོག་ཏེ།

- They don't have any children. (=they haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house but it doesn't have a garden. (=it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Ann have a car? (= has Ann got a car?)
- How much money do you have? (=how much money have you got?)



ཐེ་ཚན་བཟུང་། WAS/ WERE

༡



ད་ལྟ་བུ་ཤིས་ནི་ཁོ་འཇམ་གྱི་ཡོད་ལ།
མདང་གི་མཚན་གྱང་ཁོ་འཇམ་ཀར་བྱིན་ཟེང་།

He was in bed.

He was asleep.

Am/is གི་ད་ལྟ་བུ་ཡིན། **was** གི་འདས་པ་ཡིན།

- I am tired. (ད་ལྟ་བུ) I was tired last night. (འདས་པ)
- Where is Ann? (ད་ལྟ་བུ) Where was Ann yesterday? (འདས་པ)
- The weather is good today. The weather was good last week.

Are གི་ད་ལྟ་བུ་ཡིན། **were** གི་འདས་པ་ཡིན།

- You are late. (ད་ལྟ་བུ) You were late yesterday. (འདས་པ)
- They aren't here. They weren't here last Sunday.

༢ དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གྲུབ།

དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གྲུབ།

འདྲི་ཚིག་

བྱེད་པ་ལྟར་ + were/was + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ། བྱེད་པ་ལྟར་ + were/ was not + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ། Was / were + བྱེད་པ་ལྟར་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

you	were
we	
they	
I	was
He	
She	
It	

We	were not
You	(weren't)
They	
I	was not
He	
She	
It	(wasn't)

Were	we?
	you?
	they?
Was	I ?
	he?
	she?
	it?

- Last year Rachel was 22, so she is 23 now.
- When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
- We were hungry after the journey but we weren't tired.
- The hotel was comfortable but it wasn't expensive.
- Was the weather good when you were on holiday?
- Those shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
- Why were you late this morning?

ག ལྟ་བུ་བཞུགས་པའི་ཁྲི་ལན་འདེབས་ཚུལ།

Yes + བྱེད་པ་ལྟར་ + was/ were + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ། No + བྱེད་པ་ལྟར་ + was/were not + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

	I/ he/ she/ it was
Yes	we/ you/ they were

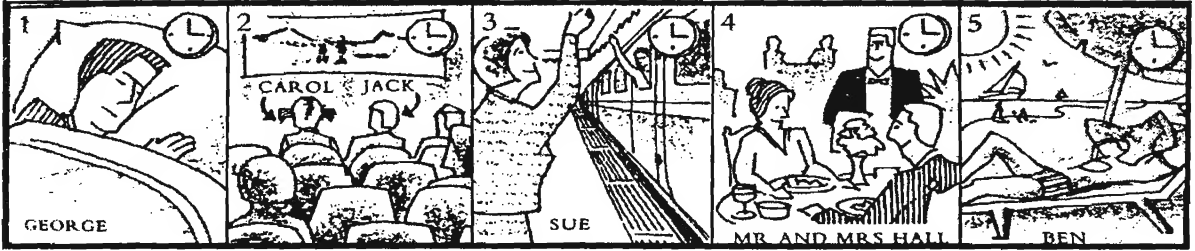
	I/ he/she/ it wasn't
No	we/ you/ they weren't.

- 'Were you late?' 'No, I wasn't.'
- 'Was Ted at work yesterday?' 'Yes, he was.'
- 'Were Sue and Steve at the party?' 'No, they weren't.'



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

10.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་མི་དེ་དག་ཁ་སང་ཕྱི་དྲོའི་དུས་ཚོད་གསུམ་གྱི་སྟེང་ས་གནས་གང་དུ་ཡོད་པ་ཤོད།



1. George was in bed.

4.....

2. Carol and Jack.....

5.....

3. Sue.....

6. And you? I

10.2 am/is/are ཡང་ན་ was/were བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟེང་ཆ་སྐོང་དགོས།

1. Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
2. Today the weather.....nice, but yesterday it.....very cold.
3. Ihungry. Can I have something to eat?
4. I feel fine this morning but Ivery tired last night.
5. Whereyou at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6. Don't buy those shoes. Theyvery expensive.
7. I like your new jacket.it expensive?
8. This time last year Iin Paris.
9. 'Where.....the children?' 'I don't know. Theyin the garden ten minutes ago.'

10. 3 was/were ཡང་ན་ wasn't /weren't སྐོམ་ས་བཤམ་པེད་སྟེང་དེ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room was very small and it wasn't very clean.
2. George.....at work last week because he.....ill. He's better now.
3. Yesterday.....a public holiday so the shops.....closed. They're open today.
4. '.....Sue and Bill at the party?' 'Sue.....there but Bill.....'
5. 'Where are my key?' 'I don't know. Theyon the table but they're not there now.'
6. You.....at home last night. Whereyou?

10.4 གཡམས་གྱི་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་དོན་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་was/were གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཡོན་གྱི་སྟེང་བྱིམ་ནང་གི་གོ་རིམ་ རྣམས་བཤི་ཆོག་དག་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

(late/ you/ this morning/ why?
Why were you late this morning?
(difficult/ your exam?)

.....
(last week/ where / Ann and Chris)

.....
(your new camera/ how much ?)

.....
(angry / you / yesterday/ why?)

.....
(nice/ the weather / last week?)

.....

The traffic was bad.

No, it was easy.

They were on holiday.

Sixty pounds.

Because you were late.

Yes., it was beautiful.



ཐོག་མཛུགས་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཛུགས་ WORKED / GOT / WENT སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ།

ག

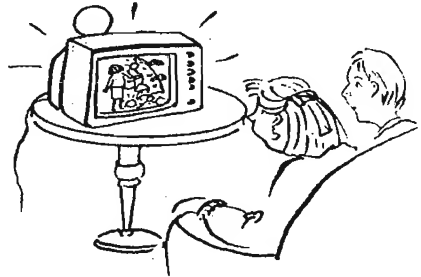
They watch television every evening. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟོ་ལ།)

They watched television yesterday evening. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་ཐོག་མཛུགས་)

སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་ཐོག་མཛུགས་བཟོ་སྐྱོར་གྱི་སྤྱི་འགྲེལ་ནི།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆོག་འདས་པ་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

I/we/you/they/he/she/it	watched
-------------------------	---------



ཁ་གཏང་སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་ཐོག་མཛུགས་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་དེ་གཟུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་ཡིན་ཆོ། ང་ཚོས་

ངེས་པར་དུ་ལས་ཆོག་དེའི་རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

Work _____ worked clean _____ cleaned start _____ started

Stay _____ stayed arrive _____ arrived dance _____ danced

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I cleaned my teeth.
- Terry worked in a bank from 1986 to 1993.
- Yesterday it rained all morning. It stopped at lunchtime.
- We enjoyed the party last night. We danced a lot and talked to a lot of people.
- The party finished at midnight.

གཟུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་གི་དག་ཆའི་བྱ་བ་སྤྱད་པ། (བྱེད་པ་པོ་དང་ལས་ཆོག་)

Try _____ tried study _____ studied copy _____ copied

stop _____ stopped plan _____ planned

གཟུགས་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་གི་རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་ཐང་ཀར་ + ed བསྐྱོར་མི་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

begin _____ began	fall _____ fell	leave _____ left	sell _____ sold
break _____ broke	find _____ found	lose _____ lost	sit _____ sat
bring _____ brought	fly _____ flew	make _____ made	sleep _____ slept
build _____ built	forget _____ forgot	meet _____ met	speak _____ spoke
buy _____ bought	get _____ got	pay _____ paid	stand _____ stood
catch _____ caught	give _____ gave	put _____ put	take _____ took
come _____ came	go _____ went	read _____ read	tell _____ told
do _____ did	have _____ had	ring _____ rang	think _____ thought
drink _____ drank	hear _____ heard	say _____ said	win _____ won
eat _____ ate	know _____ knew	see _____ saw	write _____ wrote

- I usually get up early but this morning I got up at 9.30.
- We did a lot of work yesterday.
- Caroline went to the cinema three times last week.
- Jim came into the room, took off his coat and sat down.



མྱོད་ཀྱི་བཞུགས་པའི་སྐབས་ཀྱི་སྐད་ཆ་ I DIDN'T... DID YOU ...? སྐྱེས་བཟང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཚིག་དང་དགག་ཚིག་

ག་ ང་ཚོས་ did བྱིས་བཟང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཚིག་དང་དགག་ཚིག་ནང་ཅུ་བཅུ་ཉེད་ཀྱི་ཐུགས་ཀྱི་ཐུགས་

ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས།

དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གི་ཐུགས་

དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གི་ཐུགས་

འདྲི་ཚིག་

ཐུགས་པོ་ + ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པ་ + ཐུགས་པོ་ལྟ་བུ། ཐུགས་པོ་ + did not + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + ཐུགས་པོ་ལྟ་བུ། did + ཐུགས་པོ་ + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + ཐུགས་པོ་ལྟ་བུ།

play
start
watch
have
see
do
go

I	played
We	started
You	watched
They	had
He	saw
She	did
It	went

I		play
We		start
You		watch
They	Did not	have
He	(didn't)	see
She		do
It		go

	I	play?
	we	start?
	you	watch?
Did	they	have?
	he	see?
	she	do?
	it	go?

ཁ ང་ཚོས་ do/does བྱིས་བཟང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཚིག་དང་དགག་ཚིག་

- > I don't watch television very often.
- > I didn't watch television yesterday.
- > Does she often go away?
- > Did she go away last week?

ག ང་ཚོས་ did/ didn't ཡི་ཇེས་སྤྱོད་ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བཞོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

I watched ཡིན་ནའང་། I didn't watch ('I didn't watched' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
they went did they go? ('did they went?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
he had he didn't have
you did did you do ?

- > I played tennis yesterday but I didn't win.
- > 'Did you do the shopping?' 'No, I didn't have time.'
- > We went to the cinema but we didn't enjoy the film.

ང སྐྱེས་བཟང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཚིག་བཟོ་སྐྱོང་སྐྱོང་གི་སྐྱོང་ལྟ་བུ་ཡིན།

Did + ཐུགས་པོ་ + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + ཐུགས་པོ་ལྟ་བུ།

What	did	your sister	phone	you?
How	did	you	do	yesterday evening?
Where	did	the accident	happen?	
		your parents	go	for their holiday?

ཅ སྐབས་བཅུ་ཉེད་ཀྱི་སྐད་ཆ་འདྲི་ཚིག་ལྟ་བུ་ཡིན།

Yes,	I/we/you/they/he/she/it	did.
------	-------------------------	------

No,	I/we/you/they/he/she/it	didn't.
-----	-------------------------	---------

- > 'Did you see Joe yesterday?' 'No, I didn't.'
- > 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it did.'
- > 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she didn't.'
- > 'Did your parents have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they did.'



གཤམ་སྒྱུ་

12.1 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་དགག་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 I saw Barbara but I didn't see Jane.
- 4 They worked on Monday but theyon Tuesday.
- 5 We went to the post office but we.....to the bank.
- 6 She had a pen but she.....any paper.
- 7 Jack did French at school but he.....German.

12.2 did བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 I watched TV last night. And you? **Did you watch TV last night?**
- 2 I enjoyed the party. And you?
- 3 I had a good holiday. And you?
- 4 I finished work early. And you?
- 5 I slept well last night. And you?

12.3 ཁ་སང་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་སྒྲུབ་པ་ནམས་དགག་མིན་དང་དགག་ཆོག་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 (watch TV) **I watched TV. ཡང་ན་ Or I didn't watch TV.**
- 2 (get up before 7 o'clock)
- 3 (have a shower)
- 4 (buy a magazine)
- 5 (eat meat)
- 6 (go to bed before 10.30)

12.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཁ་བརྒྱུན་མཆོང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

arrive cost go go to bed late happen have a nice time stay win

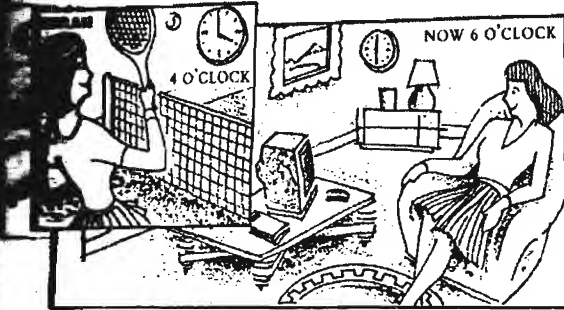
A: We went to New York last month. B: Where <u>did you stay</u> ? A: With some friends.	A: We came home by taxi. B: How much.....? A: Ten pounds.
A: I was late this morning. B: What time.....? A: Half past nine.	A: I'm tired this morning. B:? A: No, but I didn't sleep very well.
A: I played tennis this afternoon. B:? A: No, I lost.	A: We went to the beach yesterday. B:? A: Yes, it was great.
A: I had a nice holiday. B: Good. Where? A: To the mountains.	A: The window is broken. B: How.....? A: I don't know.

12.5 སྒྱུར་བྱིས་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 We went to the cinema but the film wasn't very good. We didn't enjoy it. (enjoy)
- 2 Tim.....some new clothes yesterday –two shirts, a jacket and a pullover.(buy)
- 3 '.....yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.' (rain)
- 4 The party wasn't very good, so welong. (stay)
- 5 It was very warm in the room, so Ia window. (open)
- 6 'Did you go to the bank this morning?' 'No, Itime.' (have)
- 7 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How.....that?' (do)



ཉན་བཟུ་གསུམ་པ། I WAS DOING འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།

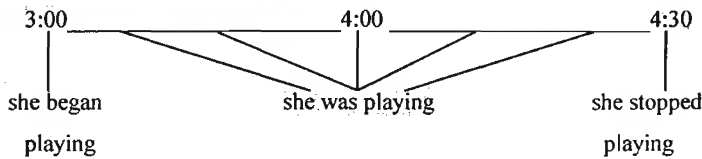


ད་ལྟ་དུས་ཚོད་བྱུག་ཡིན་ལ། སྐར་ལུས་བྱིམ་དུ་བརྟན་
འཕྲིན་ལ་ལྟ་བཞིན་ཡོད།

She is watching television.

དུས་ཚོད་བཞི་བའི་སྟངས་མོ་ལུས་རྩལ་རྩ་བར་ཡོད།

She was playing tennis. She wasn't watching television.



འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་ནི་འདས་པའི་དུས་ཚོད་ངེས་ཅན་ནང་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་སྤྲོས་མཐུད་དུ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་
ཁག་ལྟངས་སྤྲོས་བཞིན་པ་ཡིན།

འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོ་སྟངས་ཀྱི་སྒྲིམ་འགྲེས་ནི།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + was/ were + ལས་ཆོག་ + (run+ing=running) + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

I		
He		doing
She	was	watching
It		playing
We		running
You	were	living
They		

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

I		
He	Was not	doing
She	(wasn't)	watching
It		playing
We	Were not	running
You	(weren't)	living
They		

འདྲི་ཆོག

Was	I	doing?
	he	watching?
	she	playing?
	it	running?
Were	we	living?
	you	
	they	

- > 'What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday? Were you working?
- > 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I wasn't listening.'
- > It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- > In 1985 we were living in Canada.
- > Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- > I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་སྟངས་ལྟར་བཞིན་པ་ལ་སྟོན།

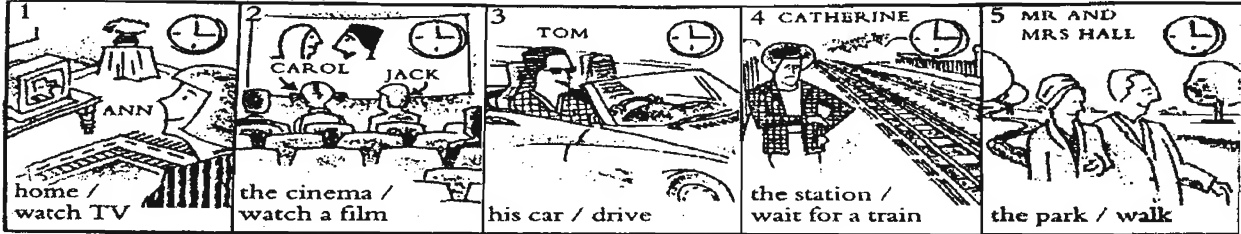
ཀྱ སྐྱེད་པའི་ལས་ཆོག་ + ing སྟོན་པ་ནི་ད་ལྟ་བཞིན་ལ། was/ were + ལས་ཆོག་ + ing སྟོན་པ་ནི་འདས་པའི་ལས་ཆོག་

- > I'm working(ད་ལྟ་བུ།) I was working at 10.30 last night. (འདས་པ།)
- > It isn't raining. It wasn't raining when we went out.
- > What are you doing. What were you doing at three o'clock?



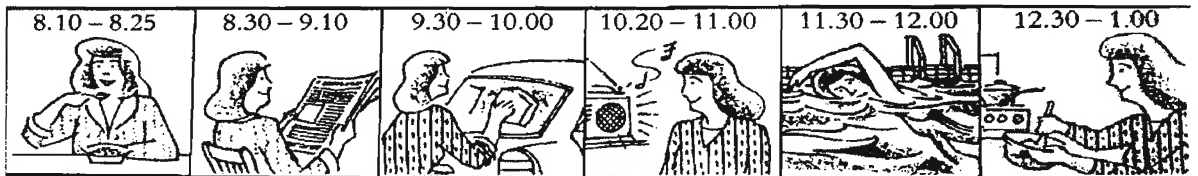
གཤམ་སྒྱུར།

13.1 རིམ་འོ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཁ་སང་རུས་ཆོད་གསུམ་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད། རིམ་རེར་
ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་རེ་འབྲི་དགོས།



- 1 Ann was at home. She was watching TV.
- 2 Carol and Jack..... They
- 3 Tom.....
- 4
- 5
- 6 And you? I

13.2 སྐུ་ལ་མས་ཁ་སང་ཞོགས་པར་ཅི་ཞིག་སྒྱུབ་མིན་རིམ་ར་བལྟས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་རུ་འབྲི་དགོས།



- 1 At 9.45 She was washing her car.
- 2 At 11.45 she
- 3 At 9 o'clock.....
- 4 At 12.50
- 5 At 8.15.....
- 6 At 10.30.....

13.3 was/were + ing སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་འདྲི་ཆོག་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས། དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་
ནས་What/where/why སྐགས་ཀྱང་བཀོལ་ཆོག

(you/live) where were you living in 1990?
(you/do).....at 2 o'clock?
(it/rain).....when you got up?
(ann/ drive).....so fast?
(Tim/ wear).....a suit yesterday?

In London.
I was asleep.
No, it was sunny.
Because she was in a hurry.
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 རིམ་ར་བལྟས་ནས་ཁ་སང་ཕྱི་དྲོ་ཚོན་གྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་དག་དགག་མིན་དང་དགག་ལུན་ཆོག་
གྲུབ་གྱི་ནམ་པ་ལྟར་བཟོ་དགོས།

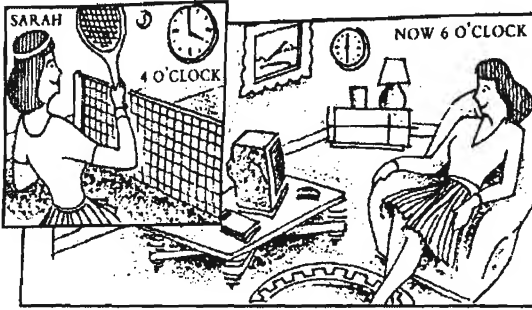
- 1 (wear/a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
- (carry/ a bag)
- 3 (go/to the dentist).....
- 4 (eat/ an ice-cream).....
- 5 (carry/ an umbrella).....
- 6 (go/ home).....
- 7 (wear/ a hat).....
- 8 (ride/ a bicycle).....





ཕྱི་ཆེན་བཟུང་གསུམ་པ། I WAS DOING འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།

༡

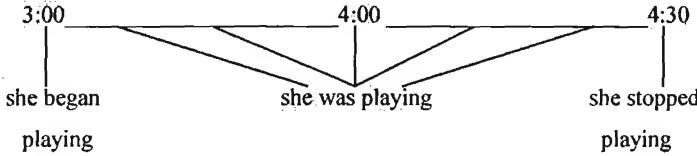


ད་ལྟ་དུས་ཚིང་དུག་ཡིན་ལ། སྐྱོ་ར་ཡིས་བྱིམ་དུ་བརྟན་
འཕྲིན་ལ་ལྟ་བཞིན་ཡོད།

She is watching television.

དུས་ཚིང་བཞི་བའི་སྟེང་མ་ལུས་རྩལ་རྩ་བར་ཡོད།

She was playing tennis. She wasn't watching television.



འ འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་ནི་འདས་པའི་དུས་ཚིང་ངེས་ཅན་ནང་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་སྤྲོད་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་
གནས་སྟངས་སྤྲོད་བྲོལ་བ་ཡིན།

འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོ་སྟངས་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་འགྲེམ་ནི།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + was/were + ལས་ཆོག་ + (run+ing=running) + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

དགག་མེན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

I		
He		doing
She	was	watching
It		playing
We		running
You	were	living
They		

དགག་ཕྱན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

I		
He	Was not	doing
She	(wasn't)	watching
It		playing
We	Were not	running
You	(weren't)	living
They		

འདྲི་ཆོག

Was	I	doing?
	he	watching?
	she	playing?
	it	running?
Were	we	living?
	you	
	they	

- > 'What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday? Were you working?
- > 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I wasn't listening.'
- > It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- > In 1985 we were living in Canada.
- > Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- > I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

ཆོག་གི་དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་སྟངས་བྱུང་བཞིན་པ་ལྟོས།

༡ am/is/are + ལས་ཆོག་ + ing སྒྲོན་པ་ནི་ད་ལྟ་བཞིན་ལ། was/were + ལས་ཆོག་ + ing སྒྲོན་པ་ནི་འདས་པ་ཡིན།

- > I'm working(ད་ལྟ་བུ།) I was working at 10.30 last night. (འདས་པ་བུ།)
- > It isn't raining. It wasn't raining when we went out.
- > What are you doing. What were you doing at three o'clock?



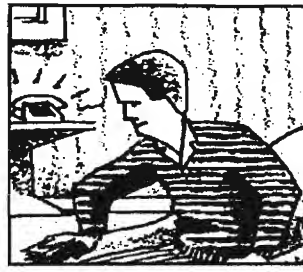
ཟླ་ཆ་བྱ་བའི་བཞུགས་པ། I WAS DOING འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞུགས་པ། I DID ལྷན་བྱེད་འདས་པ།



Jack was reading a book.



The phone rang.



He stopped reading.



He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (ལྷན་བྱེད་འདས་པ།)

What was Jack doing when the phone rang?

He was reading a book.

} (འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞུགས་པ།)

What did he do when the phone rang?

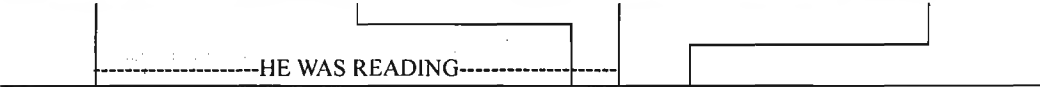
He stopped reading and answered the phone.

} (ལྷན་བྱེད་འདས་པ།)

Jack began reading before the phone rang.

So: When the phone rang, he was reading.

He began reading the phone rang he stopped reading he answered the phone.



ལྷན་བྱེད་འདས་པ།

འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞུགས་པ།

- > A: what did you do yesterday morning?
- B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)

མགོ་བཅུགས་པ།

མཇུག་ཐོགས་པ།

རྒྱུ་ཆེད་ཀྱི་

རྒྱུ་ཆེད་ཀྱི་དུས་ཀྱི་



We played

- > Jack read a book yesterday. (མགོ་ནས་མཇུག་བར་)
- > Did you watch the film on TV last night?
- > It didn't rain while we were on holiday.

- > A: what were you doing at 10.30?
- B: we were playing tennis.

མགོ་བཅུགས་པ།

རྒྱུ་ཆེད་ཀྱི་བཞུགས་པ།



We were playing

- > Jack was reading a book when the phone rang.
- > Were you watching TV when I phoned you?
- > It wasn't raining when I got up.

- > I started work at 9 o'clock and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.
- > It was raining when we went out. (=it started raining before we went out)
- > I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- > Jenny fell asleep while she was reading.



གཤམ་ཕྱད་

12.1 སྒོར་བྱིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆེག་དག་སྒྱུར་བཏང་འདས་པའམ་འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་གཉིས་སུ་བསྒྱུར་ནས་
གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་ཟུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



Carol **broke** (break) her arm last week. It(happen)
when she.....(paint) her room.
She(fall) off the ladder.



The train.....(arrive) at the station and
Paula.....(get) off. Two friends of hers. John and
Jenny,.....(wait) to meet her.



Yesterday Sue.....(walk) along the road
when she(meet) Jim.
He(go) to the station to catch a train
and he(carry) a bag. They(stop) to
talk for a few minutes.

12.4 སྒོར་བྱིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆེག་ནམས་འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའམ་སྒྱུར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་ནམ་པར་བསྒྱུར་ནས་
གཤམ་གྱི་ཆེག་ཟུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- A: What **were you doing** (you/do) when the phone rang(ring)?
B: I **was watching** (watch) TV.
- A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
B: Yes, she(study).
- A: What time(the post/ arrive) this morning?
B: It.....(come) while I(have) breakfast.
- A: Was Margaret at work today?
B: No, she.....(not/go) to work. She was ill.
- A: How fast.....(you/drive) when the police.....(stop) you?
B: I don't know exactly but I(not/ drive) very fast.
- A:(your team/ win) the football match yesterday?
B: No, the weather was very bad, so we.....(not/play).
- A: How(you/ break) the window.
B: We.....(play) football. I.....(kick) the ball and it.....(hit) the window.
- A:(you/see) Jenny last night?
B: Yes, she(wear) a very nice jacket.
- A: What.....(you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
B: I was asleep.
- A: I(lose) my key last night.
B: How(you/get) into your room?
A: I(climb) in through a window.



ཐོས་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆུང་མ་ཚོ་ལྟ་ཞིན། I HAVE DONE གྲུབ་ཅིན་དུང་ལ། ༡

༡



His shoes are dirty.



He is cleaning his shoes.



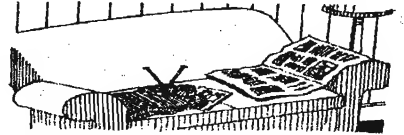
He has cleaned his shoes.
(= his shoes are clean now)



They are at home.



They are going out.



They have gone out.
(= they are not at home now)

ཁ གྲུབ་ཅིན་དུང་ལ་བའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོས་སྤངས་ཀྱི་སྒྲིབ་འགྲོལ་ནི།

བྱེད་པ་ཙམ་ + has /have + ལས་ཆོག་སྤེའངས་པའི་འངས་པ་ (gone) + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

འངས་པའི་འངས་པ།

I	} have ('ve) have not(haven't)	cleaned
We		finished
You		started
They		lost
He	} has ('s) has not(hasn't)	done
She		been
It		gone

	} I we you they	cleaned?
Have		finished?
		started?
		lost?
	} he she it	done?
Has		been?
		gone?

གལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་ནི་གཟུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་ཡིན་སྐབས་ལས་ཆོག་དེའི་ཇེས་སྤྱོད་སྟོན་དགོས།

Clean—I have cleaned finish—we have finished start—she has started.

གལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་ནི་གཟུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་ཡིན་སྐབས་ལས་ཆོག་དེ་འངས་པའི་འངས་པ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས།

(ཟུར་བཀོད་ 2-3 ལ་སྟོན།)

buy—bought/ I have bought have ---he had/ he has had

break—I broke/ I have broken see—you saw/ you have seen

Fall—it fell/ it has fallen go— they went/ they have gone

ག ང་ཆོས་གྲུབ་ཅིན་དུང་ལ་བའི་འངས་ཅིན་པའི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་གི་མཆུག་འབྲས་སམ་བག་ཆགས་དེ་དུང་ལ་དུང་

ཐེབས་ཡོད་པའི་གནས་སྤངས་སྤྱོད་སྟོན་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I've lost my passport. (=མཆུག་འབྲས་ནི་དུང་ལ་དུང་ཆེད་མེད་པ་དེའོ།)
- 'Where's Linda?' 'She's gone to bed.' (=མཆུག་འབྲས་ནི་དུང་ལ་དུང་ཆེད་མེད་པ་དེའོ།)
- We've bought a new car. (=མཆུག་འབྲས་ནི་དུང་ལ་དུང་ཆེད་མེད་པ་དེའོ།)
- It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present.
- 'Bob is on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?'
- Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it.



གསལ་བྱུང་།

15. 1 རེ་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་གསལ་གྱི་ཚིག་ནམས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

go to bed clean his shoes stop raining close the door fall down have a bath

	→	He has <u>cleaned</u> his shoes
	→	She
	→	They
	→	It.....
	→	He
	→	The

15.2 གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

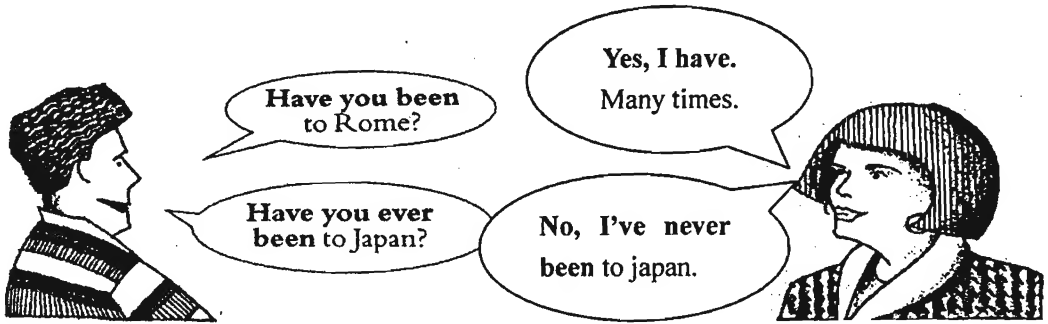
Break buy decide finish forget go go invite see not/see take tell

1. 'Can I have this newspaper?' 'Yes, I've finished with it.'
2. Isome new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3. 'Where is Lis?' 'Sheout.'
4. I'm looking for Paula.you.....her?
5. Look! Somebody.....that window.
6. 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, Iher.'
7. I can't find my umbrella. Somebody.....it.
8. I'm looking for Sarah. Whereshe.....?
9. I know that woman but Iher name.
10. Sue is having a party tonight. Shea lot of people.
11. What are you going to do?.....you.....?
12. 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I.....them.'



ཞི་ཚེན་འཕྱ་བཟུང་བ། HAVE YOU EVER....? ཟུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ། ན

༧



ང་ཚོས་ཟུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་ནི་འདས་ཟིན་པའི་དུས་ཚོད་ནང་དུ་བྱ་བ་ཞིག་མགོ་བཙུགས་ཤིང་ད་ལྟའི་བར་དུ་ཟུན་མཐུད་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་ཡང་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

Have you ever been to Japan?

གནང་ནས་ད་བར་དུ

འདས་པ་ _____ ད་ལྟ་བ་ _____

- 'Have you been to France?' (in your life) 'No, I haven't.'
- I've been to Canada but I haven't been to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- I've seen that woman before but I can't remember where.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- 'Have you read this book?' 'Yes, I've read it twice.' (twice = two times)

ཁ ཟུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བའི་འདྲི་ཚིག་གི་ནང་དུ་ ever བཀོལ་ལ། དགག་ཚིག་ནང་དུ་ never བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས།

- 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'Yes, once.'
- 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, I often play golf.'
- My mother has never traveled by air.
- I've never ridden a horse.
- 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. I've never seen him before.'

ག། gone and been གཉིས་ཀྱི་བྱེད་པར།



Bill has gone to Spain.
(=ད་ལྟ་ཁོ་ལྟུ་པན་ལ་བྱེད་པར་)

Bill has been to Spain.
(=ད་ལྟ་ཁོ་ཁོ་ལྟུ་པན་ལ་བྱེད་པར་)

བཟུང་བ།

- I can't find Susan. Where has she gone? (=ད་ལྟ་གང་དུ་ཡོད་དམ)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where have you been?



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

17.1 Have you ever... ཚོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་ཕྱིན་ཏུ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཁ་བརྒྱུམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. (London?) Have you ever been to London? | No, never. |
| 2. (play/golf?) Have you ever played golf? | Yes, many times. |
| 3. (Australia?) Have..... | No, never. |
| 4. (lose/ your passport?)..... | Yes, once. |
| 5. (fly/ in a helicopter?)..... | No, never. |
| 6. (eat/ Chinese food?)..... | Yes, a few times. |
| 7. (New York?)..... | Yes, twice. |
| 8. (drive/ a bus?)..... | No, never. |
| 9. (break/your leg?)..... | Yes, once. |

17.2 གཤམ་ཐུང་17.1 ཡིན་པ་གི་ལན་ལ་བརྟམ་རྗེས་ཏེ་ལྷན་གྱི་སྐོར་ཚོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (New York) **Helen has been to New York twice.**
- (Australia) Helen.....
- (Chinese food).....
- (drive/ a bus).....

ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་ལས་ཀ་དེ་དག་རིམ་རྒྱབ་གྱིན་ཡོད་པ་ཚོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- (New York) I.....
- (play/tennis).....
- (fly/in a helicopter).....
- (be/ late for work or school).....

17.3 ལྷན་རས་ནི་ད་ལ་ལ་65 ཡིན་ལ། མོར་མཆོན་ན་མོར་དག་གི་མི་ཆེ་ནི་སྤྱད་གིས་ཁེངས་པའི་མི་ཆེ་ཞིག་ཡིན།

འདས་ཟིན་པའི་ལོ་ལྔའི་ནང་མོར་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བསྐྱབ་ཡོད། (ལོག་གི་རེད་ཟིག་ནང་གི་ཚོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཚོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།)

have	be
do	write
travel	meet

all over the world	a lot of interesting things
many different jobs	a lot of interesting people
ten books	married three times

- She has had many different jobs.**
- She.....
-
-
-
-

17.4 gone / been གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྤྱད་ཆ་སྐོར་དགོས།

- Bill is on holiday at the moment. He's **gone** to Spain.
- 'Where's Jill?' 'She's not here. I think she's.....to the bank.
- Hello, Sue. Where have you.....? Have you.....to the bank?
- 'Have you ever..... to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
- My parents aren't at home this evening. They've.....out.
- There's a new restaurant in town. Have you.....to it?
- Ann knows Paris well. She'sthere many times.
- Helen was here earlier but I think she'snow.



མེ་ཚན་བཅོ་བརྒྱད་པ། HOW LONG HAVE YOU.....? གྲུབ་ཟིན་དུ་ལྟ་བ། ༤

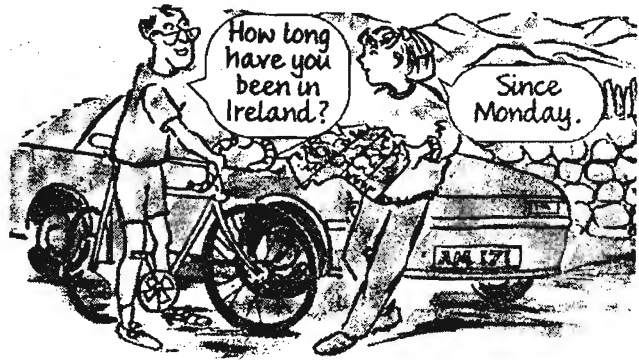
ག

ཐེ་ལི་ཡིས་གུང་གཞིང་གི་དུས་ཚིག་ལོ་རྒྱུད་ནས་ཨེ་ཤ་ལན་དུ་ལྟ་སྐོར་དུ་ཕྱིན་ཞིང།
དུ་ལྟ་སྐོར་ཨེ་ཤ་ལན་དུ་ཡོད། གནས་དེར་མོ་གཟའ་ལྷ་བར་འབྱོར་ཞིང་དེ་རིང་ནི་
གཟའ་ལྟག་པ་ཡིན།

How long has she been in Ireland?

She has been in Ireland { since Monday.
for three days.

is དང་'has been གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

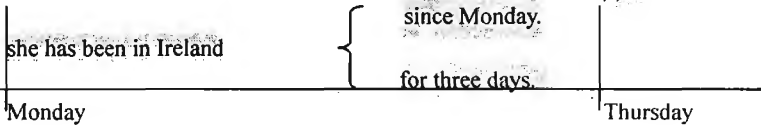


She is in Ireland

དུ་ལྟ་བ

is = དུ་ལྟ་བ

Has been= གྲུབ་ཟིན་དུ་ལྟ་བ།



ཁ བསྟར་བ།

ཐུར་བཅང་དུ་ལྟ་བ།

གྲུབ་ཟིན་དུ་ལྟ་བ།

Mark and Liz are married. They have been married for five years.

(not 'they are married for five years.)

Are you married? How long have you been married?

(not ' how long do you married.)

Do you know Sarah? I've known her for a long time.

(not 'how long do you know her?)

I know Sarah. I've known her for a long time.

(not ' I know her for...)

Linda lives in London. How long has she lived in London?

She has lived there all her life.

I have a car. How long have you had your car?

I've had it since April.

དུ་ལྟ་བ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ།

གྲུབ་ཟིན་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་དུ་ལྟ་བ།

I'm learning German. How long have you been learning German?

(not ' how long are you learning German?')

I've been learning German for two years.

David is watching TV. How long has he been watching TV?

He's been (=he has been)watching TV since 5 o'clock.

It's raining. It's been raining all day.





མཆན་བརྒྱུད་ཀྱི་བ། FOR, SINCE དང་ AGO

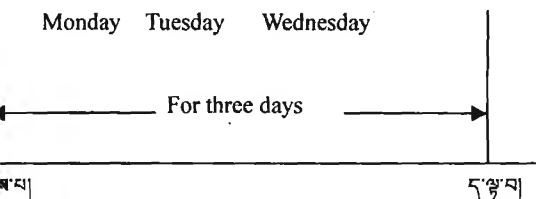
for དང་ since

ཆོས་ལས་ཀྱི་ཞིག་དུས་ཡུན་ཅི་ཙམ་གྱི་རིང་དུ་སྐབས་མིན་སྐོར་སྐབས་སུ་since/for བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད།

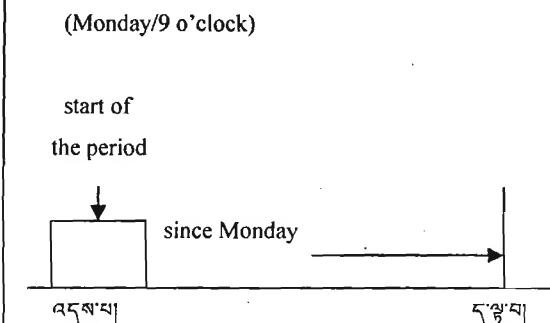
is in Ireland. She has been there { for three days.
since Monday.

ཆོས་for ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་དུས་ཚད་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་བཀོལ། since ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་ལས་མགོ་བརྩམས་པའི་དུས་ཚད་བཀོལ།

three days/two years)



for	
Three days	ten minutes
An hour	two hours
A week	four weeks
A month	six months
Five years	a long time



since	
Monday	Wednesday
9 o'clock	12.23
24 July	Christmas
January	I was ten years old
1985	we married

Richard has been in Canada for six months.

since six months ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་།

We've been waiting for two hours.

'since two hours ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་།

I've lived in London for a long time.

Richard has been in Canada since

January. (=from January to now.)

We've been waiting since 9 o'clock.

(=from 9 o'clock to now)

I've lived in London since I was ten years old.

ago = སྔན་དུ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།

> Susan started her new job three weeks ago. (=གསལ་འཁོར་གསུམ་གྱི་སྔན་དུ་)

> When did Tom go out? Ten minutes ago. (=སྐར་ཆ་བརྒྱ་ཡི་སྔན་དུ་)

> I had dinner an hour ago.

> Life was very different a hundred years ago.

མཆན་ago དང་མཉམ་དུ་འདས་པའི་ལས་ཆོག་བཤེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས།

དང་ for གཉིས་བསྐྱར་བ།

> When did Jill arrive in Ireland?

> She arrived in Ireland three days ago.

> How long has she been in Ireland?

> She has been in Ireland for three days.

གཤམ་པ་ལྟེན་པ།

19.1 for ཡང་ན་ since བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་ང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Jill has been in Ireland...**since**...Monday.
2. Jill has been in Ireland...**for**...three days.
3. My aunt has lived in Australia.....15 years.
4. Margaret is in her office. She has been there.....7 o'clock.
5. India has been an independent country1947.
6. The bus is late. We've been waiting.....20 minutes.
7. Nobody lives in those houses. They have been emptymany years.
8. Mike has been ill.....a long time. He has been in hospital.....October.

19.2 ago བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- | | | |
|----|---|------------------------|
| 1. | When was your last meal? | <u>Three hours ago</u> |
| 2. | When was the last time you were ill? | ..... |
| 3. | When did you last go to the cinema? | ..... |
| 4. | When was the last time you were in a car? | ..... |
| 5. | When was the last time you went on holiday? | ..... |

19.3 ago/ for གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ལྟམ་ཆུང་ཆུང་བར་

བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Jill arrived in Ireland **three days ago**. (three days)
2. Jill has been in Ireland **for three days**. (three days)
3. Linda and Frank have been married.....(20years)
4. Linda and Frank got married.....(20years)
5. Dan arrived.....(ten minutes)
6. We had lunch.....(an hour)
7. Silvia has been learning English(six months)
8. Have you known Lisa.....(a long time)
9. I bought these shoes.....(a few days)

19.4 für ཡང་ན་འོ་གཉིས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཚིག་ཐུབ་ཆ་ཆོང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Jill is in Ireland now. She arrived there three days ago. She has been there for three days.
2. Jack is here. He arrived here on Tuesday. He has.....
3. It's raining. It started an hour ago. It's been.....
4. I know sue. I first met Sue two years ago. I've.....
5. I have a camera. I bought it in 1989. I've.....
6. They are married. They got married six months ago. They've.....
7. Liz is studying medicine at university. She started three years ago. She has.....
8. Dave plays the piano. He started when he was seven years old. Dave has.....

19.5 ལྟོ་རྒྱུ་ནང་གི་ཆོས་དཔེ་ཆོས་ལུབ་ཤི་མཚོ་ར་བཀོལ་ནས་ཁྲིད་རང་ཉིད་སྐྱར་བྱེད་ཆོས་ལུབ་ཤི་མཚོ་ར་བཀོལ་ནས་

1. (I've lived).....
2. (I've been)
3. (I've been learning)
4. (I've known)
5. (I've had)



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

20.1 སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

1. Have you seen Ann? (5 minutes ago) **Yes, I saw her 5 minutes ago.**
2. Have you started your new job? (last week) Yes, I last week.
3. Have your friends arrived? (at 5 o'clock) Yes, they.....
4. Has Sarah gone away? (on Friday) Yes,.....
5. Have you worn your new shoes? (yesterday) Yes,.....

20.2 འཕྲིད་ཐིག་བཀོད་ཡོད་པའི་ལས་ཆོག་རྣམས་འགྲིག་མིན་ལ་བལྟ་དགོས།

1. I've lost my key. I can't find it. **Right**
2. Have you seen Ann yesterday? **Wrong: did you see...**
3. I've finished my work at 2 o'clock.
4. I'm ready now. I've finished my work.
5. What time have you finished your work?
6. Sue isn't here. She's gone out.
7. Jim's grandmother has died in 1989.
8. Where have you been last night?

20.3 སྟོང་ཁྱིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་རྣམས་འདས་པའམ་འདས་པའི་འདས་པར་བཅོས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་

ཡང་དག་པར་བཅོ་དགོས།

1. My friend is a writer. He **has written** (write) many books.
2. We **didn't have** (not/have) a holiday last year.
3. I(play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
4. What time(you/go) to bed last night?
5.(you/ever/meet) a famous person?
6. The weather.....(not/be) very good yesterday.
7. My hair is wet. I(just/wash)
8. I(wash) my hair before breakfast this morning.
9. Kathy travels a lot. She(visit) many countries.
10. 'Is Sonia here?' 'No, she(not/ come) yet.

20.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རྣམས་གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བུ་དང་ཡང་ན་སྒྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་རྣམ་པར་བཅོ་དགོས།

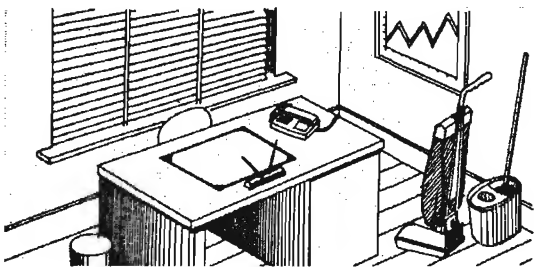
A: have you ever been (you/ever/be) to Florida?	Rose works in a factory. She .....(work) there for six months. Before that she.....
B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday to years ago.	(be) a waitress in a restaurant. She .....(work) there for two years but she .....(not/enjoy) it very much.
A: .....(you/have) a good time?	
B: Yes, it.....(be) great.	
A: Where's Alan?.....(you/see) him?	A: Do you know Martin's sister?
B: Yes, he .....(go) out a few minutes ago.	B: I .....(see) her a few times but I .....(never/speak) to her. ....( you/ ever/ speak) to her?
A: And Julia?	A: Yes. I .....meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.
B: I don't know. I .....(not/ see) her.	



མེ་ཆེན་ཉིར་གཅིག་པ། IS DONE དང་། WAS DONE གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ། །

། The office is cleaned every day. The office was cleaned yesterday.

རང་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་དང་གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པ་ཚུན་བསྐྱར་བ།



Somebody cleans the office every day. (རང་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ)

The office is cleaned every day. (གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ)

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. (རང་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ)

The office was cleaned yesterday. (གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ)

། གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་སྒྲིབ་འགྲོས་ནི།

བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་ + རྒྱུ་མཚན་ལས་ཆེག་ + ལས་ཆེག་གི་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ + by + བྱེད་པ་པོ།

སྒྲིབ་བྱེད་དུ་ལྟ་བུ།

སྒྲིབ་བྱེད་འདས་པ།

Am/is/are (not)

Was/were (not)

Cleaned done

Invented built

Injured taken

གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཆེག་གི་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ནི done/built/taken སྒྲིག་སྒྲུབ་བྱེད་པོ། ཟུར་བཞོན་2-3 ལ་སྟོས།

- Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- How often are these rooms cleaned?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house was built 100years ago.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- When was the phone invented?
- We weren't invited to the party last week.
- 'Was anybody injured in the accident?' 'Yes, two people were taken to hospital.'

། was/were born

- I was born in London in 1972. (I am born ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Where were you born?

རྒྱུ་མཚན་གཞན་དབང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བྱེད་པ་པོ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས་ཆོ། ང་ཆོས་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མཆུག་ཏུ་བེད་

སྤྱོད་བྱེད་ལ་དེའི་སྒྲིབ་ཏུ་ང་ཆོས་ངེས་པར་ཏུ་ by བཞོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- We were woken up by a loud noise. (སྤྱོད་པ་པོ་ཆེག་ཉིད་ལས་བསྐྱངས་སྤང་ཞེས་བའི་དོན།)
- The phone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1879.
- My brother was bitten by a dog last week.



གཤམ་སྒྱུ་

21.1 སྒྲིམ་ཁྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས། ཆོག་གྲུབ་1 ནས་7 བར་ད་ལྟ་བུ་ཡིན།

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. (the office/ clean/ every day) | <u>The office is cleaned every day.</u> |
| 2. (these rooms/ clean/ every day?) | <u>Are these rooms cleaned every day?</u> |
| 3. (glass/make/ from sand) | Glass..... |
| 4. (stamps / sell/ in a post office) | ..... |
| 5. (this room/ not/ use/ very often) | ..... |
| 6. (we/ allow/ to park here?) | ..... |
| 7. (how/ this word/ pronounce?) | ..... |

ཆོག་གྲུབ་8 ནས་15 བར་འདས་པ་ཡིན།

- | | |
|---|--|
| 8. (the office/ clean/ yesterday) | <u>The office was cleaned yesterday.</u> |
| 9. (the house/ paint/ last month) | ..... |
| 10. (three people/ injure/ in the accident) | ..... |
| 11. (my bicycle/ steal/ a few days ago) | ..... |
| 12. (when/ this bridge/ build?) | ..... |
| 13. (you/ invite/ to the party last week?) | ..... |
| 14. (how/ these windows / break?) | ..... |
| 15. (I / not / wake up/ by the noise) | ..... |

21.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. <u>This house built</u> 100 years ago. | <u>This house was built...</u> |
| 2. Football plays in most countries of the world. | ..... |
| 3. Why did the letter sent to the wrong address? | ..... |
| 4. A garage is a place where cars repair. | ..... |
| 5. Where are you born? | ..... |
| 6. How many languages are speaking in Switzerland? | ..... |
| 7. Somebody broke into our house but nothing stolen. | ..... |
| 8. When was invented the bicycle? | ..... |

21.3 གཞན་དབང་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ད་ལྟ་བུ་དང་འདས་པ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

clean damage find give invite make show steal take

- The room is cleaned every day.
- I saw an accident yesterday. Two people were taken to hospital.
- Paper.....from wood.
- There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms.....
- 'Where did you get this picture?' 'It.....to me by a friend of mine.'
- Many American programmes.....on British TV.
- 'Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?' 'No, theybut they didn't go.'
- 'How old is this film?' 'It.....in 1965.
- My carlast week but the next day it.....by the police.

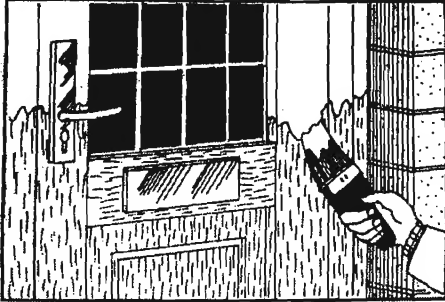
21.4 ཁོང་ཆོས་གནས་གང་དུ་སྐྱེས་པ་ཡིན།

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. (Ian/Edinburgh) | <u>Ian was born in Edinburgh.</u> |
| 2. (Sally/Birmingham) | Sally..... |
| 3. (her parents/Ireland) | Her..... |
| 4. (you/???) | I..... |
| 5. (your mother/???) | ..... |



ཐེ་ཚན་ཉེར་གཉིས་པ། IS BEING DONE AND HAS BEEN DONE. གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ། ༢

༧



གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ད་ལྟ་བུ་བཞིན་པའི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་ནི།

བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་+ is/are being +ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་+ by+བྱེད་པ་པོ།

Somebody is painting the door. (རང་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ)

The door is being painted. (གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ)

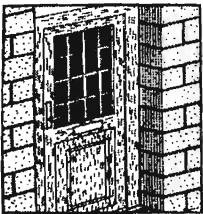
- My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་བཟོ་བཅས་བྱེད་བཞིན་པའི་དོན)
- Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་ཅིག་བཞིན་པའི་དོན)

སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ་གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- The office is being cleaned at the moment. (བྱེད་བཞིན་པ)
- The office is cleaned every day. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་བ)
- In Britian football matches are usually played on Saturday, but no matches are being played next Saturday.

སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་ད་ལྟ་བུ་བཞིན་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་སྤངས་ལྗེ་ཚན་26, 28 ལ་སྟོན།

༨ གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བའི་སྤྱི་འགྲོས་ནི།



BEFORE



NOW

བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་+ has/have been +ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་+ by +བྱེད་པ་པོ།

Somebody has painted the door. (རང་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ)

The door has been painted. (གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་གྲུབ)

- My key has been stolen. (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་བརྒྱུས་པའི་དོན)
- My keys have been stolen. (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་དེ་དག་བརྒྱུས་པའི་དོན)
- I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (=ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་ཀྱང་འགྲན་དུ་མ་བོས་པའི་དོན)
- Has this shirt been washed? (=མི་ཞིག་གིས་དེ་བཞུགས་ཡོད་དམ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན)

གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ་གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

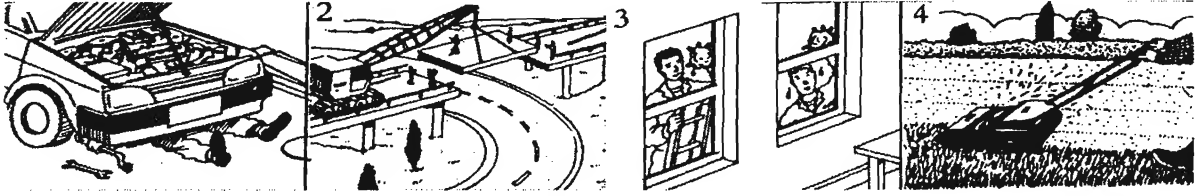
- The room is clean now. It has been cleaned. (གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ)
- The room was cleaned yesterday. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ)
- I can't find my keys. I think they've been stolen. (གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ)
- My keys were stolen last week. (སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ)

གྲུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཤད་སྟེང་བྱེད་སྒྲུབ་ལྗེ་ཚན་20 ལ་སྟོན།



གཤམ་སྒྱུད།

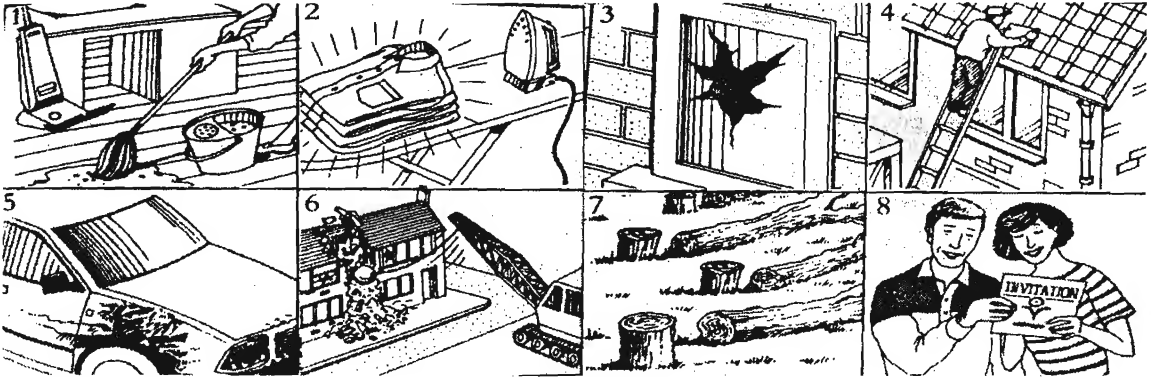
22.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1 The car <u>is being repaired</u> . | 2 A bridge..... |
| 2 The windows..... | 4 The grass..... |

22.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་གནས་ཚུལ་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱུང་བཞིན་ཡོད་པའམ་ཡང་ན་བྱུང་བའི་པ་དག (ཐུབ་ཟིན་དུ་བྱུང་བའི་བྱུང་བ་དང་ལྟོ་སྒྱུད་ལྟར་བྱུང་བ་ཞེས་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།)

བྱུང་བ་དང་ལྟོ་སྒྱུད་ལྟར་བྱུང་བ་ཞེས་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. (the office/ clean) | <u>The office is being cleaned.</u> |
| 2. (the shirts / iron) | <u>The shirts have been ironed.</u> |
| 3. (the window / break) | The window..... |
| 4. (the roof/ repair) | The roof..... |
| 5. (the car/ damage) | ..... |
| 6. (the houses/ knock/down) | ..... |
| 7. (the trees / cut/down) | ..... |
| 8. (they/invite/ to a party) | ..... |

22.3 སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་པེད་སྒྱུད་དེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཚུལ་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས། (ལྷོ་ཆ་ན་21 དང་22 ལ་བལྟས་ནས་)

- I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted (paint).
- We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited. (not/ invite)
- The washing machine was broken but it's OK now. It(repair).
- The washing machine.....(repair)yesterday afternoon.
- A factory is a place where things.....(make).
- How old are these houses? When.....(they/build)?
- A:(the computer/ use) at the moment?
B: Yes, Jim is using it.
- I've never seen these flowers before. What.....(they call)?
- Some trees.....(blow) down in the storm last night.
- The bridge is closed at the moment. It.....(damage) last week and it(not/repair) yet.



ཁྱེ་ཚན་ཉིད་གསུམ་པ། BE/HAVE/DO སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐ་དུ་བཞུགས་པའི་ནང་དུ་བཞུགས་པ།

be (= am/is/are/was/were) ཡི་རྒྱུ་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐ་དུ་བཞུགས་པའི་ནང་དུ་བཞུགས་པ། ing སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐ་དུ་བཞུགས་པ། cleaning

Am/is/are + -ing

(ད་ལྟ་བུ་བཞུགས་པ) ཁྱེ་ཚན།

3-4 དང་26 ལ་ཞུས།

- Please be quiet. I'm working.
- It isn't raining at the moment.
- What are you doing this evening?

Was/were + -ing

(འདས་པའི་བཞུགས་པ)

ཁྱེ་ཚན། 13

- I was working when she arrived.
- It wasn't raining, so we went out.
- What were you doing at three o'clock.

be ཡི་རྒྱུ་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐ་དུ་བཞུགས་པའི་འདས་པ་བཞུགས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

Am/is/are + past participle

གཞན་དབང་ཆོག་གྱུ་བྱེད་པའི་དུ་ལྟ་བུ་ཁྱེ་ཚན། 21

- The room is cleaned every day.
- I'm never invited to parties.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.

Was/were + past participle

(གཞན་དབང་ཆོག་གྱུ་བྱེད་པའི་འདས་པ) ཁྱེ་ཚན།

21

- The room was cleaned yesterday.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- How was the window broken?
- Where were you born?

have/has ཡི་རྒྱུ་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐ་དུ་བཞུགས་པའི་འདས་པ་བཞུགས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

Have/has + འདས་པའི་འདས་པ

(བྱུ་བཞུགས་པ) ཁྱེ་ཚན 15-18

- I've cleaned my room.
- Tom has lost his passport.
- Barbara hasn't been to Canada.
- Where have Paul and Linda gone?

do/does/did ཡི་རྒྱུ་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐ་དུ་བཞུགས་པའི་འདས་པ་བཞུགས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

Do/does + འདས་པའི་འདས་པ

མུ་ལྟ་བུ་བཞུགས་པའི་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ ཁྱེ་ཚན 6-7

- I like coffee but I don't like tea.
- Chris doesn't go out very often.
- What do you usually do at weekends?
- Does Barbara live alone?

Did + འདས་པའི་འདས་པ

མུ་ལྟ་བུ་བཞུགས་པའི་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ ཁྱེ་ཚན 12

- I didn't watch TV yesterday.
- It didn't rain last week.
- What time did Paul and Linda go out?



གཤམ་བྱུང་།

23.1 is/are/do/does སྤྲོད་ཆ་ནུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. Do you work in the evening? | 6 Where <u>are</u> they going? |
| 2. Why .....you looking at me? | 7 .....Bill live near you? |
| 3. ....you like cooking? | 8 .....the sun shining? |
| 4. What time .....the shops close? | 9 .....Ann working today? |
| 5. What .....this word mean? | 10 .....you feeling all right? |

23.2 am not/isn't/aren't/doesn't/don't སྤྲོད་ཆ་ནུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- Tom doesn't work in the evening.
- I'm very tired. Iwant to go out this evening.
- I'm very tired. I.....going out this evening.
- Georgeworking this week. He's on holiday.
- My parents are usually at home. They.....go out very often.
- Barbara has traveled a lot but she...speak any foreign languages.
- You can turn off the TV. I.....watching it.
- There's a party next week but we.....going.

23.3 was/were/did/have/has སྤྲོད་ཆ་ནུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Where <u>were</u> your shoes made? | 6 .....you go out last night? |
| 2. What .....you doing at 10.30? | 7 where.....your mother born? |
| 3. ....Barbara gone home? | 8 What time.....she go? |
| 4. When.....these houses built? | 9 .....Jim arrived yet? |
| 5. Why .....you go home early? | 10 How long .....they been married? |

23.4 is/are/was/were/have/has སྤྲོད་ཆ་ནུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Joe <u>has</u> lost his passport. | 6 I.....just made some coffee |
| 2. This bridge.....built ten years ago. | Would you like some? |
| 3. ....you finished your work yet? | 7 Gláss ...made from sand. |
| 4. This town is always clean. The streets | 8 This is a very old photograph. |
|cleaned every day. | It .....taken a long time ago. |
| 5. . Where .....you born? | 9 Joe .....bought a new car. |

23.5 གཤམ་བྱུང་ལས་ཆོག་ནུས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

Damage eat enjoy go go away listen open pronounce rain understand use

- I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's raining .
- Why are you so tired? Did you go to bed late last night?
- Where are the chocolates: have youthem all?
- How is your new job? Are youit?
- My car was badlyin the accident but I was OK.
- Chris has got a car but she doesn'tit very often.
- Mary isn't at home. She hasfor a few days.
- I don't.....the problem. Can you explain it again?
- Martin is in his room. He'sto music.
- I don't know how to say this word. How is it?
- How do youthis window? Can you show me?



ཟླ་ཚེན་ཉེར་བཞི་ལ། གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཚིག་དང་གཞུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་

༡ གཞུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་

གཞུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་གི་འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སུ་-ed ལྟར་དགོས།

Clean ---cleaned live---lived paint---painted study---studied

འདས་པ། (ཉེ་ཆར་11 ལ་ལྟར་)

- > I cleaned my shoes yesterday.
- > Charlie studied engineering at university.

འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།

ཐུབ་ཟིན་དུ་ལ་ཞི་ have / has +ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་བཞུགས་དགོས། (ཉེ་ཆར་15-18 ལྟར་)

- > I have cleaned my shoes.
- > Jane has lived in London for ten years.

གཞན་དབང་ཚིག་ཐུབ་ཏུ་ is/are/were/has been + ལས་ཚིག་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་བཟུང་ཕྱིད་དགོས། (ཉེ་ཆར་21-22 ལྟར་)

- > These rooms are cleaned every day.
- > My car has been repaired.

ཁ གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཚིག་

གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཚིག་གི་འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སུ་-ed ལྟར་མི་ཚོགས་དཔེར་ན།

འདས་པ།	make	find	buy	cut
འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།	made	found	bought	cut

ཡིད་འཇོག་ཕྱིད་དགོས་པ། ལྷག་པོར་ལས་ཚིག་གི་འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་གཞུགས་གཅིག་པ་ཡང་ཡོད་དེ། དཔེར་ན།

འདས་པ།	make	break	cut
འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།	made	broke	cut
	made	broken	cut

- > I made a cake yesterday. (ཐུབ་བཟང་འདས་པ་)
- > I have made some coffee. (འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ཐུབ་ཟིན་དུ་ལ་)
- > Butter is made from milk. (འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཞན་དབང་ཆན་ཐུབ་ཏུ་ལ་)

ལྷག་པོར་འདས་པ་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་གཞུགས་མི་འདྲ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

འདས་པ།	Break	know	begin	go
འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།	broke	knew	begin	went
	broken	known	began	gone

- > Somebody broke this window last night. (ཐུབ་བཟང་འདས་པ་)
- > Somebody has broken this window. (འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ཐུབ་ཟིན་དུ་ལ་)
- > This window was broken last night. (འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་གཞན་དབང་ཆན་ཐུབ་ཏུ་ལ་)



གཤམ་སྒྱུར་།

24.1 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་དག་གི་འདས་ཚིག་ཕྱིས།

1 make **made** 2 cut **cut** 3 get..... 4 bring..... 5 pay..... 6 enjoy..... 7 buy..... 8 sit.....
9 leave..... 10 happen..... 11 hear..... 12 put..... 13 catch..... 14 watch..... 15 understand.....

24.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་དག་གི་འདས་ཚིག་དང་འདས་པའི་འདས་པ་ཕྱིས།

1 break broke .. broken	4 drink	7 speak
2 begin	5 drive	8 write
3 eat	6 run	9 come
10 know	13 give	
11 take	14 throw	
12 go	15 forget.	

24.3 སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཚིག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྒྱུས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཞོ་དགོས། (ལས་ཚིག་རྒྱུས་གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ཚིག་)

1. I **washed** my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2. Somebody has **broken** this window. (break)
3. I feel good. Ivery well last night. (sleep)
4. We a very good film yesterday. (see)
5. It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
6. I'vemy bag. (lose) Have youit?(see)
7. Rosa's bicycle waslast week. (steal)
8. Ito bed early because I was tired. (go)
9. Have youyour work yet? (finish)
10. The shopping center wasabout 20 years ago.(build)
11. Annto drive when she was 18. (learn)
12. I've never.....a horse. (ride)
13. Julia is a good friend of mine. I'veher for a long time. (know)
14. Yesterday Iandmy leg. (fall/hurt)

24.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་སྒྲིམ་ཆ་རྒྱུས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཞོ་དགོས། (ལས་ཚིག་རྒྱུས་གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ཚིག་)

cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win

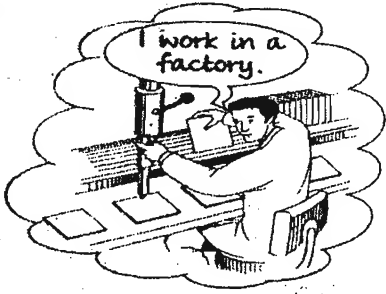
1. I have **made** some coffee. Would you like some?
2. Have youJohn about your new job?
3. We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we.....
4. I know Gary but I've never.....his wife.
5. We wereby loud music in the middle of the night.
6. Stephanie jumped into the river andto the other side.
7. 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.'
8. Many different languages arein the Philippines.
9. Our holiday.....a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10. Have you evera very fast car.
11. All the tickets for the concert were very quickly.
12. A bird.....in through the open window while we were having our dinner.



ཕ་ཚེན་ཉིད་ལྟ་བུ། I USED TO.....

७

ལ་ཤམ་ཕྱོད་གྱི་སྒྲ་བའོ།

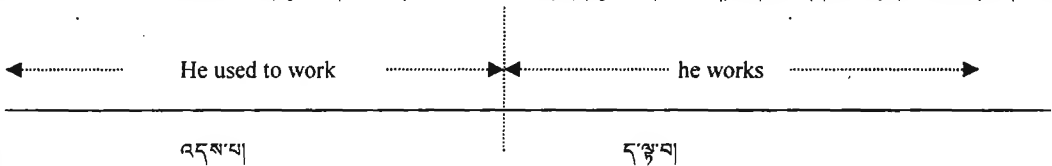


ད་ལྟའི་དུས་ཀྱི་སྤྱོད་པ་ལྟེ།



Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave used to work in a factory. ཞི་དུས་འདས་པའི་ནང་མུ་བའི་ཡིས་བཟོ་བྱ་ཞིག་དུ་ལས་ཀ་ལས་མོད། འོན་ཀྱང་ད་ཉི་མོ་མུ་དེར་འཇོ་བྱ་མེད་པའི་དོན་ནོ།



བ ར་ཚོས་འདི་སྟེར་བཤད་ཚོགས་སྟེ། I used to work...../she used to havethey used to be....

I/you/we/they/ he/she/it	Used to	Be Work Have Play
-----------------------------	---------	----------------------------

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now but it used to be very long.
- They used to live in the same street as us, so we often used to see them. But we don't see them very often these days.
- Ann used to have a piano but she sold it a few years ago.

used to ཡི་དགག་ཆོག་ནི **didn't use to** ཡིན།

- When I was a child I didn't use to like tomatoes.

Used to ཡི་འདྲི་ཚིག་ནི **did you use to** ཡིན།

- Where did you use to live before you came here?

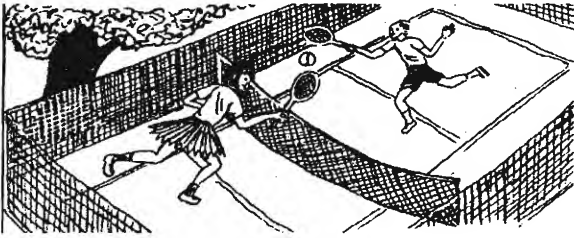
ག ར་ཆོས་^{used to} ཞི་འདས་པ་གཅིག་ཏུ་ར་བཀོལ་སྒྱུད་ཁྱེད་པ་ལས་ད་ལྟ་བར་བཀོལ་སྒྱུད་ཁྱེད་མི་ཏུ་ང་།

- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (I use to play golf ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- We usually get up early. (we use to get up early ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



ཟླ་ཆེན་ཉེར་ཁྲིམ་། WHAT ARE YOU DOING TOMORROW?

༡



They are playing tennis (ད་ལྟ་ལ་).



He is playing tennis tomorrow.

ང་ཆོས་am/is/are + ལས་ཆོག་ + ing (get + ing = getting) གི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ད་ལྟ་དང་སྤྱི་ལོ་ལས་བཞིན་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད།

- Where are Sue and Caroline? They're playing tennis in the park.
- Please be quite. I'm working.

གཞན་ང་ཆོས་ད་དུང་am/is/are + ལས་ཆོག་ + ing གི་མ་འོངས་པར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I'm not working next week.

༢ I am doing something tomorrow གི་མ་འོངས་པའི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་བཞིན་མྱིག་བྱས་ཟིན་པའམ་ཡང་ན་འཆར་གཞི་

བཟོས་ཆར་བའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཞིན་ལ།

- Alice is going to the dentist on Friday. (= she has an appointment to see the dentist)
- We're having a party next weekend.
- Are you meeting tomorrow evening?
- I'm not going out tonight. I'm staying at home.

གཞན་ཁྱོད་ཀྱི་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ཟླ་ 'I'm going to do something' (ཞིབ་ཐོར་ཤེ་ཆོད་ཀྱི་ལ་སྟེན་པ་)

༣ འཆར་གཞིའམ་བཞིན་མྱིག་བྱས་ཟིན་པའི་མ་འོངས་པའི་ལས་ཀར་ང་ཆོས་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་བཞིན་ལ་མི་ཆོག་

- I'm staying at home this evening. (I stay ཞེས་བཞིན་ལ་མི་རུང་)
- Are you going out tonight? (do you go ཞེས་བཞིན་ལ་མི་རུང་)
- Ann isn't coming to the party next week. (Ann doesn't come ཞེས་བཞིན་ལ་མི་རུང་)

གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཆོས་ཆོད་དམ་ལེ་ཆོད་སྟགས་ལ་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

- The train arrives at 7:30.
- What time does the film finish?

བསྟར་བ།

ང་ཆོས་མི་ལ་ད་ལྟ་བཞིན་པ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

- I'm going to a concert tomorrow.
- What time are you leaving?

ང་ཆོས་དུས་ཚོད་དམ་ལེ་ཆོད་སྟགས་ལ་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

- The concert starts at 7.30.
- What time does your train leave?



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

26.1 རི་མོ་འེ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་གཟུང་ཆེས་མའི་གཟུང་པ་སངས་ཉིན་ལས་ཀ་ཅི་ཞིག་བསྐྱབ་ཆུང་འཆར་གཞི་ཡོ་
པའི་སྐོར་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོ་དགོས།

1 ANDREW



2 RICHARD



3 BARBARA



4 DENISE



5 TOM AND SUB



- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| 1. Andrew is playing tennis on Friday... | 4 .....lunch with Ken. |
| 2. Richard .....to the cinema. | 5 |
| 3. Barbara..... | |

26.2 སྐོར་བྱེད་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་མ་འོངས་པའི་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཅོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. (you/go/out/tonight?) | Are you going out tonight? |
| 2. (you/work/next week?) | ..... |
| 3. (what/you/do/tomorrow evening?) | ..... |
| 4. (what time/ your friends arrive?) | ..... |
| 5. (when/Liz/ go/on holiday?) | ..... |

26.3 རྒྱུ་མའི་གཟུང་པ་སངས་ཉིན་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་ཆུང་འཆར་གཞི་ཡོད་མེད་སྐོར་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཅོ་དགོས།

1. **I'm staying at home tonight.**
2. **I'm going to the theatre on Monday.**
3.
4.
5.
6.

26.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་ནམས་ད་ལྟ་བུ་བཞེན་པའམ་ཡང་ན་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུའི་ནམ་པར་བསྐྱར་ནས་ཆོག་
གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཅོ་དགོས།

1. **Are you going** (you/go) out this evening? No, I'm too tired.
2. **We are going** (we/go) to a concert this evening. **It starts** (it/start) at 7.30.
3. Do you know about Sally?.....(she/get) married next month!
4. A: My parents.....(go) on holiday next week.
B: Oh, that's nice. Where(they/go)?
5. Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course.....(finish) on Friday.
6. There's a football match tomorrow but(I /not/go).
7.(I /go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too?.....(we/meet) at John's house at 8 o'clock.
8. A: How(you/ get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus(leave) at midnight.
9. A: Do you want to go to the cinema tonight?
B: Yes, what time.....(the film/ begin)?
10. A: What(you/do) on Monday afternoon?
B:(I/work).



ཟླ་ཚེན་ཉིན་འདྲུག་པ། I AM GOING TO...

ཀྱི། I'm going to (do something)

ཞིགས་པར

དགོང་མོར



She is going to watch TV this evening.

ང་ཚོས་ (am/is/are going to + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་) བློ་འདོངས་པར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

I am		do...
He/she/it is	(not) going to	drink...
We/you/they are		watch...

Am I		buy...?
Is he/she/it	going to	eat...?
Are they/you/we		wear...?

ཀྱི། I am going to do something བློ་འདོངས་པར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

པེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

I decided to do it _____ I'm going to do it _____

འདས་པ།

ད་ཀྱི་པ།

མ་འོངས་པ།

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
- Your hands are dirty. Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.
- Are you going to invite John to your party?

གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཚོས་ད་ཀྱི་པེད་སྤྱོད་བཞིན་པ་ནི་བཞོན་སྡིག་ཁྱེད་མེད་པེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན། (ཞིབ་མོར་ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 26 ལ་སྟུང་)

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

ག། Something is going to happen བློ་འདོངས་པར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

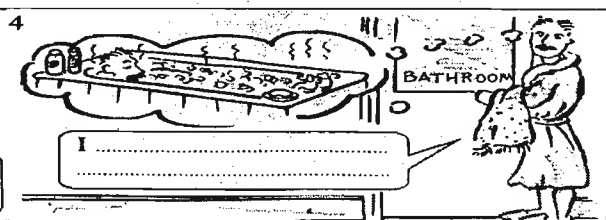
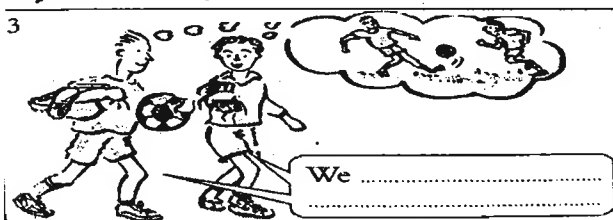
- Look at the sky! It's going to rain. (ད་ཀྱི་སྟོན་ནས་འབྲིན་པེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ།)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
- I'm going to be late. (ད་ཀྱི་སྟོན་ནས་འབྲིན་པེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ།)





གཤམ་སྒྱུད།

27.1 རི་མོ་འོ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བསྐད་ཀྱིན་ཡོད་པ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

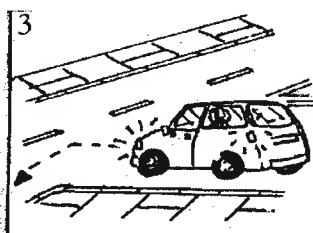
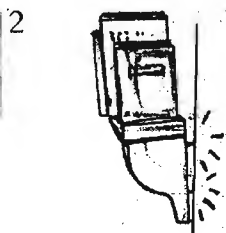


27.2 going to ཡི་རྩེས་སུ་གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་གང་རུང་འོ་གོ་ལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་ན་མས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

eat do give lie down stay walk wash watch wear

1. My hands are dirty. I'm going to wash them.
2. What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
3. I don't want to go home by bus. I
4. John is going to London next week. He.....with some friends.
5. I'm hungry. Ithis sandwich.
6. It's Sharon's birthday next week. Weher a present.
7. Sue says she's feeling very tired. She.....for an hour.
8. There's a good film on TV this evening.you.....it?
9. WhatRachel.....when she leaves school?

27.3 རི་མོ་ར་བལྟས་ནས་མ་འོངས་པར་ལས་ཀ་ཅི་ཞིག་འབྱུང་གི་དམིན་སྟོར་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1 It's going to rain.

3 The car.....

2 The shelf

4 He.....

27.4 བྱོད་ཀྱིས་དེ་རིང་ངམ་ཡང་ན་སང་ཉིན་ཅི་ཞིག་སྒྲུབ་རྒྱུ་འཆར་གཞི་ཡོད་མེད་སྟོར་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གསུམ་རེ་བྲིས།

1 I'm.....

2

3



ཆེ་ཆུང་ཉེར་བརྒྱད་པ། SHALL / WILL 7

༡



སྤར་ནི་ནམ་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཀར་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ཡོད་ལ། ཁོ་ཚོས་
རྒྱུ་དུ་ཞོགས་པའི་ཆུ་ཚོད་ 8:30 ནས་ཕྱི་དྲོ་ 4:30 བར་ལས་
ཀ་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད།

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah is at work.
At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work.
At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

Will + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བཞོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

I/we/you/ they/he/she/it	will ('ll)	be
	will not (won't)	win eat come

will	I/we/you/ they/he/she/it	be? win? eat? come?
------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

'll གི་will ཡི་བསྟུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ་ཡིན། I'll གི་I will ཡི་བསྟུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ་ཡིན། you'll /she'll སྐད་སྒྲུབ་བཞིན་ནོ།
won't གི་will not ཡི་བསྟུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ་ཡིན། I won't གི་I will not ཡི་བསྟུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ་ཡིན། you won't / she won't སྐད་སྒྲུབ་བཞིན་ནོ།

ཁ ང་ཆོས་ will གི་མ་འོངས་པར་བེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད། (tomorrow/ next week སྐད་སྒྲུབ་ཉེ་མ་འོངས་པ་སྟོན་པའི་དུས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཞོལ།)

- > Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'll be in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.
- > You can phone me this evening. I'll be at home.
- > Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
- > We'll probably go out this evening.
- > Will you be at home this evening?
- > I won't be here tomorrow. (=I will not be here)
- > Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

ནམ་རྒྱུ་དང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ཟླ་ I think... will...

- > I think Diana will pass the exam.
- > I don't think it will rain the afternoon.
- > Do you think the exam will be difficult?

ག བཞོད་སྒྲིག་བྱས་ཟིན་པའི་མ་འོངས་པའམ་ཡང་ན་ཐག་བཅད་ཟིན་པའི་མ་འོངས་པར་ང་ཆོས་will བཞོལ་སྤྱད་

བྱས་མི་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན། (ཉེ་ཆར་ 26 དང་ 27 ལ་སྟོས་)

- > We're going to the cinema on Saturday. (not we will go ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- > I'm not working tomorrow. (not I won't work ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- > Are you going to do the exam? (not will you do ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ང གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ཟླ་ I shall (= I will) དང་ we shall (=we will)

- > I shall be late tomorrow. ཡང་ན་ I will (I'll) be late tomorrow.
 - > I think we shall win. ཡང་ན་ think we will (we'll) win.
- ཡིན་ནའང་shall གི་you/ they/ he/ she/it སྐད་སྒྲུབ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་མི་རུང་བ། དཔེར་ན།
- > Tom will be late. (Tom shall be ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



མེ་ཆེན་ཉེར་དགུ་བ།

WILL/SHALL ༡

ག



Will... (I will) བོ་ང་ཆོས་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད་སྐབས་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་བསྐྱབ་རྒྱུ་འཕྲི་མེས་ཐག་བཅད་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་

སྤྱད་ཅིང་། དཔེར་ན།

- My bag is very heavy. I'll carry it for you.
- I'll phone you tomorrow, ok? Ok, good-bye.

ང་ཆོས་ནམ་རྒྱུ་ཐག་བཅད་ཟིན་པའི་ལས་ཀར་ I think I'll... ཅང་ I don't think I'll... ཞེས་བཤད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. I think I'll sit in the garden.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

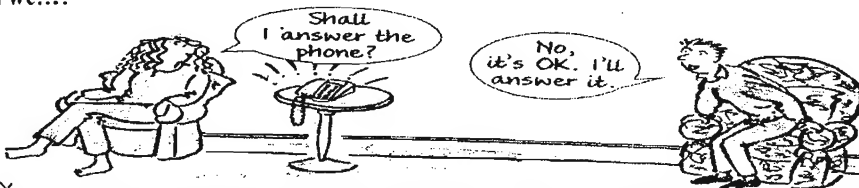
གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ནང་དུ་ང་ཆོས་སྤྱོད་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་སྟེ་ (I go/ I phone མོག་མོག་) བཞོལ་སྤྱོད་ཅིང་མི་རུང་།

- I'll phone you tomorrow, Ok? (I phone you ཞེས་བཞོལ་མི་རུང་)
- I think I'll go to bed early. (I go to bed ཞེས་བཞོལ་མི་རུང་)

ང་ཆོས་སྤྱོད་ནས་ཐག་བཅད་ཟིན་པའི་ལས་ཀར་ I'll... ཞེས་བཞོལ་སྤྱོད་ཅིང་མི་ཆོག་། (ཕྱི་ཆེན་26-27 ལ་སྟེ་)

- I'm working tomorrow. (I'll work ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- There's a good film on TV tonight. I'm going to watch it. (I'll watch ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- What are you doing at the weekend? (what will you do ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

shall I...? Shall we...?



Shall I / we + ལས་ཆོག་ དེའི་དོན་ནི་ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྐབས་ན་བཟང་ངམ་ཞེས་བའི་དོན་ནམ། དྲན་ཚུལ་ལམ་བསམ་སྒྲི་དེ་ལག་པ་ཞིག་ཅིང་དམ་ཞེས་བའི་དོན་ནོ།

- It's very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- Shall I phone you this evening? Yes, please.
- I'm going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?
- It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- Let's go out this evening. OK, what time shall we meet?



གསལ་བཤད་

29.1 I'll (I will) ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་གསལ་བཤད་གི་ལས་ཆོག་ཅེ་བཞོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

carry do eat send show sit stay

My bag is very heavy.	I'll carry it for you.
Enjoy your holiday.	Thank you. ....you a postcard.
I don't want this banana.	Well, I'm hungry. ....it
Do you want a chair?	No, it's OK. on the floor
Did you phone Jenny?	Oh no, I forgot. ....it now.
Are you coming with me?	No, I don't think so. ....here.
How do you use this camera?	Give it to me and ....you.

29.2 I think I'll... འཕམ་ I don't think I'll གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་གསལ་བཤད་གི་ལས་ཆོག་ཅེ་བཞོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་ཁ་སྐོང་དགོས།

Buy go have play

1. it's cold today. I **don't think I'll go** out.
2. I'm hungry. I..... something to eat.
3. I feel tired.tennis.
4. This camera is too expensive.it.

29.3 བཅར་ཤ་གཙོད་པ།

1. I phone/ I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? I'll phone is right.
2. I haven't done the shopping yet. I do/ I'll do it later.
3. I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
4. I need some exercise. I think I go/ I'll go for a walk.
5. Jim is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6. This letter is for Rose. 'OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.
7. A : Are you doing/ will you do anything this evening?
B : Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.

29.4 རེ་བྱ་མིག་ A དང་ B ལས་མིང་ཆོག་ཅེ་བཅའ་མས་རྗེས་ shall I ... བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

A	Turn on make	B	Some sandwiches the television
	Turn off open		The window the light
1.	It's very warm in this room.	Shall I open the window?	
2.	This programme isn't very good.	.....
3.	I'm hungry.	.....
4.	It's dark in this room.	.....

29.5 རེ་བྱ་མིག་ A དང་ B ལས་མིང་ཆོག་ཅེ་བཅའ་མས་རྗེས་ Shall we... བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

A: What where
What time who

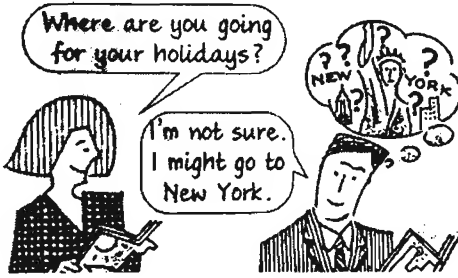
B: Buy invite
Go meet

1. Let's go out tonight. OK, what time shall we meet?
2. Let's have a holiday. OK,
3. Let's spend some money. OK,
4. Let's have a party. OK,



ཐེ་ཚན་སྤྲུལ་བྱ་བ། MIGHT

༡



He might go to New York.
(མ་འོངས་པར་ཉིན་ལྟ་རུ་འགྲོ་སྲིད་པའི་དོན)



It might rain.
(ཆར་བ་འབབ་ཐུག་པའི་དོན)

Might + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཞུགས་བཞོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

I/we/you/they he/she/it	Might (not)	be go play come
----------------------------	-------------	--------------------------

༢ I might བེ་ང་ཚོས་མ་འོངས་པར་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་སྐབ་སྲིད་པའམ་ཡང་ན་འབྱུང་སྲིད་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཞོལ།

- I might go to the cinema this evening. (དོ་རྒྱལ་ང་ཞིག་བརྟན་ལ་ལྷ་རུ་འགྲོ་སྲིད་པའི་དོན)
- A: When is Barbara going to phone you?
B: I don't know. She might phone this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You might be lucky. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་ཚུང་རང་ལ་རྒྱུང་ཆ་ཡག་པོ་འདུག་ཞེས་པའི་དོན)
- Are you going out tonight? I might. (ང་ཕྱི་རུ་འགྲོ་སྲིད་པའི་དོན)

གཤམ་ཕྱི་ཚེག་སྐབ་དག་གི་མི་འདྲ་སར་སྐབ་སྲིད་བྱས།

- I'm playing tennis tomorrow. (དོན་དངོས་ཡིན་པའམ་ལས་སྐབ་ཐག་གཅོད་ཡིན་པའི་དོན)
- I might play tennis tomorrow. (ཅིང་མ་ཅི་སྲིད་པའི་དོན)
- Barbara is going to phone later. (དོན་དངོས་ཡིན)
- Barbara might phone later. (ལ་པར་གཏོང་སྲིད་པའི་དོན)

༣ might ཡི་དགག་ཚིག་ནི་might not ཡིན།

- I might not go to work tomorrow. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་ང་ཕྱི་རུ་མི་འགྲོ་བའི་དོན)
- Sue might not come to the party. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་མི་མེ་ཡོང་བའི་དོན)

༤ ང་ཚོས་may ནི་might ལྟར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཚེག་པ་སྟེ་ I may ...

- I may go to the cinema this evening. (I might go གཉིས་དོན་གཅིག་ཡིན)
- Sue may not come to the party. (Sue might not come གཉིས་དོན་གཅིག)

May I ...? ལས་དེ་སྐབ་ན་འགྲིག་གམ་ཡང་ན་ལས་དེ་སྐབ་ཐུབ་བམ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།

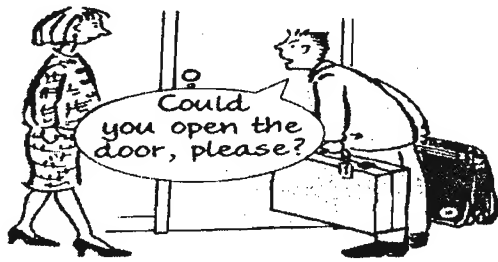
- May I ask a question? (can I ask ཞེས་པའི་དོན་འདྲོ)
- May I sit here? Yes, of course.





སྒྲིག་སྒྲིག་གི་ཐོག་ནས་ CAN ནང COULD

༡



Can + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས། (can do / can play / can come)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	can can not(can't)	do play see come.
----------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------

Can	I/we/you/they He/she/it	do? play? see? come?
-----	----------------------------	-------------------------------

༢ I can do something = བྱ་སྒྲིག་གི་ལས་ཆོག་པའི་དོན་དམ་ཡང་ན་སྒྲིག་གི་ལས་ཆོག་པའི་དོན།

- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- Sarah can speak Italian but she can't speak Spanish.
- Can you swim? Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.
- Can you change twenty pounds? I'm sorry, I can't.
- I'm having a party next week but Paul and Jenny can't come.

༣ ང་ཚོས་ can ཡི་འདས་པར་ could བེད་སྒྲིག་བྱེད་ཡེད། དེའི་དགག་ཆོག་ནི་ couldn't ཡིན། དཔེར་ན།

- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Anna came to Britain, she couldn't understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night but I couldn't sleep.
- I had a party last week but Paul and Jenny couldn't come.

༤ Can you ...? Could you...? Can I? Could I? སྒྲིག་གི་བཞག་ཆུང་ལ།

ང་ཚོས་མི་གཞན་ལ་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་ཆེད་དུ་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་སྒྲིག་པར་སྒྲུལ་བའམ་རེ་ལྟ་བུ་བྱེད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་ can you...? འམ་

ཡང་ན་ could you...? ཞེས་བཞག་ཆུང་ལ།

- Can you open the door, please? ཡང་ན་ Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a moment, please? ཡང་ན་ Could you wait....?

ང་ཚོས་ can I have...? could I have? སྒྲིག་གི་མི་གཞན་ལ་རེ་སྒྲུལ་བྱེད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྒྲིག་བྱེད།

- Can I have these postcards, please? ཡང་ན་ could I have...?

Can I? could I ...? =ངས་ལས་དེ་སྒྲིག་པར་ན་ཆོག་གམ་ཡང་ན་འགྲིག་གམ་བྱས་པའི་དོན།

- Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? ཡང་ན་ Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- Hello, can I speak to Gerry, please? ཡང་ན་ Could I speak ...? (ཁ་པར་ནང་དུ་)



གཤམ་ཁྱེ་ལས་ཀྱི་འདི་དག་སྐྱབ་ཐུབ་མེད་འདི་དགོས།

31.1 སྐྱེ་ཞབས་དོན་གྱུ་ལགས་ལ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཀྱི་འདི་དག་སྐྱབ་ཐུབ་མེད་འདི་དགོས།



1 ..Can you swim?

2

3

4

5

6



10 KILOMETRES



ཁྱོད་རང་གིས་ལས་ཀྱི་འདི་དག་སྐྱབ་ཐུབ་པམ། (I can བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྱུ་བཟོས་)

7 I

8

9

10

11

12

31.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་can དང་ཡང་ན་can't བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྱུ་བཟོས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

come find hear see speak

- I'm sorry but we **can't come** to your party next Saturday.
- I like this hotel room. You the mountains from the window.
- You are speaking very quietly. I you.
- Have you seen my bag? I it.
- Catherine got the job because she five languages.

31.3 can ཡང་ན་can't གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཆོག་སྐྱེ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་ལས་ཆོག་འཆོམ་པའི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བདམས་ནས་སྟོང་ཆའི་ཁག་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

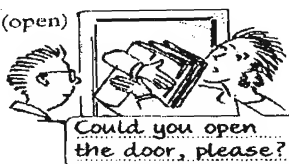
eat decide find go go sleep

- I was tired but I **couldn't sleep**.
- I wasn't hungry yesterday. I my dinner.
- Ann doesn't know what to do. She
- I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday but I him.
- Jim to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
- Paula to the meeting last week. She was ill.

31.4 གཤམ་གྱི་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་གནས་ཚུལ་འོག་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཇི་ལྟར་བཤད། (can ཡང་ན་could གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྟོང་ཆེན་ནང་གི་ལས་

ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྱུ་བཟོ་དགོས་)

1 (open)



Could you open the door, please?

2 (pass)



SALT

3 (turn off)



4 (have)



5 (give)



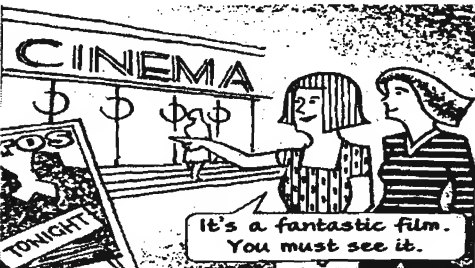
6 (borrow)





སྒྲུབ་པ་ལོག་ཅིས་ལ། MUST MUSTN'T NEEDN'T

༡



must + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས།

I/we/you/they He/she/it	must	do stop go write
----------------------------	------	---------------------------

ཁ must གི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ངེས་པར་དུ་སྒྲུབ་དགོས་པའམ་བསྒྲུབ་འོས་པར་སྒྲུབ་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཀོལ་དགོས།

- > The windows are very dirty. I must clean them.
- > It's a fantastic film. You must see it.
- > We must go to the bank today. We haven't got any money.

must ཡི་འདས་པར་ང་ཚོས་had to བཀོལ་སྤྱད་ཅིང་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

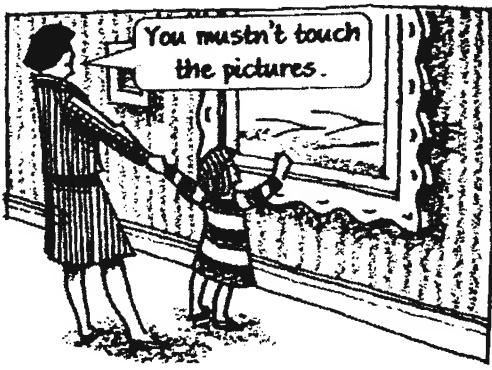
- > We had to go to the bank yesterday. (we must go yesterday ཞེས་བཀོལ་མི་ཆོག)
- > I had to walk home last night. There were no buses. (I must walk ཞེས་བཀོལ་མི་ཆོག)

ག mustn't གི་ must not ཡི་བསྒྲུབ་འཇུག་ཅིང་ཆུང་པ་ཡིན།

I mustn't + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས། (ལས་དེ་སྒྲུབ་མི་ཅུང་བའམ་ཡང་ན་སྒྲུབ་ན་

མི་འགྲིག་པའི་དོན)

- > I must hurry. I mustn't be late.
- > I mustn't forget to phone Julia. (= གི་ཁོང་ལ་ཁ་པར་གཏོང་རྒྱུ་གི་བཤེད་མི་ཅུང་བའི་དོན)
- > Be happy! You mustn't be sad. (= གི་ཡིད་སྦྱོམ་དགོས་པའི་དོན)
- > You mustn't touch the pictures. (= གི་རིག་མི་ཅུང་བའི་དོན)



ང needn't གི་ need not ཡི་བསྒྲུབ་འཇུག་ཅིང་ཆུང་པ་ཡིན།

I needn't + ལས་ཆོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས། (ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྒྲུབ་དགོས་དོན་མེད་པའི་དོན)

- > I needn't clean the windows. They aren't very dirty.
- > You needn't go to the bank today. I can give you some money.

གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་པེ་ don't need to ... (= needn't དང་དོན་འདྲ་བ་)

- > I don't need to clean the windows.
- > You don't need to go to the bank today.

needn't དང་ mustn't གཉིས་བསྒྲུབ་བ།

- > You needn't go. You can stay here if you want.
- > You mustn't go. You must stay here.



གསལ་སྒྱུར།

32.1 **must** དང་མཉམ་དུ་གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་སྟོང་དགོས།

be go go learn meet wash win

1. We **must go** to the bank today. We haven't got any money.
2. Marilyn is a very interesting person. You her.
3. My hands are dirty. I them.
4. You to drive. It will be very useful.
5. I to the post office. I need some stamps.
6. The game tomorrow is very important for us. We
7. You can't always have things immediately. You patient.

32.2 **I must** འཕྲ་ཡང་ན **I had to** བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་སྟོང་དགོས།

1. I **had to go** to the bank yesterday to get some money.
2. It's late. go now.
3. I don't usually work on Saturdays but last Saturday work.
4. get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
5. I went to London by train last week. The train was full and stands all the way.
6. I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. run to get there on time.
7. I forgot to phone David yesterday. phone him later today.

32.3 **mustn't** དང་ **needn't** མཉམ་དུ་གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་སྟོང་དགོས།

clean forget hurry lose wait write

1. The windows aren't very dirty. You **needn't clean** them.
2. We have a lot of time. We
3. Keep these documents in a safe place. You them.
4. I'm not ready yet but for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
5. We to turn off the lights before we leave.
6. I the letter now. I can do it tomorrow.

32.4 རང་དོན་ཆ་མཚུངས་པའི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པུ་ཚུན་ཐིག་གིས་སྒྲུབ་དགོས།

1. We can leave the meeting early.
2. We must leave the meeting early.
3. We mustn't leave the meeting early.
4. We needn't leave the meeting early.
5. We had to leave the meeting early.

- A. We must stay until the end.
- B. We couldn't stay until the end.
- C. We can't stay until the end.
- D. We needn't stay until the end.
- E. We can stay until the end.

1. D.
2.
3.
4.
5.

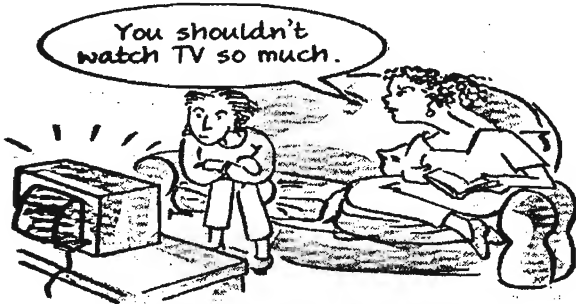
32.5 **must/had to /mustn't/ needn't** སྐད་སྐད་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་ཆའི་ཁག་རྣམས་ཁ་སྟོང་དགོས།

1. You **needn't** go. You can stay here if you want.
2. It's fantastic film. You **must** see it.
3. We've got enough food, so we go shopping.
4. We didn't have any food yesterday, so we go shopping.
5. I want to know what happened. You tell me.
6. You tell Sue what happened. I don't want her to know.
7. I hurry or I'll be late.
8. Why were you so late? I wait half an hour for a bus.
9. We decide now. We can decide later.



ཇི་ཚེན་སྟོང་གསུམ་པ། SHOULD

ག



should + ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས།

I/we/you/they he/she/it	should shouldn't	do. stop. go. watch
----------------------------	---------------------	------------------------------

ཁ (You) should + ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས། དེ་ནི་ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྐབ་དགོས་པའམ་ཡང་ན་སྐབ་ན་ཁོས་པའི་དོན།

- Tom should go to bed earlier. He goes to bed very late and he's always tired.
- It's a good film. You should go and see it.
- When you play tennis, you should always watch the ball.

ག (you) shouldn't + ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས། དེ་ནི་ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྐབ་མི་དགོས་པའམ་སྐབ་མི་ཁོས་པའི་དོན།

Shouldn't བྱི should not ཡི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ་ཡིན།

- Tom shouldn't go to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You shouldn't watch TV so much.

ང ར་ཚོས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་think བྱི should དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ་དཔེར་ན།

I think... should...:

- I think Carol should buy some new clothes. (དེ་ནི་དགོས་པའམ་ཁོ་ཁོས་པའི་དོན།)
- It's late. I think I should go home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?
B: Yes, I think you should.

I don't think... should...

- I don't think you should work so hard. (ལས་ཀ་དེ་འདྲིའི་རྩར་བྱག་གིས་སྐབ་མི་ཁོས་པའམ་སྐབ་མི་དགོས་པའི་དོན།)
- I don't think we should go yet. It's too early.

Do you think ... should...?

- Do you think I should buy this hat?
- What time do you think we should go home?



ཅ must བྱི should ལས་རྒྱུང་ཅམ་གྱགས་ཆེ་སྟེ།

- It's a good film. You should go and see it.
- It's a fantastic film. You must go and see it.

ཆ should ཡི་འབྲི་སྤངས་གཞན་ཞིག་ལྟོ་ought to ཡིན།

- It's a good film. You ought to go and see it. (you should go དང་མཚུངས་)
- I think Carol ought to buy some new clothes. (Carol should buy དང་མཚུངས་)



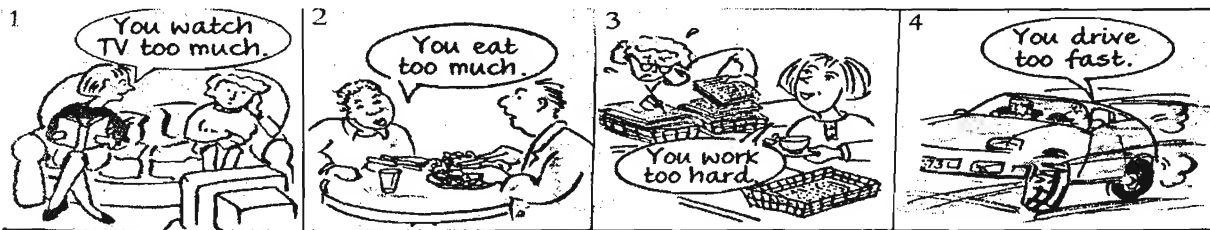
གསར་ཁྱུད།

33.1 you should ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་སྤྲོད་ཆ་སྤོང་དགོས།

clean go take visit watch wear

1. When you play tennis, **you should watch** the ball.
2. It's late and you are tired. to bed.
3. your teeth twice a day.
4. If you have time, the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5. When you are driving, a seat belt.
6. It's too far to walk from here to the station. a taxi.

33.2 He/She shouldn't ... so སྐད་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་རིམ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གི་གནས་ཚུལ་འབྲི་དགོས།



1. **She shouldn't watch TV so much.**
2. He
3. hard..
4.

33.3 འདྲི་ཆོག་གྱི་མགོ་རྒྱུ་ do you think I should...? བཀོལ་ནས་སྤྲོད་གྱི་གྲགས་པ་ཞིག་གི་བསམ་ཚུལ་འདྲི་དགོས།

1. You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
2. You ask your friend: **Do you think I should buy this jacket.**
3. You can't drive. (learn?)
4. You ask your friend: **Do you think**
5. You don't like your job. (get another job?)
6. You ask your friend:
7. You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
8. You ask your friend:

33.4 I think... should... ཡང་ན་ I don't think...should... བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. It's late. (go home now) **I think we should go home now.**
2. That coat is too big for you. (buy it) **I don't think you should buy it.**
3. You don't need your car. (sell it)
4. Diane needs a rest. (have a holiday)
5. Sally and Colin are too young. (get married)
6. You are not well this morning. (go to work)
7. James isn't well today. (go to the doctor)
8. The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there)

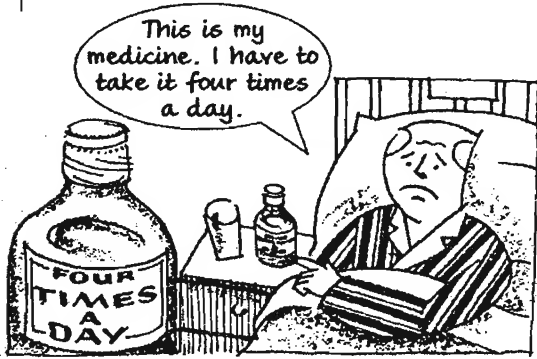
33.5 should མཉམ་དུ་སྤྲོད་གྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བསམ་པ་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I think **everybody should learn another language.**
2. I think everybody
3. I think
4. I don't think
5. I think I should



ཐུགས་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཐུགས་ཁྱེད་ I HAVE TO...

ག



have to (do) གི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ངེས་པར་དུ་མི་བྱེད་ཀྱི་ཐུགས་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཐུགས་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཐུགས་ཁྱེད་

I/ we/ you/ they have	to do
	to work
He/ she/ it has	to go
	to wear

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jill starts work at 7 o'clock, so she has to get up at 6.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driving license.

ཁ have to ཡི་འདས་པ་ནི had to...ཡིན།

- I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

ག འདྲི་ཆེག་དང་དགག་ཆེག་གི་ཆེག་ཐུབ་བཅོ་སྐབས། ང་ཆོས་ do/does གི་ད་ལྟ་བར་བཤད་སྟོན་བྱེད་པ་ལ་ did གི་འདས་པར་བཤད་སྟོན་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

ད་ལྟ་བ།

do I/ we/ you/ they	Have to...?
does he/ she/ it	

I/ we/ you/ they don't	Have to...
he/ she/ it doesn't	

འདས་པ།

Did	I/we/ you/they he/she/it	Have to...?
-----	--------------------------	-------------

I/ we/ you/ they	didn't have to...
he/ she/ it	

- What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Jill have to work on Sunday?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don't have to (do) གི་ལས་ཀ་དེ་སྐབས་ངེས་ཞིག་མིན་པ་ལྟ་བུ་ལྟར་པར་དུ་སྐབས་མི་དགོས་པའི་དོན།

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
- Ian doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We didn't have to wait very long for the bus.

ང ང་ཆོས་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་སྒྲུབ་ལྟར་ལ་བརྟེན་ནས་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ངེས་པར་དུ་སྐབས་དགོས་སྒྲུབ་པའི་

སྐབས་སུ must དང་ have to གཉིས་བཤད་སྟོན་བྱས་ཆོག། དཔེར་ན།

- It's a fantastic film. You must see it. ཡང་ན་ you have to see it.

ང་ཆོས་གཞན་ཞིག་གི་བཀོད་སྟོན་དང་ཡང་ན་སྟོན་སྒྲུབ་ལ་བརྟེན་ནས་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་ངེས་པར་དུ་སྐབས་དགོས་པའི་

སྐབས་སུ have to བཀོད་སྟོན། (must བཤད་སྟོན་བྱས་ཆོག)

- Jill won't be at work this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor. (འདི་ནི་ངའི་བསམ་སྒྲུབ་ཡིན་པར་དོན་དངོས་སོ།)
- In many countries, men have to do military service. (འདི་ནི་ངའི་བསམ་སྒྲུབ་ཡིན་པར་བྱུང་བའི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཐུགས་ཁྱེད་སོ།)



གཤམ་སྒྲིག་

34.1 have to དང has to གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟ་ do/read/speak/travel/wear སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྟ་ལྟ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་

ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses.
2. At the end of the course all the students.....a test.
3. Mary is studying literature. Shea lot of books.
4. Albert doesn't understand much English. Youvery slowly to him.
5. Kate is not often at home. Shea lot in her job.

34.2 have to དང had to གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟ་ Answer/buy/change/go/walk སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྟ་ལྟ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་

ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
2. It's late. Inow. I'll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. Isome food.
4. This train doesn't go all the way to London. Youat Bristol.
5. We did an exam yesterday. Wesix questions out of ten.

34.3 ད་ལྟ་བུ་དང་འདས་པ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ལྟ་ལྟ་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I have to get up early tomorrow.	What time <u>do you have to get up</u> ?
2. George had to wait a long time.	How long?
3. Liz has to go somewhere.	Where?
4. We had to pay a lot of money.	How much?
5. I have to do some work.	What exactly.....?

34.4 don't/doesn't/ didn't have to... སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྟ་ལྟ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Why are you going out? | You <u>don't have to go out</u> . |
| 2. Why is Ann waiting? | She |
| 3. Why did you get up early? | You |
| 4. Why is Paul working so hard? | He |
| 5. Why do you want to leave now? | We |

34.5 བཤར་ཤ་གཅིད་པ། (སྐབས་ཅེས་ must དང have to གཉིས་ཀྱི་འགྲེལ་བཤད་)

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. It's a great film. You <u>must see/ have to see</u> it. | Both are correct. |
| 2. In many countries, men <u>must do/ have to do</u> military service. | <u>Have to do</u> is correct. |
| 3. You can't park your car here for nothing. You <u>must pay/ have to pay</u> . | |
| 4. I didn't have any money with me last night, so I <u>must borrow/ had to borrow</u> some. | |
| 5. I eat too much chocolate. I really <u>must stop/ have to stop</u> . | |
| 6. 'Why is Paula going now?' 'She <u>must meet/ has to meet</u> somebody.' | |
| 7. What's wrong? You <u>must tell/ have to tell</u> me. I want to help you. | |

34.6 ཉིན་རེ་ལྟ་ལྟ་འཆོ་བའི་ཁྱད་དུ་ཁྱད་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་ངེས་པར་དུ་སྒྲུབ་དགོས་པ་ནམས་ལྟ་ (have to དང had to གཉིས་ཀྱི་ལྟ་ལྟ་)

1. (every day) I have to travel ten miles every day.
2. (Every day).....
3. (Tomorrow).....
4. (Yesterday).....



ཇི་ཚེན་སྒོ་ལྟ་བུ། WOULD YOU LIKE...? I'D LIKE...

༡ Would you like...? རྒྱུད་ལ་དགོས་སམ་ཞེས་པའི་དྲིན།

Would you like ...? བྱི་ང་ཚོས་དངོས་པོ་སྐྱེས་མཁོ་འདྲོད་བྱེད་སྐབས་

སྐབས་ལ་སྦྱོར་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- A: Would you like some coffee?
- B: No, thank you.
- A: Would you like a chocolate?
- B: Yes, please.
- A: What would you like, tea or coffee?
- B: Tea, please.



Would you like to...? བྱི་ང་ཚོས་མགོན་འཛོད་བྱེད་སྐབས་སྐབས་ལ་སྦྱོར་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- Would you like to go for a walk?
- A: Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday?
- B: Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- What would you like to do this evening?

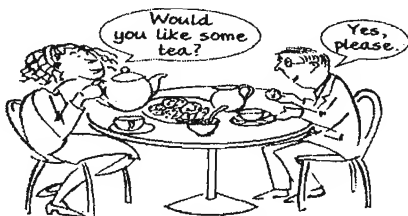
༢ I'd like ... བྱི་ང་ལ་དགོས་ཞེས་པའི་གྲུས་སྒྲུལ་རང་བཞིན་གྱི་བཤད་སྐད་སྤངས་ཤིག་ཡིན།

I'd like བྱི་I would like ཡི་བསྐྱེས་འབྲེའི་ཚམ་པ་ཡིན།

- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- I'd like to see the film on television this evening.

༣ Would you like ...? དང And do you like ...? གཉིས་གྱི་བྱེད་པར།

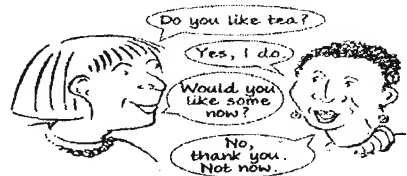
Would you like...? /I'd like...



Would you like some tea? བྱི་རྒྱུད་རང་ལ་ཐུག་འདྲོད་ཡོད་ན། ཡང་ན་ང་དགོས་སམ་ཞེས་པའི་དྲིན།

- A: would you like to go to the cinema tonight? (བྱི་དྲིན་ལ་རྒྱུད་འགྲོ་འདྲོད་དམ་ཞེས་པའི་དྲིན)
- B: Yes, I'd love to.
- I'd like an orange, please. (= Can I have an orange?)
- What would you like to do next weekend?

Do you like...? /I like...



Do you like tea? བྱི་རྒྱུད་ཀྱིས་བསམ་པར་ང་བཟང་ངམ་ཞེས་པའི་དྲིན།


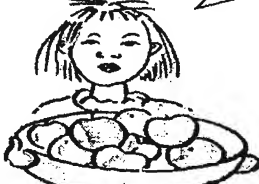




Do you think tea is nice?

- A: Do you like going to the cinema? (བྱིས་བསྐྱེན་པ)
- B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- I like oranges. (བྱིས་བསྐྱེན་པ)
- What do you like to do at weekends?



གཤམ་སྒྱུད་

35.1 would you like...? བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བཤད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་འབྲི་དགོ།

<p>1</p> <p>Would you like a chocolate?</p> 	<p>2</p> 	<p>3</p> 
<p>4</p> 	<p>5</p> 	<p>6</p> 

35.2 གཤམ་གྱི་གནས་ཚུལ་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་འོག་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་མི་གཞན་ལ་ངེ་ལྟར་ངོ་བོ་འདྲི་། would you like to... བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་

ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Tsering will go with you. (go)
You say:
- You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Tsering will play too. (play)
You say:
- You've got some holiday photographs. Tsering hasn't seen them yet. (see)
You say:
- You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Tsering will go. (go)
You say:
- It's raining and Tsering is going out. She hasn't got an umbrella but you have one. (borrow)
You say:

35.3 བཞུར་གཤམ་ཅི་དཔ།

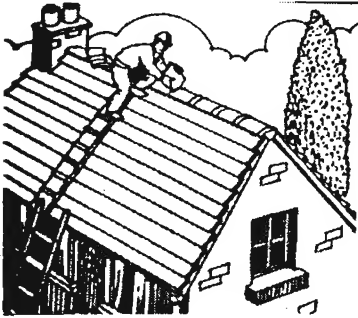
- 'Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please.'
- 'Do you like/ Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
- 'Do you like/ Would you like an ice-cream?' 'No, thank you.'
- 'What do you like/ Would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'
- 'Do you like/ Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. perhaps later.'
- I like/ I'd like tomatoes but I don't eat them very often.
- What time do you like/ Would you like to have dinner this evening?
- 'Do you like/ Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
- 'Do you like/ Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
- I'm tired. I like/ I'd like to go to sleep now.

Would you like is right .



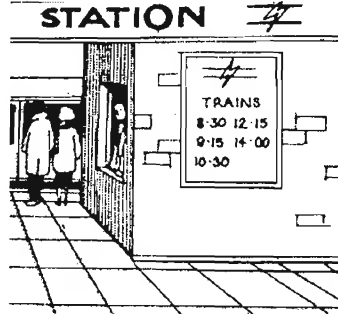
ཆེ་ཆུང་གི་སྒྲིག་ཁྲིམས་ THERE ARE

ག



There's a man on the roof.

ཆུང་གུངས



There's a train at 10.30.

SUNDAY
MONDAY
TUESDAY
WEDNESDAY
THURSDAY
FRIDAY
SATURDAY

7

There are seven days in a week.

There is ... (there's)
Is there....?
There is not... (there is not)

མང་གུངས

There are...
Are there....?
There are not... (There are not)

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's good film on TV tonight.
- A: Have you got any money?
B: Yes there's some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me; is there a hotel near here?
B: Yes, there is./ No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

- There are some big trees in the garden.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: Are there any letters for me today?
B: Yes, there are./ No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there in a football team?
- There are 11 players in a football team.

འ there is དང་ it is

There is



There's a book on the table.

(it's a book on the table ཞེས་འདུག་ཅིང་)

It is



I like this book. It's interesting

It = this book

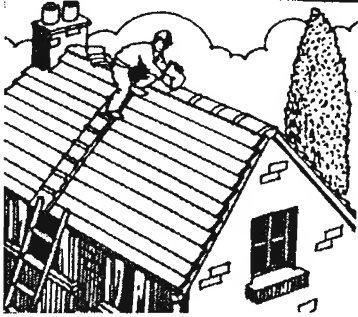
བཞུགས་པའི་

- 'What's that noise?' 'It's a train.' (it ཞེས་ཆུང་གི་ལཱ་གོ)
- There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (it ཞིང་ 10.30 ཡི་ཆུང་གི་ལཱ་གོ)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
- I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it ཞིང་ལཱ་གོ)



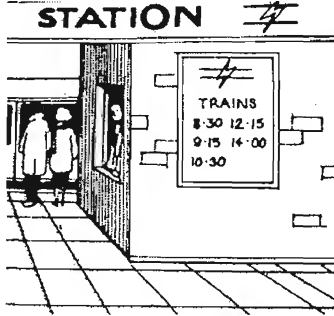
ཐེ་ཆེན་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལ། THERE ARE

༡



There's a man on the roof.

ཐུང་གུངས



There's a train at 10.30.

SUNDAY
MONDAY
TUESDAY
WEDNESDAY
THURSDAY
FRIDAY
SATURDAY

7

There are seven days in a week.

There is ... (there's)
Is there....?
There is not... (there is not)

ཐང་གུངས

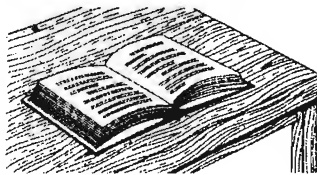
There are...
Are there....?
There are not... (There are not)

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's good film on TV tonight.
- A: Have you got any money?
B: Yes there's some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me; is there a hotel near here?
B: Yes, there is./ No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

- There are some big trees in the garden.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: Are there any letters for me today?
B: Yes, there are./ No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there in a football team?
- There are 11 players in a football team.

ཁོ་ there is དང་ it is

There is



There's a book on the table.

(it's a book on the table ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

It is



I like this book. It's interesting

It = this book

བཟུར་བ།

- 'What's that noise?' 'It's a train.' (it ཞི་སྒྲུ་དེ་ལ་ནོ)
- There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (it ཞི་10.30 ཡི་མེ་འཕྲེར་ལ་ནོ)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
- I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it ཞི་ལྷ་བ་ལ་ནོ)



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

36.1 མར་ཁྱུང་ཐང་ནི་གྲོང་བརྒྱུ་ཆུང་ཆུང་ཞིག་ཡིན། གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་ལུ་མིག་ལ་བལྟས་རྗེས་there is/are ཡང་ན་there isn't/aren't སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1	a castle?	No
2	any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)
3	a hospital?	Yes
4	a swimming pool?	NO
5	any cinemas?	Yes (two)
6	a university?	No
7	any big hotels?	No

1. There isn't a castle.
2. There are a lot of restaurants.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

36.2 there is/ are/isn't/ aren't སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཁྱོད་ཆོད་གྲོང་བརྒྱུ་ལམ་ཡང་ན་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཤེས་པའི་གྲོང་བརྒྱུ་གཞན་ཞིག་གི་སྐོར་བྲིས།

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|--------|
| 1 | <u>There are a few restaurants.</u> | 4..... |
| 2 | <u>There's a big park.</u> | 5..... |
| 3 | ..... | 6..... |

36.3 There is / there isn't/ is there/ there are/ there aren't/ are there སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆོད་ཁག་ནམས་ཆོང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 Kenham isn't an old town. There aren't any old buildings.
- 2 Look!a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!
- 3 'Excuse me,a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of the street.'
- 4five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
- 5 'How many students..... in the class?' 'Twenty.'
- 6 'Can we take a photograph?' 'No.....a film in the camera.'
- 7 '.....a bus from the city center to the airport?' 'Yes. Every 20 minutes.'
- 8 '.....any problems?' 'No. everything is OK.'
- 9nowhere to sit down.any chairs.

36.4 There are... དང་མཉམ་དུ་གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་ལུ་མིག་ལས་མིང་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

seven	twenty-six	letters	days	September	the solar system
nine	thirty	players	days	The USA	a week
fifteen	fifty	planets	states	a rugby team	the English alphabet

- 1 There are seven days in a week.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

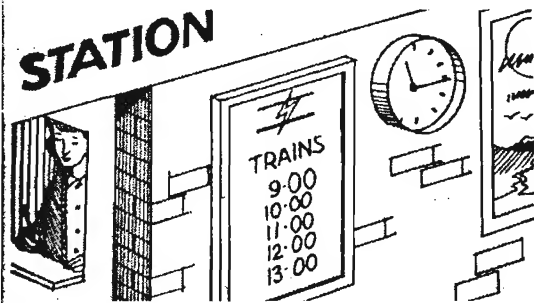
36.5 There's/ is there/ it's/ is it སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་སྟངས་ཆོད་ནམས་ཆོང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 'There's a train at 10.30.' 'Is it a fast train?'
- 2 I'm not going to buy this shirt.very expensive.
- 3 'What's wrong?'something in my eye.'
- 4a red car out side the house.yours?
- 5 '.....anything on television tonight?' 'Yes,.....a film at 8.15.'
- 6 'What's that building?' '.....a school.'
- 7 '.....a restaurant in this hotel?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'



ཐེ་ཚན་སྐོར་བྱེད་པ། THERE WAS/ WERE དང་ THERE HAS/ HAVE BEEN THERE WILL BE

༡ there was/ there were (ནི་འདས་པ་ཡིན)



There is a train every hour.

The time now is 11.15.

There was a train at 11 o'clock.

བསྐྱར་བ།

There is / are (ད་ལྟ་བ)

- There is a good film on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. There are 250 rooms
- Are there any letters for me this morning?
- I'm hungry but there isn't anything to eat.

There was / were (འདས་པ)

- There was a good film on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. There were 250 rooms.
- Were there any letters for me yesterday?
- When I got home, I was hungry but there wasn't anything to eat.

༢ there has been/ there have been (ནི་ཐུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་ཡིན)



- Look! There's been an accident. (there's been ནི་ there has been ཡི་བསྐྱར་འབྲིན་ཟུར་པ་ཡིན)

- This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents.

there was དང་བསྐྱར་བ

- There was an accident last night. ('there has been an accident last night' ཞེས་འབྲིན་ཟུང)

ཐུང་བའི་འདས་པ་དང་ཐུབ་ཟིན་ད་ལྟ་བ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་པར་ལྟོ་ཚན་20 ལ་སྟོན།

༣ there will be



- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Sunday?

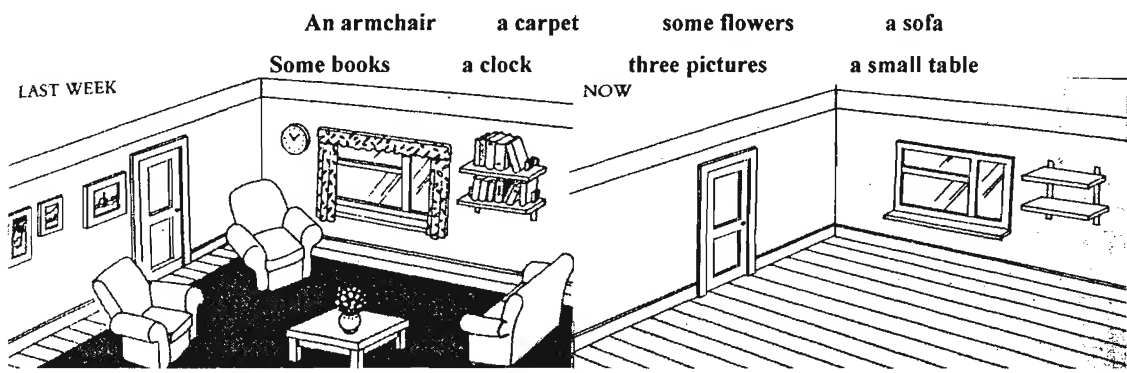
- The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manger soon.

- I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because there won't be time tomorrow. (there won't be ནི་there will not be ཡི་བསྐྱར་འབྲིན་ཟུར་པ་ཡིན)



གསལ་སྒྲུབ་

37.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་ there was...འཕ་there were...གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཤེས་སྒྲུབ་ནས་
 ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1 There was a clock on the wall near the window.
- 2on the floor.
- 3 on the wall near the door.
- 4 in the middle of the room.
- 5 on the table.
- 6on the shelves.
- 7 in the corner near the door.
- 8 opposite the door.

37.2 there was/there wasn't/was there/there were/there weren't/were there སྤྱི་མཐུན་བཞུགས་པ་གསལ་གྱི་སྤྱི་མཐུན་ཆ་སྤྱོད་དགོས།

- 1 I was hungry but there wasn't anything to eat.
- 2 Were there any letters for me yesterday?
- 3a football match on TV last night. Did you see it?
- 4 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Did you?'a swimming pool?'
- 5 'Did you buy any eggs?' 'No,any in the shop.'
- 6 The wallet was empty.any money in it.
- 7 '.....many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.'
- 8 We didn't visit the museum.enough time.
- 9 I'm sorry I'm late.....a lot of traffic.
- 10 Twenty years ago.....many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

37.3 there + is/ are/ was/were/has been/have been/will be སྤྱི་མཐུན་བཞུགས་པ་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

དགོས།

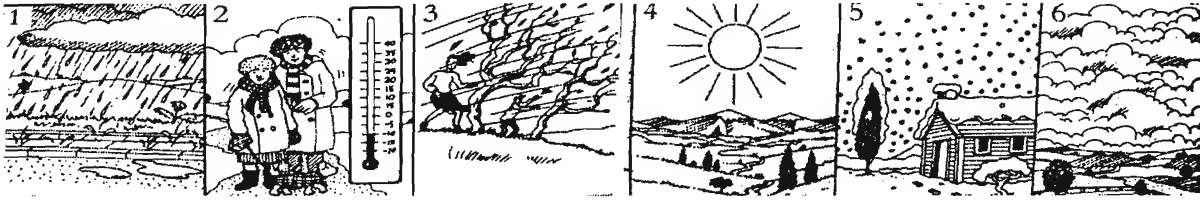
- 1 There was a good film on TV yesterday evening.
- 224 hours in a day.
- 3a party at the club last Friday but I didn't go.
- 4 'Where can I buy a newspaper?' '.....a shop at the end of the street.'
- 5 'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' '.....a robbery.'
- 6 When we arrived at the cinema,a long queue to see the film.
- 7 When you arrive tomorrowsomebody at the station to meet you.
- 8 Ten years ago500 children at the school. Now more than a thousand.
- 9 Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now.a lot of changes.
- 10 I think everything will be OK. I don't thinkany problems.





གཤམ་ཐུང་།

38.1 it's ..བཞོལ་ནས་རི་མོའི་ཕྱིང་གི་གནམ་གཤམ་སྐོར་འབྲི་དགོས།



1. It's raining. 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

38.2 it is འམ་ཡང་ན is it བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆིག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. What time is it?
2. We must go now. _____ very late.
3. _____ true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. What day _____ today? Tuesday? No _____ Wednesday.
5. _____ ten kilometers from the airport to the city center.
6. _____ possible to phone you at your office?
7. Do you want to walk to the restaurant? I don't know. How far _____ ?
8. _____ Linda's birthday today. She's 27.
9. I don't believe it! _____ Impossible.

38.3 How far...? དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆིག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་འབྲི་ཆིག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. (here / the station) | <u>How far is it from here to the station?</u> |
| 2. (the hotel / the beach) | How _____ |
| 3. (New York / Washington) | _____ |
| 4. (your house / the airport) | _____ |

38.4 it འམ་ཡང་ན there བཞོལ་ནས་སྤྱོད་ཆ་སྒྲིམ་དགོས།

1. It rains a lot in winter.
2. There was a strong wind yesterday.
3. _____ was a nice day yesterday.
4. We can't go skiing. _____ isn't any snow.
5. _____'s hot in this room. Open a window.
6. I was afraid because _____ was very dark.
7. _____ was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
8. _____'s a long way from here to the nearest shop.

38.5 གཤམ་གྱི་རེད་མིག་ལས་ལས་ཆིག་བདམས་ནས་ཆིག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

It's	easy	to	Work in this office	get up early
	difficult		Visit different places	go out alone
	impossible		See you again	make friends
	dangerous			
	nice			
	interesting			

1. If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
2. Hello, Jill. _____ how are you?
3. _____ There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work, _____
5. I like traveling. _____
6. A lot of cities are not safe. _____



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

39.1 **Is/ have/ can** སྤྱི་མཐུན་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Kate wasn't hungry but we <u>were</u> | 4. I haven't seen the film but Tom'..... |
| 2 I'm not married but my brother..... | 5. Diane won't be here but Chris |
| 3 John can't help you but I | 6. You weren't late but I |

39.2 **Isn't/ haven't/ can't** སྤྱི་མཐུན་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 My sister can play the piano but I <u>can't</u> | 4. Richard has got a car but I |
| 2 Ann is working today but I | 5. I'm ready to go but Tom..... |
| 3 I was working but my friends | 6. I've got a key but Sally |

39.3 **do/ does/did or don't/ doesn't/ didn't** སྤྱི་མཐུན་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- I don't like hot weather but Sue does.
- Sue likes hot weather but I don't.
- My mother wears glasses but my father
- You don't know Paul very well but I
- I didn't enjoy the party but my friends
- I don't watch TV much but Peter
- Kate lives in London but her parents
- You had a shower this morning but I

39.4 རང་གི་གནས་ཚུལ་ལ་གཞིགས་ནི་yes, I have / no, I'm not སྤྱི་མཐུན་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་

དགོས།

- I didn't go out last night but my friends did.
- I likebut
- I don'tbut
- I'm
- I haven't

39.5 དགག་ཆོག་གམ་ཡང་ན་དགག་མིན་ཆོག་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 'Are you tired?' 'I was earlier but I'm not now'.
- John is happy today but heyesterday.
- The post office isn't open yet but the shops
- I haven't got a video camera but I know somebody who
- I would like to help you but I'm afraid I
- I don't usually go to work by car but Iyesterday.
- A: Have you ever been to the United States?
- B: No, but Sandra She went there on holiday last year.
- 'Do you and Ann watch TV a lot?' 'Ibut Ann doesn't'.
- I've been invited to the party but Kate
- 'Do you think Diane will pass here exams?' 'Yes, I am sure she
- 'Are you going out this evening?' 'I I don't know for sure.'

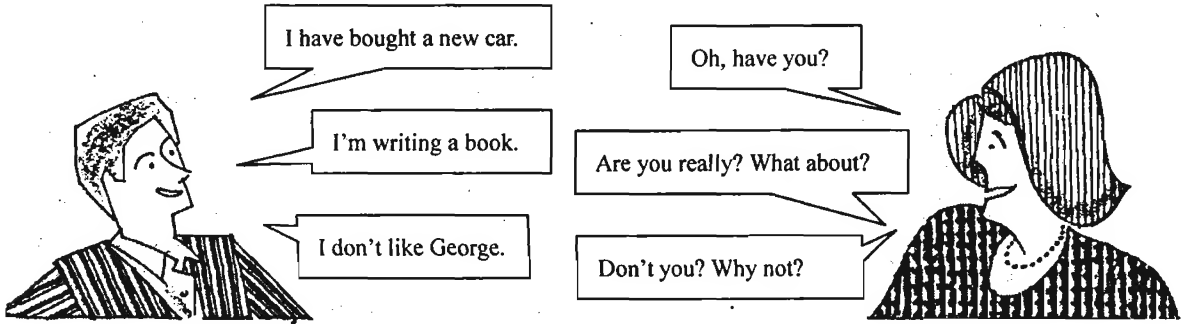
39.6 **yes, I have/ no, I'm not** སྤྱི་མཐུན་བཞོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་སྐོར་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Are you British? <u>No, I'm not</u> | 6. Do you like classical music? |
| 2 Have you got a car? | 7. Will you be in Paris tomorrow? |
| 3 Do you feel well? | 8. Have you ever been in hospital? |
| 4 Is it snowing? | 9. Did you buy anything yesterday? |
| 5 Are you hungry? | 10. Were you asleep at 3 a.m.? |



ཐེ་ཚན་བཞི་བརྒྱ་བ། HAVE YOU? དང ARE YOU? DON'T YOU?

༡།



have you?/is it/can't he? སྟགས་བཞོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་དོན་དེར་སྟོ་སྤང་ཡོད་པའམ་ངོ་མཆར་བའི་ནམ་པ་སྟན་པར་

བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- 'You're late.' 'Oh, am I? I am sorry.'
- 'I was ill last week.' 'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- 'There's a letter for you.' 'Is there? Where is it?'
- 'Bill can't drive.' 'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm not hungry.' 'Aren't you? I am.'
- 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

ང་ཆོས་do /does བྱི་སྤྱིར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བ་དང་did བྱི་སྤྱིར་བཏང་འདས་པར་བཞོལ་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

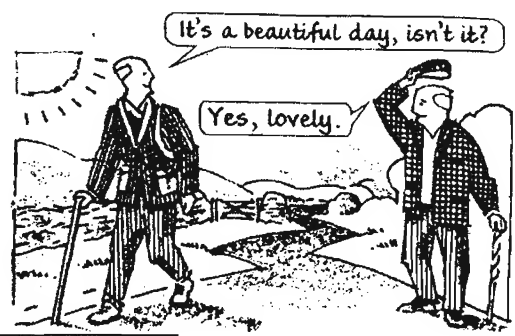
- 'I speak four languages.' 'Do you?' Which ones?'
- 'Tom doesn't eat meat.' Does he? Does he eat fish?'
- Linda got married last week. Did she? Really?'

༢ ཞྀག་འདྲི།

ང་ཆོས་have you?/ is it?/ can't she? སྟགས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མཚུག་ཏུ་

བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཅོས་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

- དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ → དགག་ཆོག་འདྲི་ཆོག (ཞྀག་འདྲི)
- དགག་ཆོག་ཆོག་གྲུབ → དྲང་ཆོག་འདྲི་ཆོག (ཞྀག་འདྲི)
- དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ → དགག་ཆོག



It's a beautiful day, isn't it?	Yes, it's lovely.
Sally lives in London, doesn't she?	Yes, that's right.
You closed the window, didn't you?	Yes, I think so.
Those shoes are nice, aren't they?	Yes, very nice.
Tom will be here soon, won't he?	Yes, probably

དགག་ཆོག དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ།

That isn't your car, is it?	No, my car is white.
You haven't met my mother, have you?	No, I haven't.
Sally doesn't smoke, does she?	No, she doesn't.
You won't be late, will you?	No, I'm never late.



གསལ་བྱུང་།

40.1 do you?/ doesn't she?/ did they? སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྟུང་ལྟར་གསལ་བྱུང་གི་ཆེད་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I speak for languages.	<u>Do you?</u> Which ones?
2. I work in a bank.	.....? I work in a bank too.
3. I didn't go to work yesterday.	.....? Were you ill?
4. Jill doesn't like me.	.....? Why not?
5. You look tired.	.....? I feel fine.
6. Julia phoned me last night.	.....? What did she say?

40.2 have you?/ haven't you? Did she? སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྟུང་ལྟར་གསལ་བྱུང་གི་ཆེད་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I've bought a new car.	<u>Have you?</u> What make is it?
2. Tim doesn't eat meat.	<u>Doesn't he?</u> Does he eat fish?
3. I've lost my key.	.....? When did you last have it?
4. Sue can't drive.	.....? She should learn.
5. I was born in Italy.	.....? I didn't know that.
6. I didn't sleep well last night.	.....? Was the bed uncomfortable?
7. There's a film on TV tonight.	.....? Are you going to watch it?
8. I'm not happy.	.....? Why not?
9. I met Paula last week.	.....? How is she?
10. Margaret works in a factory.	.....? What kind of factory?
11. I won't be here next week.	.....? Where will you be?
12. The clock isn't working.	.....? It was working yesterday.

40.3 isn't it/ haven't you? སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྟུང་ལྟར་གསལ་བྱུང་གི་ཆེད་གྲུབ་ནམས་ལྷན་འདྲིའི་ནམ་པ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. It's a beautiful day, <u>isn't it?</u>	Yes, it's lovely.
2. These flowers are nice,?	Yes, what are they?
3. Judy was at the party,?	Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
4. You've been to Paris,?	Yes, many times.
5. You speak German,?	Yes, but not very well.
6. Martin looks tired,?	Yes, he works very hard.
7. You'll help me,?	Yes, of course I will.

40.4 ལྷན་འདྲི་དགག་མིན་ཆེད་ (is it?/ do you?) དང་དགག་ལྷན་ཆེད་ (isn't?/ don't you?) སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྟུང་ལྟར་གསལ་བྱུང་གི་ཆེད་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

གྱི་ཆེད་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. You haven't got a car, <u>have you?</u>	No, I can't drive.
2. You aren't tired,?	No, I feel fine.
3. Carol is a very nice person,?	Yes, everybody likes her.
4. You can play the piano,?	Yes, but I'm not very good.
5. You don't know Mike's sister,?	No, I've never met her.
6. Sally went to university,?	Yes, she studied economics.
7. The film wasn't very good,?	No, it was terrible.
8. Ann lives near you,?	That's right. In the same street.
9. You won't tell anybody what I said,?	No, of course not.



ཞེ་ཆ་ན་ཞེ་གཅིག་ལ། TOO དང EITHER SO AM I དང NEITHER DO I

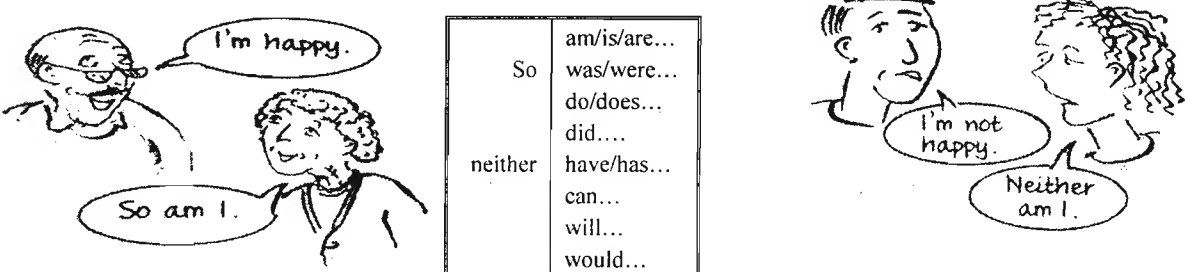
༡ too དང either གཉིས་པོ་བཤད་སྟུང་སྒྲུང་སྒྲུང་



ང་ཆོས་ too དང either གཉིས་པོ་ཞེ་ཆ་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མཆུག་ཏུ་བཀོལ། དཔེར་ན།

ང་ཆོས་ too ཞེ་དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད།	ང་ཆོས་ either ཞེ་དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད།
➤ A: I'm happy. B: I'm happy too.	➤ A: I'm not happy. B: I'm not happy either. (I'm not ...too ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
➤ A: I enjoyed the film. B: I enjoyed it too.	➤ A: I can't cook. B: I can't cook either. (I can't too ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
➤ Mary is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor too.	➤ Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers either.

ཁ སོ་མཐོང་ལ སོ་མཐོང་ neither do I



<p>So am I = I am too So have I = I have too A: I'm working. B: So am I. (=I'm working too) A: I was late for work today. B: So was John. (=John was late too) A: I work in a bank. B: So do I. A: We went to the cinema last night. B: Did you? So did we. A: I'd like to go to Australia. B: So would I.</p>	<p>Neither am I = I'm not either Neither can I = I can't either A: I haven't got a key. B: Neither have I. (=I haven't either) A: Ann can't cook. B: Neither can Tom. (= Tom can't either) A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow. B: Neither will I. A: I never go to the cinema. B: Neither do I. You can also use Nor.... (= Neither....) A: I'm not married. B: Nor am I. ཡང་ན་ Neither am I.</p>
---	---

ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ། ང་ཆོས་ so am I ཞེས་བཤད་པ་ལས་ so I am ཞེས་བཤད་མི་རུང་། Neither have I ཞེས་བཤད་པ་ལས་ neither I have ཞེས་བཤད་མི་རུང་།



གཤམ་ལྷན་

41.1 too དང either གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I'm happy.	I'm happy <u>too</u> .
2. I'm not hungry.	I'm not hungry.....
3. I'm going out.	I'm going out.....
4. It rained on Saturday.	It rained on Sunday
5. Jenny can't drive a car.	She can't ride a bicycle.....
6. I don't like shopping.	I don't like shopping.....
7. Jane's mother is a teacher.	Her father is a teacher.....

41.2 so... I རྟེ (so am I/ so do I/ so can I) ལྟར་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

1. I went to bed late last night.	<u>So did I.</u>
2. I'm thirsty.	.....
3. I've just had dinner.	.....
4. I need a holiday.	.....
5. I'll be late tomorrow.	.....
6. I was very tired this morning	.....

neither བཀོལ་ནས་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

7. I can't go to the party.	.....
8. I didn't phone Alex last night.	.....
9. I haven't got any money.	.....
10. I'm not going out tomorrow.	.....
11. I don't know what to do.	.....

41.3 གཤམ་གྱི་དཔེ་བཞིན་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་ so... I དང neither I སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་གནས་ཚུལ་ལྟར་

ལ་དྲང་མོར་བཞིན་དགོས།



I am tired.

You can answer:

So am I.

ཡང་ན

I am not.

I don't work hard.

You can answer:

Neither do I.

ཡང་ན

I do.

1. I am learning English.	.....
2. I can ride a bicycle.	.....
3. I'm not American.	.....
4. I like cooking.	.....
5. I don't like cold weather.	.....
6. I slept well last night.	.....
7. I've never been to Scotland.	.....
8. I don't write letters very often.	.....
9. I'm going out tomorrow evening.	.....
10. I haven't got a headache.	.....
11. I didn't watch TV last night.	.....
12. I often go to the cinema.	.....



མེ་ཆེན་ཞི་གཉིས་པ། ISN'T དང HAVEN'T གཞན་ཡང DON'T སྟགས།

༧ ང་ཆོས་not (n't)འེད་སྟོད་བྱས་ཡོད་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལ་དགག་ལྡན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཟེར། དཔེར་ན།

	དགག་ཆོག	དཔེ་བཞིན
am	am not (' m not)	I'm not tired.
is	is not (isn't or 's not)	it isn't (or it's not) raining.
are	are not (aren't or 're not)	they aren't (or they're not) here.
was	was not (wasn't)	Julian wasn't hungry.
have	have not (have't)	I haven't finished my work.
has	has not (hasn't)	Sue hasn't got a car.
will	will not (won't)	we won't be here tomorrow.
can	can not (can't)	George can't drive.
could	could not (couldn't)	I couldn't sleep last night.
must	must not (mustn't)	I mustn't forget to phone Ann.
should	should not (shouldn't)	you shouldn't work so hard.
would	would not (wouldn't)	I wouldn't like to be an actor.

བ don't དང doesn't གཞན་ད་དུང་didn't སྟགས་དགག་ལྡན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྐྱངས་ནི།

I / we/ you/ they སྟགས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ do not (don't)

ལྟར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བའི་དགག་ཆོག

he/ she/ it གསུམ་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ does not (doesn't) work/ live/ go སྟགས་ལྟ་བུའོ།

ལྟར་བཏང་འདས་པའི་དགག་ཆོག

I / they/ he/ she སྟགས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ did not (didn't) work/ live/ go ལྟ་བུའོ།

དགག་མེན་ཆོག་གྲུབ	དགག་ཆོག
I want to go out.	I don't want to go out.
They work hard.	They don't wok hard.
Liz plays the guitar.	Liz doesn't play the guitar.
My father likes his job.	My father doesn't like his job.
I got up early this morning.	I didn't get up early this morning.
They worked hard yesterday.	They didn't work hard yesterday.
We played tennis.	We didn't play tennis.
Diane had a bath.	Diane didn't have a bath.

Don't...

Look!	Don't look!
Wait for me.	Don't wait for me.

སྟགས་ཅིར་do བློ་ལས་ཆོག་གཙོ་བོ་ཡིན་སྲིད་པས། ང་ཆོས་don't do དང་doesn't do ལྟར་བཞོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

Do something!	Don't do anything!
Sue does a lot at weekends.	Sue doesn't do much at weekends.
I did what you said.	I didn't do what you said.





ཐེ་ཚན་ཞིག་ལྟུང་བ། IS IT ...? དང་ HAVE YOU...?/DO THEY...? 7

ག

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྱུབ You are you are eating.
འདྲི་ཆོག Are you are you eating? What are you eating?

འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནང་དུ་རྟགས་བྱེད་ལས་ཆོག་སྟེ is/ are/ have སྟགས་བྱེད་པ་པོའི་སྟེན་དུ་བཀོལ་དགོས།

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྱུབ	འདྲི་ཆོག
བྱེད་པ་པོའི་ཆེས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག	ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་བྱེད་པ་པོ
I am late.	Am I late?
That seat is free.	Is that seat free?
She was angry.	Why was she angry?
David has gone.	Where has David gone?
You have got a car.	Have you got a car?
They will be here soon.	When will they be here?
Paula can swim.	Can Paula swim?

ཐེ་ཚན་གྱི་བྱེད་དགོས་པ། གལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་གྱུབ་གཅིག་གི་ནང་དུ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཡོད་ཆེད་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ནི་ལས་ཆོག་ཐོག་མའི་ཆེས་སུ་འཛོག་དགོས།

- Where has David gone? ('where has gone David?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Are those people waiting for something? ('are waiting...?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- When was the telephone invented? ('when was invented...?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

བ do དང་ dose གཞན་ did སྟགས་ཀྱི་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་སྤངས།

སྟེན་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུའི་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་སྤངས། Do ཡི་ཆེས་སུ་ I/ we / you/ they
does ཡི་ཆེས་སུ་ he/ she/ it work/ live/ go
སྟེན་བཏང་འདས་པའི་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་སྤངས། did ཡི་ཆེས་སུ་ you/ she they སྟགས་གང་ཟག་ཆང་མ་བཀོལ་ཆོག work/ live/ go

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྱུབ	འདྲི་ཆོག
They work hard.	Do they work hard?
You watch television.	How often do you watch television?
Chris works hard.	Does Chris work hard?
She gets up early.	What time does she get up?
They worked hard.	Did they work hard?
You had dinner.	What did you have for dinner?
She got up early.	What time did she get up?

སྟགས་རེ་ Do འི་ལས་ཆོག་གཙོ་བོ་ཡིན་སྲིད་པས། ང་ཚོས do you do/ did he do སྟེན་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་སྤངས་ཆོག དཔེར་ན།

- What do you usually do at weekends?
- 'What does your brother do?' 'He works in a bank.'
- 'I broke my finger last week.' 'How did you do that?' ('how did you that?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ག why isn't ...? དང་ why don't ...? སྟགས་ཀྱི་ why ཆེས་སུ་དགག་ཆོག་བཀོལ། དཔེར་ན།

- Where's John? Why isn't he here? ('Why he isn't here?' ཞེས་བཀོལ་མི་རུང་)
- Why can't Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? ('Why Paula can't...?' ཞེས་བཀོལ་མི་རུང་)
- Why didn't you phone me last night?



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

43.1 གཤམ་གྱི་དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལ་བལྟས་རྗེས་དེ་དག་འདྲི་ཆོག་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. I can swim. | (and you?) Can you swim? |
| 2. I work hard. | (and Jim?) Does Jim work hard? |
| 3. I was late this morning. | (and you?) |
| 4. I've got a key. | (and Ann?) |
| 5. I'll be here tomorrow. | (and you?) |
| 6. I'm going out this evening. | (and Paul?) |
| 7. I like my job. | (and you?) |
| 8. I live near here. | (and Linda?) |
| 9. I enjoyed my holiday. | (and you?) |
| 10. I had a shower this morning. | (and you?) |

43.2 རེ་ལུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་ཁྱོད་གྱི་གྲོགས་པོས་རྒྱང་ས་འཁོར་གཏོང་བའི་སྐོར་འདྲི་ཆོག་ཏུ་བཟོ་

དགོས།

(have / car?) Have you got a car?	Yes, I have.
(use / a lot?) .....it.....	Yes, nearly every day.
(use/ yesterday?).....	Yes, to go to work.
(enjoy driving?).....	Not very much.
(a good drive?).....	I think I am.
(ever/ have / an accident?)	No, never.

43.3 གཤམ་གྱི་སྐོར་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་དག་གི་རིམ་གྱི་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་གི་ནམ་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. (has/ gone/ where/ David?) | Where has David gone? |
| 2. (working/ Rachel/ is/ today?) | Is Rachel working today? |
| 3. (the children / what / are/ doing) | what |
| 4. (made / is/ how/ cheese?) | ..... |
| 5. (to the party / coming/ is/ your sister?) | ..... |
| 6. (you/ the truth/ tell/ don't/ why?) | ..... |
| 7. (your guests/ have/ yet/ arrived?) | ..... |
| 8. (leave/ what time/ your train/ does?) | ..... |
| 9. (your car / in the accident/ was / damaged?) | ..... |
| 10. (to work/ Ann/ why/ go/ didn't?) | ..... |

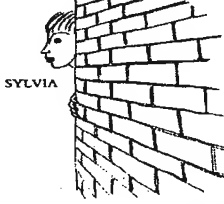
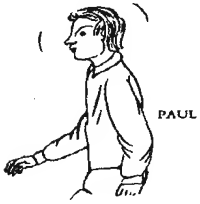
43.4 གཤམ་གྱི་འདྲི་ཆོག་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I want to go out.	Where do you want to go?
2. Ann and Paul aren't going to the party.	Why aren't they going?
3. I'm reading.	What.....
4. Sue went to bed early.	What time.....
5. My parents are going on holiday.	When.....
6. I met Tom a few days ago.	Where
7. Tina has gone away.	Where.....
8. I can't come to the party.	Why
9. I need some money.	How much.....
10. Angela doesn't like me.	Why
11. It rains sometimes.	How often.....
12. I did the shopping.	When.....



ཕྱི་ཆོན་ཞི་བཞི་བ། WHO SAW YOU? དང WHO DID YOU SEE?

༧



Sylvia saw Paul.
Who saw Paul.
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)
Who did Sylvia see?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

Sylvia saw Paul

ཕྱི་དང་པ་ལ།

Somebody saw Paul.

Who saw Paul?

Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him)

'who' གི་ཕྱི་དང་པ་ལ་ཡིན།

'Paul' གི་ཕྱི་བའི་ཡུལ་ཡིན།

ཕྱི་བའི་ཡུལ།

Sylvia saw somebody.

Who did Sylvia see?

Paul. (she saw Paul.)

'who' གི་ཕྱི་བའི་ཡུལ་ཡིན།

'Sylvia' གི་ཕྱི་དང་པ་ལ་ཡིན།

འདྲི་ཆོག་འདི་དག་གི་ནང་དུ་ who དང what གཉིས་ནི་ཕྱི་དང་པ་ལ་ཡིན།

- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?) ('who does lives'? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- What happened? (= something happened – what?) ('what did happen? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- What's happening? (what's = what is?)
- Who's got my key? (who's = who has)

འདྲི་ཆོག་འདི་དག་ཁྲིད་དུ་ who དང what གཉིས་ནི་ཕྱི་བའི་ཡུལ་ཡིན།

- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody – who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something – what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Sylvia wearing?

བསྐྱར་བ།

- George likes oranges. **Who likes oranges?** – George.
- Jill won some money. **What does George like?** – oranges.
- **Who won** some money? – Jill.
- What did Jill win?** – A hundred pounds

ང་ཆོས་ who གི་མི་ལ་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་ཕྱིད་དགོས་ཤིང་། what གི་ཅ་ལག་དང་དངོས་པོར་བཀོལ་དགོས།

- Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?



གཞན་ལྟོ་

44.1 who དང་ what གཉིས་བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས་པ་དང་། དེ་གཉིས་ངས་བར་དུ་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཡིན་དགོས།

1. Somebody broke the window.	<u>Who broke the window?</u>
2. Something fell off the shelf.	What me?
3. Somebody wants to see you.	.....
4. Somebody took my umbrella.	.....
5. Something made me ill.	.....
6. Somebody is coming.	.....

44.2 who དང་ what གཉིས་བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས་པ་དང་། དེ་གཉིས་བྱེད་པ་པོ་དང་བྱ་ཡུལ་གཉིས་ལས་

གང་རུང་ཡིན་ཆོག

1. I bought something.	<u>What did you buy?</u>
2. Somebody lives in this house.	<u>Who lives in this house</u>
3. I phoned somebody.	.....
4. Something happened last night.	.....
5. Somebody knows the answer.	.....
6. Somebody did the washing-up.	.....
7. Jill did something.	.....
8. Something woke me up.	.....
9. Somebody saw the accident.	.....
10. I saw somebody.	.....
11. Somebody has got my pen.	.....
12. This word means something.	.....

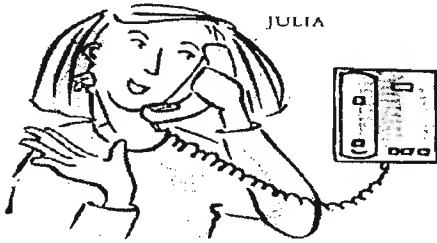
44.3 who དང་ what གཉིས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་སྐོང་ཆོག་དག་ལ་དྲི་བ་འདྲིན་དགོས།

1. I lost XXX yesterday but fortunately XXX found it and gave it back to me.	<u>What did you lose?</u> <u>Who found it?</u>
2. XXX phoned me last night. She wanted XXX.	..... .....
3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXX. He said XXX.	..... .....
4. I hear that XXXX got married last week. XXX told me	..........
5. I met XXX on my way home this evening. She told me XXX.	..... .....
6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXX won. After the game we XXX.	..... .....
7. It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. XXX gave me a book and Catherine gave me XXX.	..... .....



ཕྱི་ཆ་ན་ཞེ་ལུ་། WHO IS SHE TALKING TO? དང WHAT IS IT LIKE?

༡



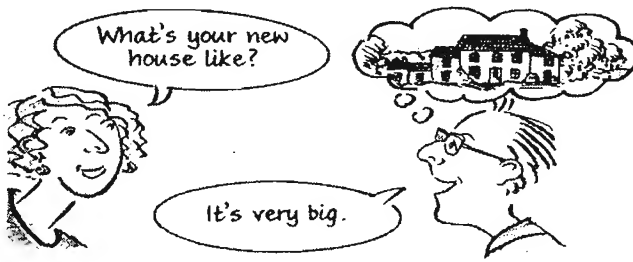
Julia is talking to somebody.
Who is she talking to?

who/ what/ where/ which...? སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གི་སྟུན་དུ་ཡོད་སྐབས་ད་ཆོས་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་སྟེ to/ from/ with སྐད་ཀྱི་ན་མ་

ཐུན་ཆོག་གུ་ཁྱེ་མཁུག་དུ་བཀོལ། དཔེར་ན།

- 'Where are you from?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'John was afraid.' 'What was he afraid of?'
- 'Who do these books belong to?' 'They're mine.'
- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he in?'
- 'Kate is going on holiday.' 'Who with? / Who is she going with?'
- 'I want to talk to you.' 'What about?' 'What do you want to talk to me about?'

༢ what is it like? དང what are they like? སྐད་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།



What's (= what is) it like? བེ་བྱ་དངོས་ཞིག་གི་སྟུན་ཏེ། དེའི་ཆོ་ཆུང་། རིང་མུང་། བཟང་དན་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཅི་འདྲ་ཡིན་པའི་

དོན། ད་ཆོས་ what is it like? ཞེས་བརྗོད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་like བེ་ལས་ཆོག་མ་ཡིན་པར་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་ཡིན་པ་ཤེས་དགོས།

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
B: What's it like? Is it good?
A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- A: What's your new teacher like?
B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- A: I met Linda's parents yesterday.
B: Did you? What are they like?
A: They're very friendly.
- A: Did you have a nice holiday? What was the weather like?
B: It was lovely. The sun shone every day.



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

45.1 who དང་what གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་སྐོང་ཆོག་དག་ལ་དྲི་བ་འདྲིན་དགོས།

1. The letter is from XXXX	Who is the letter from?
2. I'm looking for a XXXX	What You
3. I went to the cinema with XXXX	.....
4. The film was about XXXX	.....
5. I gave the money to XXXX	.....
6. The book was written by XXXX	.....

45.2 རིམ་བཞུགས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་རེའི་ཐེས་སུ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་སྐོང་དགོས།

listen look talk talk wait write



1 Who is she talking to?

2 What

3 Who

4 What

5 What

6 Which bus

45.3 which ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་སྟོན་ཏུ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་སྐོང་དགོས།

1. Tom's father is in hospital.

Which hospital is he in?

2. We stayed at a hotel.

.....you.....

3. Jack plays for a football team.

.....

4. I went to school in this town.

.....

45.4 what is / are ...like? སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་འགོ་འདྲིང་ཆེ་བའི་རྒྱལ་ཁབ་ཞིག་གི་སྐོར་མི་གཞན་ལ་དྲི་བ་

འདྲིན་དགོས།

1. (the roads) What are the roads like?

(the people)

2. (the food)

(the weather)

45.5 What was / were... like? སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.

What was the weather like?

2. Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.

.....

3. Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.

.....

4. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.

.....



ཚིག་ཞིབ་བྱེད་ཀྱི་ལུགས་། WHAT...? དང WHICH...?/HOW...?

what + མིང་ཚིག་བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཚིག་བཙུག་པུ་དཔེར་ན།

- > What colour is your car? What colour are your eyes?
- > What size is this shirt? What make is your TV set?
- > What time is it? What day is it today?
- > What kind of job do you want? (What type of job...? / What sort of job ...?)

what ཡི་རྒྱུས་སུ་མིང་ཚིག་མེད་པར་བཞོལ་བུ་དཔེར་ན།

- > What's your favorite colour? What do you want to do this evening?

which + མིང་ཚིག་སྟེ་ཅ་ལག་དང་མི་བཞོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་འདྲིན་པུ་དཔེར་ན།

- > Which train did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- > Which doctor did you see – doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

ཚིག་which ཡི་རྒྱུས་སུ་མིང་ཚིག་མེད་པར་དངོས་བོར་བཞོལ་བུ་ (མི་ལ་བཞོལ་མི་རུང་)

- > Which is bigger- Canada or Australia?

ཚིག་who རྟི་གང་ཟག་ལ་བཞོལ་སྐབས་སུ་རྒྱུ་མིང་ཚིག་མི་སྦྱར་བ་དཔེར་ན།

- > Who is taller – Bill or Gerry? ('which is taller?' ཞེས་འདྲི་མི་རུང་)

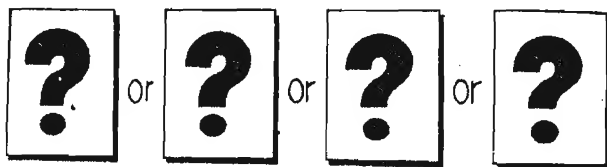
what དང which གཉིས་ཀྱི་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་སྟངས་།

ཚིག་which རྟི་དངོས་པོ་གང་རུང་ཞིག་གི་གྲངས་འབོར་ཁྱུང་བའམ་བར་ཐག་ཐུང་བའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཞོལ་

- > We can go this way or that way.
Which way shall we go?
- > There are four umbrellas here.
Which is yours?

ཚིག་what རྟི་གང་བདེར་བཞོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད་སྟངས་།

- > What is the capital of Argentina?
- > What sort of music do you like?



WHICH ?

སྦྱར་བུ་

- > What colour are his eyes? ('which colour? ཞེས་འདྲི་མི་རུང་)
- > Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- > What is the longest river in the world?
- > Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile?

how...? ཡི་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་སྟངས་།

- > 'How was the party last night?' 'It was great.'
- > 'How do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

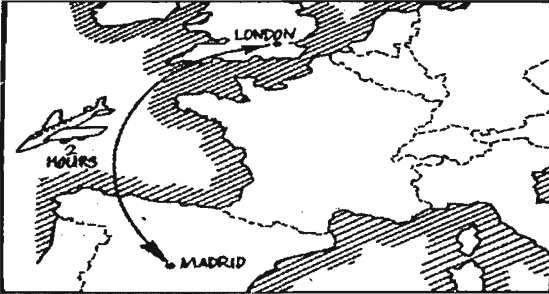
how + ཁྱུང་ཚིག་སྟེ་པའི་ཚིག་གམ་ནམ་པ་ལྟན་པའི་ཚིག་གང་མཁོ་བཞོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད་སྟངས་།

How { Tall are you? 'I'm 1 meter 70.'
Big is the house? 'Not very big.'
Old is your mother? 'She's 45.'
Far is it from here to the airport? 'Five kilometers.'
Often do you use your car? 'Every day.'
Long have they been married? 'Ten years.'
Much was the meal? 'Twenty pounds.'



ཐེ་ཚན་གེ་བྲུག་པ། HOW LONG DOES IT TAKE...?དུས་ཡུན་ཅི་ཙམ་འགོར་རམ།

༡



How long does it take		by plane	From....to ...?	?
It takes	two hours	by train		
	Ten minutes	by car		
	A long time			

How long does it take by plane from London to Madrid?

It takes two hours.

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
- It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
- It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

ཁ ༡ how long does/ did/ will/ it take སྐབས་ཀྱི་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་སྒྲུབ་པ།



How long	does did will	it take	(you) (Ann) (them)	too...
----------	---------------------	---------	--------------------------	--------

It	Takes took/ will take	(me) (Ann) (them)	a week a long time three hours	to...
----	-----------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------------------	-------

I started reading the book on Monday.

I finished to on Wednesday evening.

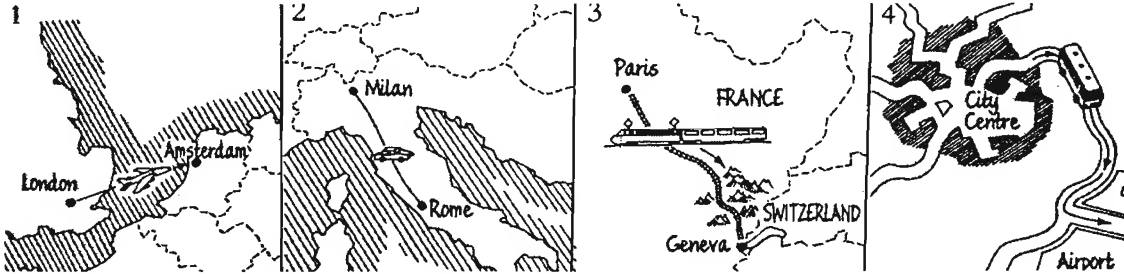
It took me three days to read it.

- How long does it take to fly from London to Madrid?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelet.
- It takes me 20 minutes to get to work.
- 'I came by train'. 'Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?'
- It took Tom an hour to do his shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It will take us an hour to cook the dinner.



གཤམ་ཁྱེད་

47.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་ how long...? བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?
2.
3.
4.

47.2 གཤམ་ཁྱེ་སྤྱད་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

1. fly from your city/ country to London.
It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.
2. fly from your city/ country to new York.
.....
3. study to be a doctor in your country
.....
4. walk from you home to the nearest shop
.....
5. get from your home to the nearest airport
.....

47.3 How long did it take...? བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1 (She found a place to live.) How long did it take her to find a place to live?
- 2 (I walked to the station.)you.....
- 3 (He cleaned the windows)
- 4 (I learnt to ski)
- 5 (They repaired the car.)

47.4 གཤམ་ཁྱེ་གནས་སྤངས་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་it took... བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་བྱུང་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
It took me three days to read the book.
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived home at 10.20.
.....
3. I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.
.....
4. Mark drove to London yesterdays. He left home at 8 o'clock and got to London at 10.
.....
5. Linda began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.
.....
6. (རང་ཉིད་སྤྱད་ཆོག་བྱུང་གཅིག་བཟོས་)
.....



ཅེ་ཞེ་བརྒྱད་པ། DO YOU KNOW WHERE...? དང I DON'T KNOW WHAT...



ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ལྟེ།

Where is Paula?

ཡིན་ནའང།

Do you know where Paula is?

(Do you know where is Paula? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

གྲང་དང་འདྲ་བར་ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ལྟེ།

I know / I don't know/ can you tell me where Paula is

ར་བ།

Who are those people?

How old is Linda?

What time is it?

Where can I go?

How much is this camera?

When are you going away?

Where have they gone?

What was Ann wearing?

Do you know Can you tell me	Who those people are?
	How old Linda is?
I know I don't know I don't remember	What time it is?
	Where I can go?
	How much this camera is ?
	When you're going away?
	Where they have gone?
	What Ann was wearing?

do/ does/ did སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་འདྲེན་ཚུལ།

Where does he live?

Do you know where he lives? ('do you know where does he live?' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ར་བ།

How do airplanes fly?

What does Jane want?

Why did she go home?

Where did I put the key?

Do you know	How airplanes fly?
I don't know	What Jane wants?
I don't remember	Why she went home?
I know	Where I put the key?

is...? / do...? / can...? སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་འདྲེན་ཚུལ།

ར་བ།

Is Jack at home?

Have they got a car?

Can Brian swim?

Do they live near here?

Did anybody see you?

Do you know	If or whether	Jack is at home?
I don't know		They've got a car?
		Brian can swim?
		They live near here?
		Anybody saw you?

འདི་ལྟར་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཁྲིད་ཏུ་if དང་whether གཉིས་བཤད་སྟེ་དྲུག་ཀྱང་ཆོག་

Do you know if they've got a car? ཡང་ན་ Do you know whether they've got a car?



གསལ་བཤད་

48.1 I don't know where/ when/ why... མིགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1 | Have your friends gone home? | (where) I don't know where they've gone. |
| 2 | Is Kate in her office? | (where) I don't know..... |
| 3 | Is the castle very old? | (how old) |
| 4 | Will Paula be here soon? | (when) |
| 5 | Was he angry because I was late? | (why) |
| 6 | Has Sally lived here a long time? | (how long) |

48.2 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནུས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཞོད་དགོས།

- | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | (How do airplanes fly?) | <u>Do you know how airplanes fly?</u> |
| 2 | (Where does Susan work?) | I don't know..... |
| 3 | (What did Peter say?) | Do you remember..... |
| 4 | (Why did he go home early?) | I don't know..... |
| 5 | (What time does the film begin?) | Do you know..... |
| 6 | (How did the accident happen?) | I don't remember..... |

48.3 བཅར་ཤ་གཅོད་པ།

- | | | | |
|----|--|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. | Do you know what time is <u>it / it is</u> ? | Do you know what time <u>it is</u> ? | Is right. |
| 2. | Why <u>are you / you are</u> going away? | | |
| 3. | I don't know where <u>are they / they are</u> going? | | |
| 4. | Can you tell me where <u>is the museum/ the museum is</u> ? | | |
| 5. | Where <u>do you want / you want</u> to go for your holidays? | | |
| 6. | Do you know what <u>do elephants eat/ elephants eat</u> ? | | |

48.4 do you know if...? བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཞོད་དགོས།

- | | | |
|----|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. | (Have they got a car?) | <u>Do you know if they've got a car?</u> |
| 2. | (Are they married?) | Do you know..... |
| 3. | (Does Sue know Bill?) | ..... |
| 4. | (Will George be here tomorrow?) | ..... |
| 5. | (Did he pass his exam?) | ..... |

48.5 do you know...? ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་མགོ་བཞོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་བཞོད་དགོས།

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. | (What does Ann want?) | <u>Do you know what Ann wants?</u> |
| 2. | (Where is Paula?) | Do..... |
| 3. | (Is she working today?) | ..... |
| 4. | (What time does she start work?) | ..... |
| 5. | (Are the shops open tomorrow?) | ..... |
| 6. | (Where do Sarah and Tim live?) | ..... |
| 7. | (Did they go to Ann's party?) | ..... |

48.6 རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་སྒྲུབ་དང་བསྐྱུན་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་ནུས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཞོད་དགོས།

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1. | Do you know why <u>the bus was late</u> ? |
| 2. | Do you know what time |
| 3. | Excuse me, can you tell me where |
| 4. | I don't know what |
| 5. | Do you know if |



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

49.1 གཤམ་གྱི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་བཤད་པའི་སྐད་ཆ་ལ་བལྟས་རྗེས་ he/ she/ they said (that) སྟོན་གས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་

ཆུས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. I've lost my watch.
He said he had lost his watch. | 6 I don't feel very well.
..... |
| 2. I'm very busy.
..... | 7 We'll be home late.
..... |
| 3. I can't go to the party.
..... | 8 I've just come back from holiday.
..... |
| 4. I have to go out.
..... | 9 I'm going to buy a computer.
..... |
| 5. I'm learning Russian.
..... | 10 We haven't got a key.
..... |

49.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- I met Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her now job.
- Betty didn't want anything to eat. She said
- I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder but he said.....
- Sally was invited to the party but she said
- Sharon told me she didn't want the picture. She said
- Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said
- I was looking for Robert. Linda said
- 'Why did Steve stay at home?' 'He said.....
- 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said

49.3 say/ said དང་ཡང་ན། tell/ told. སྟོན་གས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་ཆུས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. He said he was tired. | 7 The woman .....she was a reporter. |
| 2. What did she tell you? | 8 The woman.....us she was a reporter. |
| 3. Ann .....she didn't like Peter. | 9 They asked me a lot of questions but I didn't.....them anything. |
| 4. Jack .....me that you were ill. | 10 They asked me a lot or questions but I didn't.....anything. |
| 5. Please don't .....Jim what happened. | |
| 6. Did Lucy .....she would be late? | |



ཐེ་ཆེན་ལྷ་བཟུང་། WORK/ WORKING དང GO/GOING ཡང་ན DO/ DOING སྟགས།

༡ work /go/ be སྟགས་ནི་ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ཡིན།

ང་ཆོས་ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ནི་will/ can/ must སྟགས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག་དཔེར་ན།

will	Ann will be here soon.	}	ཐེ་ཆེན་28-29 ལ་སྟོན།
shall	Shall I open the window?		
might	I might phone you later.	}	ཐེ་ཆེན་30 ལ་སྟོན།
may	May I sit here?		
can	I can't meet you tomorrow.	}	ཐེ་ཆེན་31 ལ་སྟོན།
could	Could you pass the salt, please?		ཐེ་ཆེན་32 ལ་སྟོན།
must	It's late. I must go now.		ཐེ་ཆེན་33 ལ་སྟོན།
should	You shouldn't work so hard.		ཐེ་ཆེན་35 ལ་སྟོན།
would	Would you like some coffee?		

do/ does	Do you work?	ཐེ་ཆེན་6 ནས་7 ལ་སྟོན།
(ཁྱིམ་བཟང་ད་ལྟ་བུ)	They don't work very hard.	
	Tina doesn't know many people.	
	How much does it cost?	
did	What time did the train leave?	ཐེ་ཆེན་12 ལ་སྟོན།
(ཁྱིམ་བཟང་འདས་པ)	We did not sleep well.	

ཁ སྟགས་ཀྱི་ to work/ to go/ to be སྟགས་ཀྱི་ to + ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

(I'm) going to...	I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.	ཐེ་ཆེན་27 ལ་སྟོན།
	What are you going to do?	
(I) have to...	I have to go now.	ཐེ་ཆེན་34 ལ་སྟོན།
	Everybody has to eat.	
(I) want to...	Do you want to go out?	ཐེ་ཆེན་51 ལ་སྟོན།
	They don't want to come with us.	
(I) would like to...	I'd like to talk to you.	ཐེ་ཆེན་35 ལ་སྟོན།
	Would you like to go out?	
(I) used to...	Dave used to work in a factory.	ཐེ་ཆེན་25 ལ་སྟོན།

ག working/ going/ playing སྟགས།

Am/ is/ are + ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + ing ཏུ་བརྟོན་དགོས།	Please be quiet. I'm working.	ཐེ་ཆེན་3 ནས་4/ 8 /26 བཅས་ལ་སྟོན།
(ད་ལྟ་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ)	Tom isn't working today.	
	What time are you going out?	
Was/ were + ལས་ཚོག་གི་རང་གཟུགས་ + ing ཏུ་རྟོན་དགོས།	It was raining, so we didn't go out.	ཐེ་ཆེན་13 ནས་14 ལ་སྟོན།
(འདས་པའི་བྱེད་བཞིན་པ)	What were you doing when the phone rang?	



གཤམ་སྒྱུར་།

50.1 ... phone Paul དང་ཡང་ན ... to phone Paul བཞོལ་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཞེད་གོས།

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I'll phone Paul. | 6 Do you have..... |
| 2. I'm going to phone Paul. | 7 You should |
| 3. Can you | 8 I want |
| 4. Shall I | 9 I might |
| 5. I'd like | 10 You must |

50.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཚིག་ཡང་དག་པ་རེ་བདམས་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བྱེད་དགོས་ལ། ལས་ཚིག་དེ་

རྣམས་དགོས་མཁོའི་དབང་གིས་ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཞུགས་སམ་ཡང་ན་དེའི་རྗེས་སུ་ing ཟུར་ནས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག་།

do/ doing	get/ getting	sleep/ sleeping	watch/ watching
eat/ eating	go/ going	stay/ staying	wear/ wearing
fly/ flying	listen/ listening	wait/ waiting	work/ working

- Please be quite. I'm **working**.
- I feel tired today. I didn't **sleep** very well last night.
- What time do you usuallyup in the morning?
- 'Where are you?' 'To the bank.'
- Did youtelevision last night?
- Look at that plane! It'svery low.
- You can turn off the radio. I'm notto it.
- They didn'tanything because they weren't hungry.
- My friends were for me when I arrived.
- 'Does Sharon always glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
- 'What are youthis evening?' 'I'm at home.'

50.3 ཟློར་བྱིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཚིག་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པ་རེ་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཞེད་གོས།

(དགོས་མཁོ་ལྟར་ལས་ཚིག་གི་མ་གཞུགས་སམ་ཡང་ན་to + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རང་གཞུགས། ཡང་ན་ing སྟགས་བཞོལ་ནས་ཁ་སྐོང་དགོས་)

- Shall I **open** the window? (open)
- It's late. I have **to go** now. (go)
- Ann isn't **working** this week. she's on holiday. (work)
- I'm tired. I don't wantout. (go)
- It might so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
- What time do you havetomorrow morning? (leave)
- I'm afraid I can'tyou. (help)
- My brother is a student. He'sphysics. (study)
- Would you likeon a trip round the world? (go)
- When you saw Janet, what was she.....? (wear)
- When you go to London, where are you going.....? (stay)
- I'm hungry. I mustsomething to eat. (have)
- 'Where's George?' 'He'sa bath.' (have)
- I useda car but I sold it last year. (have)
- He spoke very quietly. I couldn'thim.(hear)
- You don't look well. I don't think you shouldto work today. (go)
- I don't know what he said. I wasn'tto him. (listen)
- I'm sorry I'm late. I had.....a phone call. (make)
- I want.....what happened. (Know) You mustme. (tell)
- May Iyour phone? (use)



ཐོ་ཚུགས་པ་གཅིག་པ། TO (I WANT TO DO) ནང ING (I ENJOY DOING)

ཁ ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཁྱུ་...ཐེད་སྦྱད་ཐེད་སྦྱད་སྦྱངས་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

want	plan	decide	try
hope	expect	offer	forget
need	promise	refuse	learn

རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཚིག་འདི་དག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཁྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་གཞན་ཞིག་ཡོད་ཚེ་དེས་
པར་དུ་ལས་ཚིག་རྒྱུ་མཐོང་སྦྱོར་དུ་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ལྟར་དཔེ་རྒྱུ་

- What do you **want to do** this evening?
- It's not very late. We **don't need to go** home yet.
- Tina has **decided to sell** her car.
- You **forgot to switch off** the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive**.
- I **tried to read** my book but I was too tired.

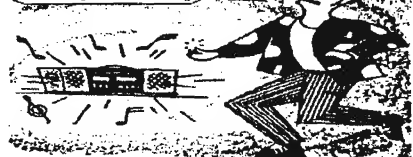
ཁ ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཁྱུ་ing ཐེད་སྦྱད་ཐེད་སྦྱད་སྦྱངས་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

enjoy	stop
mind	finish suggest

རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཚིག་འདི་དག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཁྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་གཞན་ཞིག་ཡོད་ཚེ་དེས་
པར་དུ་ལས་ཚིག་རྒྱུ་མཐོང་སྦྱོར་དུ་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ལྟར་དཔེ་རྒྱུ་

- I **enjoy dancing**. ('enjoy to dance' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I **don't mind getting up** early.
- Has it **stopped raining**?
- Sonia **suggested going to the cinema**.

(I enjoy dancing)



ཁ ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཁྱུ་ing འཕམ་ཡང་ན་ཏེ་གཉིས་གང་བདེར་བཀོལ་ཚིག་པ་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

like	love	start
prefer	hate	begin continue

རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཚིག་འདི་དག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཁྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་གང་རུང་ཞིག་ཡོད་ཚེ་
ཚིག་ing ནང་ཏེ་གཉིས་གང་བདེར་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ལྟར་དཔེ་རྒྱུ་

- Do you **like getting up** early? ཡང་ན། Do you like to get up early?
- I **prefer traveling** by car. ཡང་ན། I **prefer to traveling** by car.
- Ann **loves dancing**. ཡང་ན། Ann **loves to dance**.
- I **hate being** late. ཡང་ན། I **hate to be** late.
- It **started raining**. ཡང་ན། it **started to rain**.

ང would like to སྐོམ་སྐོམ་གྱི་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ཚུལ་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

would like	would love
would prefer	would hate

རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཚིག་འདི་དག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཁྱུ་ཚིག་ལས་ཚིག་གཞན་ཞིག་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ཐེད་སྦྱད་སྦྱངས་
ཚིག་དེ་དག་གི་སྦྱོར་དུ་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ཐེད་སྦྱད་ལྟར་དཔེ་རྒྱུ་

- Julia **would like to meet** you. ('Would like meeting' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I'd **love to go** to Australia. (I'd རྟེན་ I would ཡི་བཟུས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་པ་ཡིན།)
- 'Would you like to sit down?' 'No, I'd **prefer to stand**, thank you.'
- I **wouldn't like to be** a teacher.



གཤམ་སྒྱུར་།

51.1 to དང་ཡང་ན་ing བཞོལ་ནས་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་ཡང་དག་པར་བསྐོས་ཏེ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་

ཆ་ཆང་བར་བསྐོས་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I enjoy dancing (dance) | 9. Where's Bill? He promised.....(be here on time). |
| 2. What do you want to do (do) tonight? | 10. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind .....(wait) |
| 3. Goodbye! I hope.....(see) you again soon. | 11. What have you decided .....(do)? |
| 4. I learnt(swim) when I was five years old. | 12. George was very angry and refused.....
.....(speak) to me |
| 5. Have you finished .....(clean) the kitchen? | 13. Where's Ann? I need.....(ask) her something. |
| 6. I'm tired. I want .....(go) to bed. | 14. I was very upset and started.....(cry). |
| 7. Do you enjoy.....(visit) other countries? | 15. I'm trying.....(work). Please stop |
| 8. The weather was nice, so I suggested
(go) for a walk by the river. |(talk). |

51.2 to དང་ཡང་ན་ing གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་བཤམ་སྒྱུར་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བསྐོས་དགོས།

Go help live lose rain read see send take wait walk watch

- I like London but I wouldn't like to live there.
- I like taking (or to take) photographs when I'm on holiday.
- Linda has a lot of books. She enjoys.....
- I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect..... you.
- Don't forgetus postcard when you're on holiday.
- 'Shall we get a taxi to the cinema?' 'If you like, but it isn't far. I don't mind.....'
- This ring is very beautiful. I'd hate.....it.
- Julia had a lot to do, so I offeredher.
- What shall we do this afternoon? Would you liketo the beach?
- When I'm tired in the evenings, I liketelevision.
- 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer.....a few minutes.'
- I'm not going out until it stops.....

51.3 གཤམ་གྱི་ངྲིས་ལན་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བསྐོས་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Do you usually get up early? | Yes, I like <u>getting</u> ཡང་ན་ <u>to get up early</u> . |
| 2. Do you ever go to museums? | Yes, I love..... |
| 3. Do you often write letters? | No, I don't like |
| 4. Have you ever been to New York? | No, but I'd love.....one day, |
| 5. Do you often travel by train? | Yes, I enjoy |
| 6. Shall we eat at home or go to a restaurant? | I don't mind..... restaurant But I'd prefer.....home. |

51.4 to དང་ཡང་ན་ing བཞོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་སྒྲིམ་གྱི་གནས་ཚུལ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་ཏུ་ཁ་སྒྲིམ་དགོས།

- I enjoy
- I don't like
- If it's nice day tomorrow, I'd like.....
- When I'm on holiday, I like.....
- I don't mind.....but.....
- I wouldn't like.....



ཐེ་ཆེན་འགན་ཁུར་། I WANT YOU TO དང I TOLD YOU TO

༡ I want you to ཡི་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་ལྟངས།



The woman wants to go.
The man doesn't want the woman to go.
He wants her to stay.

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

I want { you / somebody / Ann } to do something.

➤ I want you to be happy. ('I want that you are happy' ཞེས་འདྲི་མི་རུང་)

- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

ང་ཆོས་ would like ཡང་དེ་ལྟར་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག

- Would you like me to lend you some money?

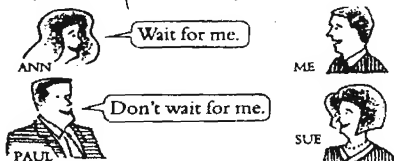
༢ ང་ཆོས་རེ་བྱ་མིག་ནང་གི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་འདི་ལྟར་བཀོལ་ཆོག་སྟེ།

བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆོག་ + གང་ཟག་ + to + ལས་ཆོག་ + བྱ་ཡུལ།

ask
tell
advise
expect
persuade
teach

Sue	asked	a friend	to lend	her some money.
I	told		you	to be
careful.				
What do you	advise		me	to do?
I didn't	expect	them	to be	here.
We	persuaded	George	to come	with us.

༣ I told you to དང I told you not to



Ann told me to wait for her.
Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

༤ make དང let གནིས་ཀྱི་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་ཚུལ་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར།

make དང let གནིས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱས་མི་ཆོག

- He's very funny. He makes me laugh. ('makes me to laugh' ཞེས་འདྲི་མི་རུང་)
- At school our teacher made us work very hard.
- Sue let me use her computer because mine wasn't working. ('let me to use' ཞེས་འདྲི་མི་རུང་)

ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་མི་གཞན་ཞིག་རང་ཉིད་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ལས་ཀ་བྱེད་པར་སྐྱེལ་བའི་སྐབས་སུ་let's ... (= let us) བཅད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག་དཔེར་ན།

- Come on! Let's dance.
- 'Shall we go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

FOR



ཐྱི་ཚེ་ན་ང་གཞུང་ལ། I went to the shop to

ག

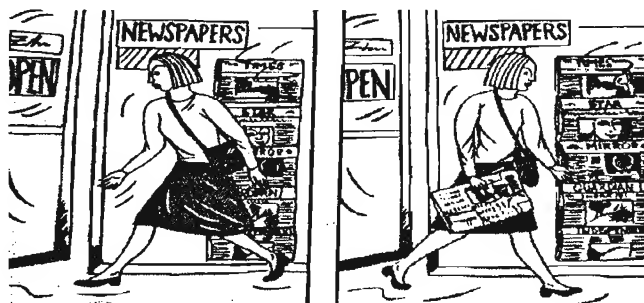
ཐོ་ལི་ལགས་ལ་ཚགས་པར་ཞིག་དགོས་པས་ཁོ་མོ་ཚང་

ཁང་དུ་བྱིན།

Why did she go to the shop?

To buy a newspaper.

She went to the shop to buy a newspaper.



ལས་ཚིག་གི་སྒྲིབ་དུ་To...(to buy/ to see)བཀོལ་བ་ནི་རྒྱ་མཚན་སྒྲིབ་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- 'Why are you going to out?' 'To get some bread.'
- Ann went to the station to meet her friend.
- Sue turned on the television to watch the news.
- I'd like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

Money/ time to གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- We need some money to buy food.
- I haven't got time to watch television.

ཁ དང་for གཉིས་ཀྱི་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་ཚུལ།

To ཡི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་བཀོལ་དགོས།	for ཡི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་བཀོལ་དགོས།
I went to the shop to buy a newspaper.	I went to the shop for a newspaper.
(Not 'for buy)	
They're going to Scotland to see their friends.	They're going to Scotland for a holiday.
We need some money to buy food.	We need some money for food.

ག wait for ...

- Please wait for me.
- Are you waiting for the bus?

Wait to ཡི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- Hurry up! I'm waiting to go.
- Are you waiting to see the doctor?

Wait for ཡི་རྒྱུ་ལས་ཚིག་ + གང་ཟག་གམ་དངོས་པོ་ + to + ལས་ཚིག་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
- Are you waiting for the doctor to come?





གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

53.1 གཤམ་གྱི་རེའུ་མིག་ལས་ལས་ཆོག་བདམས་ཤེས། I went to...ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་མགོ་ར་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

the station	the post office
the café	the supermarket

buy some food	get some stamps
catch a train	meet a friend

1) I went to the station to catch a train.

2) I went _____

3) _____

4) _____

53.2 རེའུ་མིག་ལས་ལས་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1) I turned on the television to watch the news.

2) Alice sat down in an armchair _____

3) Do I need a key _____

4) I went for a walk by the river _____

5) I knocked on the door of David's room _____

6) The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window. _____

53.2 to བཀོལ་ནས་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་དབྱེ་ཚུལ་ལྟར་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

to open this door	to wake him up	to see who it was
to watch the news	to read the newspaper	to get some fresh air

1) I went to the shop to buy a newspaper.

2) I'm very busy. I haven't got time _____

3) I phoned Ann _____

4) I'm going out _____

5) I borrowed some money _____

53.4 to འཕང་ན་for བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་ནམས་ཁ་སྐོང་དགོས།

1) Paula went to a shop to buy some bread.

2) We went to go to restaurant.....have dinner.

3) Robert wants to go to university.....study economics.

4) I'm going to London.....an interview next week.

5) I'm going to London.....visit some friends of mine.

6) Have you got timea cup of coffee?

7) I got up late this morning. I didn't have time.....wash.

8) Everybody needs money.....live.

9) The office is very small. There's space onlya desk and chair.

10) A: Excuse me, are you waitinguse the phone?

B: No, I'm waitingsomebody.

53.5 གཤམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

John / phone it / to arrive you / tell me the film / begin

1) I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.

2) I sat down in the cinema and waited _____

3) We called an ambulance and waited _____

4) 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting. _____



ཟླ་ཆ་ན་དུ་བཞུགས། GO TO... GO ON... GO FOR ... GO -ING

༡ go to ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- What time do you usually **go to work**?
- I'm **going to France** next week.
- Tom didn't **go to the concert**.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's **gone to bed**.'
- I **went to the dentist** last week.

go to →



Go to sleep རི་གཉིད་པའི་དོན།

- I was very tired and **went to sleep** quickly.

Go home གཉིས་ཀྱི་བར་དུ་འཇོག་སྤྱད་ཁྱེད་མི་རུང་།

- I'm **going home** now. ('going to home' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་།)

ཁ go on ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

go on	holiday
	a trip
	a tour
	an excursion
	a cruise
	strike

- We're going on holiday next week.
- Children often go on school trips.
- When we were in Scotland, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.
- The workers have gone on strike. (=they are refusing to work)

ག go for ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

go (somewhere) for	a walk
	a run
	a swim
	a drink
	a meal
	a holiday

- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's **gone for a walk**.'
- Do you **go for a run** every day?
- The sea looks nice. Let's **go for a swim**.
- We **went for a drink** after work yesterday.
- Shall we **go out for a meal**? I know a good restaurant.
- They've **gone to Scotland for a holiday**.

(ད་ཆོས་ན་མ་ཚུན་on holiday ཞེས་བཀོལ་མིན་འོན་ཀྱང་holiday ཡི་ཚུན་དུ་འཇོག་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་ད་ཆོས་for a holiday ཞེས་འབྲི།)

ང go + ལས་ཆོག་ + -ing བསྟན་པའི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

ད་ཆོས་go + ལས་ཆོག་སྟེ་ལུས་ཚུལ་གྱི་སྐོར་རམ་ཡང་ན། ཉེ་ཆོང་གི་སྐོར་ཡིན་སྐབས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་རྒྱུ་སུ་

ing བཞུགས་ཁྱེད་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

I go	shopping
He is going	swimming
We went	fishing
They have gone	sailing
She wants to go	skiing
	jogging
	skiing

- **Are you going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**. (ཡང་ན let's go for a swim.)
- Rachel has a small boat and she often **goes sailing**.
- I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.





གཤམ་སྒྱུད་

54.1. to/on/for སྐད་ཀྱི་འགྲེལ་བཤམ་གྱི་སྒྲིང་ཆ་སྒྲིང་དགོས།

- 1) I'm going to France next week.
- 2) Rachel often goes....sailing.
- 3) Sue wentMexico last year.
- 4) Would you like to gothe cinema this evening?
- 5) Jack goes.....jogging every morning.
- 6) I'm tired because I went to party last night and wentbed very late.
- 7) Martin is goingholidayItaly next week.
- 8) The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we wenta swim.
- 9) There will be no buses next week because the bus drivers are goingstrike.
- 10) I need some stamps, so I'm goingthe post office.
- 11) It's late. I must gohome now.
- 12) Would you like to goa tour of the city?
- 13) Shall we go outa meal this evening?
- 14) My parents are goinga cruise this summer.

54.2 go/goes/going/went སྐད་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་སྒྱུ་+ ing བཞོལ་བའི་ནམ་པ་བེད་སྤྱད་དེ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་

བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1) Rachel has a boat. She often goes sailing.
- 2) Last Saturday Diane went.....
- 3) Georgeevery day.
- 4) Linda is going on holiday next month. She is
- 5) Peter is going out later. He has to
- 6) Sheilaafter work yesterday evening.

54.3 ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་དང་མཉམ་ཏུ to/on/for སྐད་ཀྱི་འགྲེལ་བཤམ་

འོག་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

Home/shopping/holiday/a swim/ sleep/ a walk/Portugal/riding/the bank/skiing

- 1) The sea looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- 2) Is Ann at home?' 'No, she's goneto get some money.'
- 3) I'm goingnow. I have to buy some presents.
- 4) I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went
- 5) I wasn't enjoying the party, so I wentearly.
- 6) We live near the mountains. In winter we goevery weekend.
- 7) Richard has got a horse. He often goes
- 8) The weather is nice. Shall we goin the park?
- 9) A: Are you goingsoon?
- 10) B: Yes, next month. We're going



ཐེ་ཚན་འཕྲ་བ། GET

༡ get + མིང་ཆོག་བཞུགས་ཆེ་ དེའི་དོན་ནི་འབྱུང་བའམ་ཉིས་པ། འབྱུང་བ། རྟེན་པ་སྟགས་ཀྱི་དོན།
you get it

You don't have something.

You have it.

- > 'Did you get my letter?' 'Yes, I got it yesterday.' (འབྱུང་བའི་དོན།)
- > I like your pullover. Where did you get it? (ཉིས་བའི་དོན།)
- > (ཁ་པར་ནང་དུ་) 'Hello, can I speak to Ann, please?' 'One moment. I'll get her.' (འབྱུང་བའི་དོན།)
- > It's difficult to get a job at the moment. (རྟེན་པ་བའི་དོན།)

གཞན་དང་ཆོས་ get + a bus / a train / a taxi སྟགས་ལྟར་བཞུགས་སྟུང་བྱས་ཆོག

- > 'Did you come here on foot?' 'No, I got the bus.'

༢ get + བྱུང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་བཞུགས་ཆེ་ དེའི་དོན་ནི་ཆགས་པའམ་གྲུབ་པའི་དོན།

you get hungry

You're not hungry

you are hungry

- > If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- > Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- > I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she gets better soon.
- > We got very wet because we didn't have an umbrella.

གཞན་ཡང་།

get married བྱི་གཉེན་སྒྲིག་བྱས་པའི་དོན།

- > Linda and Frank are getting married soon.

Get dressed བྱི་གསུམ་བྱུང་པའི་དོན།

- > I got up and got dressed quickly.

Get lost བྱི་ (ལམ་) བོར་བའི་དོན།

- > We went for a walk and got lost.

༣ Get + ཡི་རྩེས་སྟུ་ས་ཆའི་མིང་བཞུགས་ཆེ་ དེའི་དོན་ནི་ས་གནས་དེར་འབྱུང་བའི་དོན།

- > I usually get to work before 8.30. (འབྱུང་བའི་དོན།)
- > We left London at 10 o'clock and got to Manchester at 12.45.
- > How did you get here? By bus?

Get home (to བོད་སྟུང་བྱེད་མི་ཆོག)

- > What time did you get home last night?

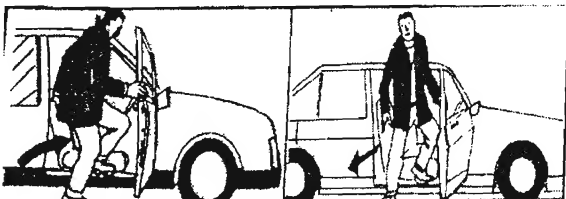
GET TO



༤ get in / out / on / off སྟགས་ཀྱི་བཞུགས་ཆུལ།

get in དང་ get out གཉིས་ནི་རྒྱང་ས་འཁོར་རྒྱུ་བར་བོད་སྟུང་བྱེད་པ། get on དང་ get off གཉིས་ནི་སྒྲིམ་སྟུང་རྒྱང་ས་

འཁོར་དང་མི་འཁོར། གནམ་གྲུ་སྟགས་ལ་བོད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།



- > A car stopped and a man got out. (ཡང་ན་ a man got out of the car.)
- > We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Church Street.



གཤམ་སྒྱུར།

55.1 **get(s)** དང་མཉམ་དུ་རེའུ་མིག་ལས་ལས་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

a taxi	my letter	some milk	a doctor
your jacket	a good salary	a ticket	the job

- 1) I wrote to you last week. Did you **get my letter**?
- 2) Where did you? It's very nice.
- 3) Quick! This man is ill. We must
- 4) I don't want to walk home. Let's
- 5) I had an interview with the manager but I didn't.....
- 6) When you go out, can you?
- 7) 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can.....'
- 8) Margaret has got a well-paid job. She

55.2 **getting** ཡི་ཇེས་སྒྱུ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

dark late cold ready married

- 1) Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**.
- 2) Turn on the light. It's
- 3) I'mnext week,' 'Ohm really? Congratulations!'
- 4) 'Where's Sally?' 'She'sto go out.'
- 5) It's It's time to go home.

55.3 **get/ got** ཡི་ཇེས་སྒྱུ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

angry better hungry lost married nervous old wet

- 1) If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
- 2) Don't go out in the rain. You'll
- 3) My brother.....last year. His wife's name is Julia.
- 4) Why did you.....with me? I didn't do anything wrong.
- 5) We tried to find the hotel but we
- 6) Everybody wants to stay young but we all
- 7) Most people.....before examinations.

55.4 **I left ...and got to** བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Home/ 7.30—work/ 8.15 **I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.**
- 2) London / 10.15—Bristol / 11.45
I left London at 10.15 and
- 3) The party/ 11.15—home/ midnight
.....
- 4) Write a true sentence about yourself.
I left

55.5 **got in / got out of / got on / got off** སྐོག་ས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Kate **got in** the car and drove away.
- 2) Ithe bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
- 3) Ann.....the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
- 4) I made a stupid mistake. I.....the wrong train.



མེ་ཚན་བཟོ་བ། DO ངང MAKE

༡ Do ཡིས་སྒྱུར་བྱེད་འགྲུལ་སྒྱུར་གྱི་ནུས་པ་སྟོན། དཔེར་ན།

- What are you **doing** this evening? ('what are you making' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's ok. I'll **do** it.'
- Julia's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

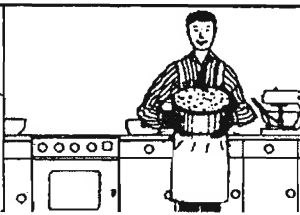
What do you do? དང་What's your job? གཉིས་གྱི་དོན་འདྲའོ།

- What do you do? 'I work in a bank.'

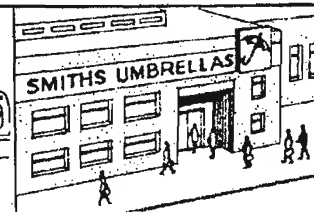
༢ make བྱི་བཟོས་པའི་དོན། དཔེར་ན།



She's **making** coffee.



He has **made** a cake.



They **make** umbrellas.



It was **made** in France.

do དང་make གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- I **did** a lot of things yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.
- A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
- B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for children.

༣ do ཡི་བཀོལ་སྟུང་།

Do
an exam / a test
a course
homework
somebody a favour
exercises
housework

- I'm doing my driving test next week.
- John has just done a training course.
- Have the children done their homework?
- Ann, could you do me a favor?
- I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.

གཞན་ཡང་འདི་སྟེ་do the shopping / the washing / the washing -up / the ironing / the cooking.

- I did the washing but I didn't do the shopping.

༤ make ཡི་བཀོལ་སྟུང་།

Make
a mistake
an appointment
a phone call
a list
a noise
a bed

- I'm sorry. I made a mistake.
- I must make an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me; I have to make a phone call.
- Have you made a shopping list?
- It's late. We mustn't make a noise.
- Sometimes I forget to make my bed in the morning.

ང་ཚོས་འདི་སྟེ་make a film ཡིན་ནའང་ང་ཚོས་ take a photograph:

- When was **this** film **made**? ཡང་ན་ When was **this** photograph **taken**?



གཤམ་བྱུང་།

56.1 make / making / made ཡང་ན do / doing / did / done སྟོན་པ་བཞི་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆར་བར་བཟོ་

དགོས།

- 1) 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's ok. I'll do it.
- 2) What did youat the weekend? Did you go away?
- 3) Do you know how tobread?
- 4) Paper isfrom wood.
- 5) Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair andnothing.
- 6) What do you.....?' 'I'm a doctor.'
- 7) I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have youit?
- 8) What do theyin that factory?' 'Shoes.'
- 9) I'msome coffee. Would you like some?
- 10) Why are you angry with me? I didn'tanything wrong.
- 11) What are youtomorrow afternoon? 'I'm working.'

56.2 གཤམ་གྱི་རིམ་མི་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་འཕྲིད་ཐིག་ཏུ་འབྲི་དགོས།



- 1) He's making a cake.
- 2) They.....
- 3)
- 4)
- 5)
- 6)

56.3 make འཕྲིད་པ་བཟོ་ do གཉིས་པ་བཞི་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.
- 2) Why do you alwaysthe same mistake?
- 3) 'Can youme a favor?' 'It depends what it is.'
- 4) 'Have youyour homework?' 'Not yet.'
- 5) I need to see the dentist but I haven'tan appointment.
- 6) I'ma course in photography at the moment. It's very good.
- 7) The last time Ian exam was ten years ago.
- 8) When you've finished Exercise 1, you canExercise 2.
- 9) There's something wrong with the car. The engine isa strange noise.
- 10) It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever.....
- 11) Let'sa list of all the thing we have totoday.



ཐེ་ཚན་པ་བཟུང་བ། HAVE

གི་ have དང་ have got (ཐེ་ཚན་ཉལ་སྟོན།)

I've got ཡང་ན། I have (དངོས་ཅ, བྱི་རང་ལ་དངོས་པོ་ཡོད་པའི་དོན།)

- I've got a new car. ཡང་ན། I have a new car.
- Sue has got long hair. ཡང་ན། Sue has long hair.
- Have they got any children? ཡང་ན། Do they have any children?
- Tim hasn't got a job. ཡང་ན། Tim doesn't have a job.
- How much time have you got? ཡང་ན། How much time do you have?

གཞན་ཡང་།

- I've got a headache. ཡང་ན། I have a headache.
- Have you got a cold? ཡང་ན། Do you have a cold?

I have ཡི་འདས་པ་ནི། I had ཡིན་ལ་དེའི་ཇེས་སུ་ got བེད་སྟུང་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- How much time did you have?

ཁ་ have breakfast དང་ have a shower སྐགས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

have བྱི་ཟ་མ་སྐགས་ཟོས་པ་འཕ་བཟུང་བའི་དོན་ཡིན་པས་འདིའི་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཚོས་ got བེད་སྟུང་མི་བྱེད།

have	breakfast/ lunch/ dinner
	a meal/ a sandwich/ a pizza
	a cup of coffee/ a glass of milk etc.
	something to eat/ drink

- Where's Ann? 'She's having lunch.
- I don't usually have breakfast.
- I had three cups of coffee this morning.
- 'Have a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'

ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་ have བེད་སྟུང་བྱས་ཆོག།

have	a bath/ a shower
	a rest/ a holiday/ a party
	a nice time / a good journey
	a walk/ a swim / a game/(of tennis)
	a dream/ an accident
	a baby
	a look(at)

- I had a shower this morning.
- We're having a party next week. You must come.
- Enjoy your holiday. Have a nice time.
- Did you have a good time in London?
- Sandra has just had a baby.
- Can I have a look at your newspaper?

གི་ I've got དང་ I have གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- I've got / I have a new shower. It's very good. (འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་
ནང་དུ་ I've got དང་ I have གཉིས་དོན་གཅིག་ཡིན།)
- I have a shower every morning. ('I've got ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- A: Where's Paul?
B: He's having a shower. (ད་ལྟ་ཞོས་ལུས་པོ་འཁྲུང་བཞིན་པའི་དོན།)



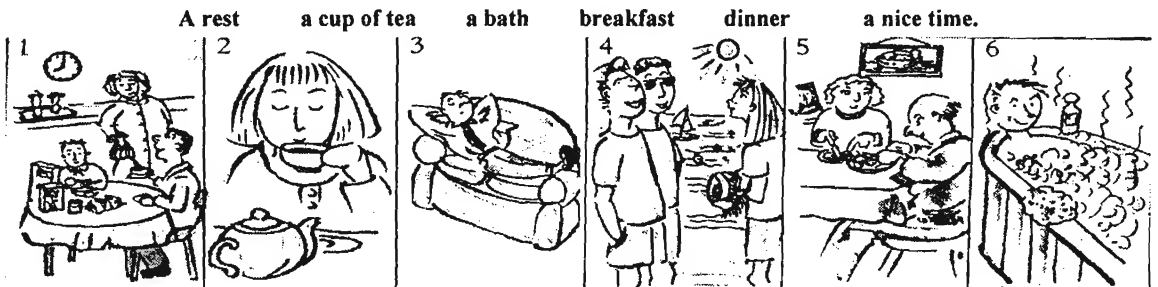


གཤམ་ལྷན་

57.1 haveཡང་ན་have gotགཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I didn't have time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
- 2) Has Lisa got (or does Lisa have) a car? 'No, she can't drive.' (Lisa / have)
- 3) He can't open the door.a key.(he / not / have)
- 4)a cold last week. He's better now. (George / have)
- 5) What's wrong?a headache? (You / have?)
- 6) We wanted to go by taxi but weenough money. (We / not / have)
- 7) Liz is very busy.much free time.(She / not / have)
- 8)any problems when you were on holiday? (You / have?)

57.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བདམས་ནས་རིམ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1) They're having breakfast.
- 2) She.....
- 3) He.....
- 4) They.....
- 5)
- 6)

57.3 གནས་ཚུལ་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ཁྲོད་དུ་ཁྱོད་གྱིས་ཇི་ལྟར་བཤད།

- 1) Ann is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?
Have a nice holiday.
- 2) You meet Claire at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about to flight.
Did you have a good flight?
- 3) Tom is going on a long journey. What do you say to him before he leaves?
.....
- 4) It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
.....
- 5) Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.
.....
- 6) Rachel is going out for a meal tonight. What do you say to her before she goes?
.....

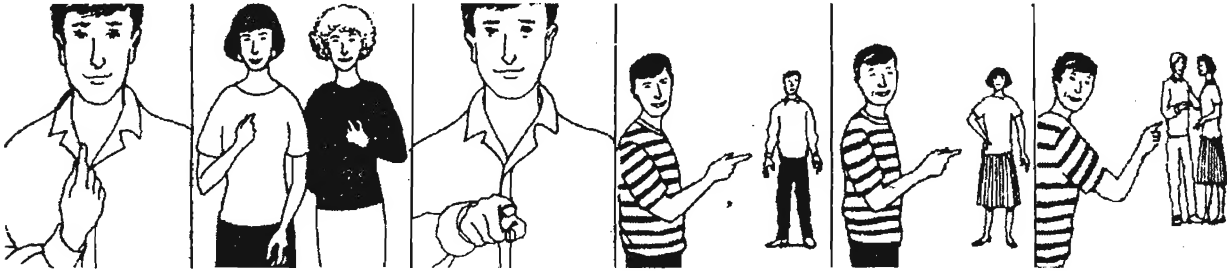
57.4 haveདང་hadགཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇི་སྟེ་སྟེ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།
an accident a glass of water a look a walk a party something to eat

- 1) We had a party a few weeks ago. We invited fifty people.
- 2) Shall we? 'No, I'm not hungry.'
- 3) I was thirsty, so I
- 4) I like to get up early andbefore breakfast.
- 5) Tina is a very good driver. She has never.....
- 6) There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can youat it?



ཐོག་མཇུག་དང་བརྒྱུད་པ། I/ME HE/HIM THEY/THEM

ག མི།



བྱེད་པ་ལ། I we you he she they
བྱ་བའི་ལུ་ལ། me us you him her them

བྱེད་པ་ལ།			བྱ་བའི་ལུ་ལ།
I	I know Ann.	Ann knows me.	Me
We	We know Ann.	Ann knows us.	Us
You	You know Ann.	Ann knows you.	You?
He	He knows Ann.	Ann knows him.	Him
She	She knows Ann.	Ann knows her.	Her
They	They know Ann.	Ann knows them.	Them

ཁ དངོས་པོ།



བྱེད་པ་ལ། it they
བྱ་བའི་ལུ་ལ། it them

- I don't want this book. You can have it.
- I don't want these books. You can have them.
- Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I never go to parties. I don't like them.

ག ང་ཚོས་ me/her/them སྐད་ཀྱི་འབྲེལ་ཚིག་ (preposition) གི་རྗེས་སུ་བཤེད་ཐུང་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- This letter isn't for me. It's for you.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?
- Where's the newspaper? You're sitting on it.

Give it དང་ them ཏེ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- Robert wants these books. Can you give them to him, please?



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

58.1 him/ her/ them སྤྱི་མཁའ་བཞེད་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I don't know those girls. Do you know them?
- 2) I don't know that man. Do you know.....?
- 3) I don't know those people. Do you know
- 4) I don't know David's wife. Do you know.....?
- 5) I don't know Mr. Stevens. Do you know.....?
- 6) I don't Sarah's parents. Do you know.....?
- 7) I don't know the women with the black coat. Do you know.....?

58.2 I / me / you / she / her སྤྱི་མཁའ་བཞེད་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I want to see her but she doesn't want to see me.
- 2) They want to see me but doesn't want to see
- 3) She wants to see him but doesn't want to see
- 4) We want to see them but don't want to see
- 5) He wants to see us but don't want to see
- 6) They want to see her but doesn't want to see
- 7) I want to see them but don't want to see
- 8) You want to see her but doesn't want to see

58.3 I like..., I don't like..., do you like སྤྱི་མཁའ་བཞེད་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I don't eat tomatoes. I don't like them.
- 2) George is a very nice man. I like
- 3) This jacket isn't very nice. I don't
- 4) This is my new car. Do
- 5) Mrs. Clark is not very friendly. I
- 6) These are my new shoes.?

58.4 I / me / he / him སྤྱི་མཁའ་བཞེད་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- 2) Do you know that man? 'Yes, I work with.....'
- 3) Where are the tickets? I can't find.....
- 4) I can't find my keys. Where are.....?
- 5) We're going out. You can come with.....
- 6) Margaret likes music. plays the piano.
- 7) I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of
- 8) I'm talking to you. Please listen to.....
- 9) Where is Ann? I want to talk to
- 10) My brother has a new job. doesn't like very much.

58.5 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I want that book. Can you give it to me?
- 2) He wants the key. Can you give.....
- 3) She wants the keys. Can you
- 4) I want that letter. Can you
- 5) They want the money. Can you
- 6) We want the photographs. Can you.....



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

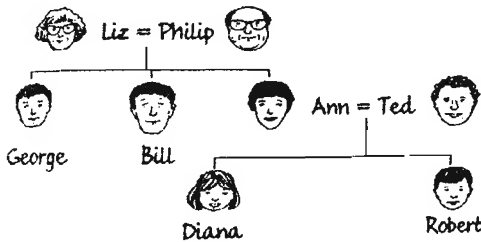
59.1 གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་ཁྱུང་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I'm going to wash **my hands**. He's going to wash.....
- 2) She's going to wash..... They're going to wash.....
- 3) We're going to wash..... Are you going to wash.....?

59.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་ཁྱུང་ནམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) He **lives with his parents**. Iparents.
- 2) They live with.....parents. John
- 3) Weparents. Do you live.....?
- 4) Julia lives..... Most children.....

59.3 རིམ་བུ་སྟུང་ཆེས་his/ her / their སྟོན་བཞུགས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་ཁྱུང་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- 1) I saw Liz with **her** husband, Philip.
- 2) I saw Ann and Ted with children.
- 3) I saw Ted withwife, Ann.
- 4) I saw George withbrother, Bill.
- 5) I saw Liz and Philip withson, Bill.
- 6) I saw Diana and Robert withparents.

59.4 my / our / your / his / her / their / its སྟོན་བཞུགས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་ཁྱུང་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Do you like **your** job?
- 2) I know Mr. Watson but I don't know.....wife.
- 3) Mr. and Mrs. Baker live in London.son lives in Australia.
- 4) We're going to have party. We're going to invite allfriends.
- 5) Ann is going out withfriends this evening.
- 6) I like tennis. It'sfavorite sport.
- 7) Is thatcar? No, I haven't got a car.
- 8) I want to phone Ann. Do you knowphone number?
- 9) Do you think most people are happy injobs?
- 10) I'm going to wash..... hair before I go out.
- 11) This is a beautiful tree.leaves are a beautiful color.
- 12) John has a brother and a sister.brother is 25 andsister is 21.

59.5 my / his / their སྟོན་བཞུགས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་ཁྱུང་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

དགོས།

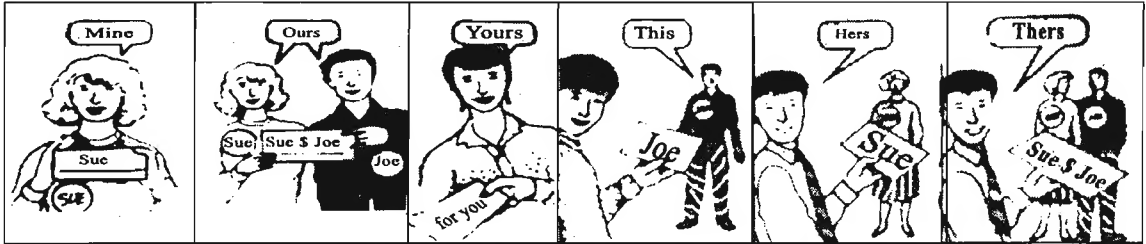
coat homework house husband job key name

- 1) Jim doesn't enjoy **his job**. It's not very interesting.
- 2) I can't open the door. I haven't got
- 3) Sally is married.works in a bank.
- 4) It's very cold today. Put onwhen you go out.
- 5) What are the children doing? They're doing.....
- 6) Do you know that man? Yes, but I don't know.....
- 7) We live in Barton Street.is at the end on the left.



ཞིང་ཆོས་ཀྱི་ཕྱི་ལོ། WHOSE IS THIS? IT'S MINE / YOURS / HERS སྟགས།

༡



I	my	mine	It's my money.	It's mine.
We	our	ours	It's our money.	It's ours.
You	your	yours	It's your money.	It's yours.
He	his	his	It's his money.	It's his.
She	her	hers	It's her money.	It's hers.
They	their	theirs	It's their money.	It's theirs.

ཁ ང་ཆོས་ my / your + མིང་ཆོག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Ann gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

mine/ yours སྟགས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་མི་རུང་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- Is this book mine or yours? (ནི་ངའི་དེའི་བཟ་ཡང་ན་ཆུང་གི་དེའི་)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Ann gave me hers. (ནི་མོའི་ཆར་གདུགས་)
- It's their problem, not ours. (ནི་ང་ཆོའི་དཀའ་ངལ་མིན་)
- We went in our car and they went in theirs. (ནི་ཁོང་ཆོའི་རྒྱུང་ས་འཁོར་)

ང་ཆོས་ his/ her སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་མི་རུང་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- 'Is this his camera or hers?' 'It's his.'

ག a friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours སྟགས།

- I went out to meet a friend of mine. ('a friend of me.' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Tom was with a friend of his. (friends of you' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Are those people friends of yours? ('friends of you' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ང Whose...? ཡི་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་མི་རུང་བ།

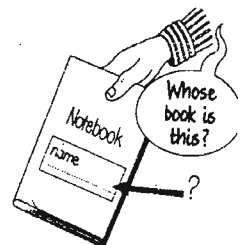
- Whose book is this? (ནི་དེའི་འདི་ཆུང་གི་ཁོང་གི་འདི་དེ་དམ་ཞེས་བཤད་དོན་ནི་)

Whose ཡི་རྩིས་སྤྱི་ང་ཆོས་མིང་ཆོག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་མི་རུང་བ།

- Whose money is this? }
- Whose is this? }
- Whose shoes are these? }
- Whose are these? }

It's mine.

They're John's.





གསལ་བཤད་

60.1 mine/ yours སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ལྷན་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1) It's your money. It's <u>yours</u> . | 5. It's their house. It's..... |
| 2) It's my bag. It's | 6. They're your books. They're..... |
| 3) It's our car. It's | 7. They're my glasses. They're..... |
| 4) They're her shoes. They're..... | 8. It's his coat. It's..... |

60.2 འོག་ཏུ་འབྲེད་ཐིག་བཀོད་ཡོད་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ལས་ཡང་དག་པ་གང་ཡིན་འདེམས་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1) It's <u>their</u> / <u>theirs</u> problem, not <u>our</u> / <u>ours</u> . | <u>Their and ours are right.</u> |
| 2) This is a nice camera. Is it <u>your</u> / <u>yours</u> ? | |
| 3) That's not my /mine umbrella. <u>My</u> / <u>mine</u> is black. | |
| 4) Whose books are these? <u>Your</u> / <u>yours</u> or <u>my</u> / <u>mine</u> ? | |
| 5) Catherine is going out with <u>her</u> / <u>hers</u> friends this evening. | |
| 6) My / Mine room is bigger than <u>her</u> / <u>hers</u> . | |
| 7) They've got two children but I don't know <u>their</u> / <u>theirs</u> names. | |
| 8) Can we use your washing machine? <u>our</u> / <u>ours</u> is broken. | |

60.3 friend(s) of mine / yours སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ལྷན་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- I went to the cinema with a friend of mine.
- They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.
- She's going out with a friend.....
- We had dinner with some
- I played tennis with a
- Tom is going to meet a
- Do you know those people? Are they.....?

60.4 གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་རིམ་ཅན་གི་མིང་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བཤད་བཞིན་ཡོད་པ་འབྲི་དགོས།

1

3

5

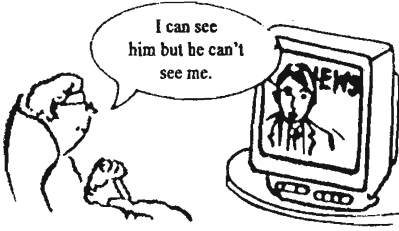
2

4

6



ཐོ་ཚན་དེ་གཅིག་པ། I / ME MY / MINE སྐད་སྒྲུབ།




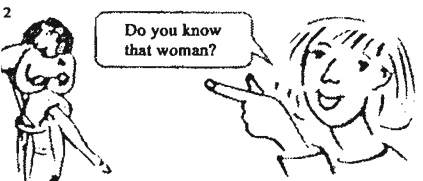
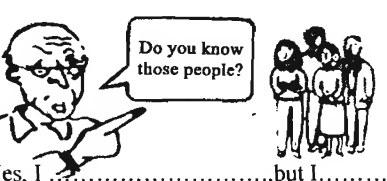

	I know Tom.	Tom knows me.	It's my car.	It's mine.
	We know Tom.	Tom knows us.	It's our car.	It's ours.
	You know Tom.	Tom knows you.	It's your car.	It's yours.
	He knows Tom.	Tom knows him.	It's his car.	It's his.
	She knows Tom.	Tom knows her.	It's her car.	It's hers.
	They know Tom.	Tom knows them.	It's their car.	It's theirs.

- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.'
- She was very pleased because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen them?
B: Yes, they are playing with their friends in the park.
- That's my pen. Can you give it to me, please?
- 'Is this your umbrella?' 'No, it's yours.'
- He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave him hers. (ནི་ She gave her umbrella to him དང་དོན་འདྲའོ)
- I'm meeting a friend of mine this evening. (a friend of me ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



གཤམ་སྒྲུབ་

61.1 འདྲི་ཚིག་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་དོན་ཚན་དང་པོའི་དྲིས་ལན་ལྟར་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ལ་དྲིས་ལན་ འདེབས་དགོས།

 <p>Do you know that man?</p> <p>Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.</p>	 <p>Do you know that woman?</p> <p>Yes, I know .....but I can't remember.....</p>
 <p>Do you know those people?</p> <p>Yes, I .....but I names.</p>	 <p>Do you know me?</p> <p>Yes, I .....but I names.</p>

61.2 དོན་ཚན་དང་པོ་ལྟར་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) We invited her to stay with us at our house.
- 2) He invited us to stay withhouse.
- 3) They invited me to stay with.....house.
- 4) I invited them.....
- 5) She invited us
- 6) Did you invite him.....?

61.3 དོན་ཚན་དང་པོ་ལྟར་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཚང་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I gave him my address and he gave me his.
- 2) I gave heraddress and she gave me
- 3) He gave meaddress and I gave.....
- 4) We gave themaddress and they gave
- 5) She gave himaddress and
- 6) You gave us.....address and
- 7) They gave you address and

61.4 Him / her / yours སྟོན་པ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཚང་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) Where's Ann? Have you seen her?
- 2) Where are my keys? Where did I put.....?
- 3) This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to
- 4) We wrote to John but he didn't answerletter.
- 5) I can't find my pen. Can I use? Yes, of course.
- 6) We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with.....?
- 7) Did your sister pass.....exams?
- 8) Some people talk about.....jobs all the time.
- 9) Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of



ཞི་ཚུན་རིམ་གཅིག་ལ། MYSELF / YOURSELF / THEMSELVES སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།

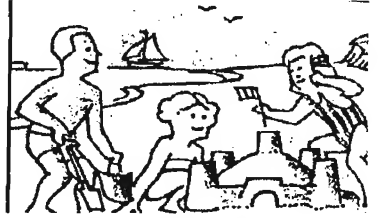
༡



He's looking at himself.



Help yourself!







They're enjoying themselves.

I	me	myself
He	him	himself
She	her	herself
You	your	yourself
You	your	yourselves
We	us	ourselves
They	them	themselves

- > I looked at myself in the mirror.
- > He cut himself with a knife.
- > She fell off her bike but she didn't hurt herself.
- > Please help yourself. (One person)
- > Please help yourselves. (Two or more people)
- > We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ourselves.
- > They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves.

ཁ བསྐྱུར་བ།







Me/ him/ them	Myself/ himself/ themselves
 <p>She is looking at him. different people</p> 	 <p>He is looking at himself. the same person</p> 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > You never talk to me. > I didn't pay for them. > Did I hurt you? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > Sometimes I talk to myself. > They paid for themselves. > Be careful. Don't hurt yourself.

ག by myself / by yourself སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།

- > I went on holiday by myself. (ཁོང་ཚོ་རྒྱུ་ལྟོ་ལ་བཞུགས་པའི་དོན་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།)
- > 'Was she with friends?' 'No, she was by herself.'

ང each other ཡི་བཞོལ་ཚུལ།

- > Jill and Ann are good friends. They know each other well. (ཡན་ཚུན་ང་ཞེས་པའི་དོན་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།)
- > Paul and I live near each other. (ཁོ་ཡང་ཡན་ཚུན་ལ་བཞུགས་པའི་དོན་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།)

<p>STEVE</p>  <p>SUE</p> 	<p>STEVE</p>   <p>SUE</p>  
<p>each otherང་-selvesགཅིག་ལ་བསྐྱུར་བ། Steve and Sue looked at each other. (ཡན་ཚུན་ལ་བསྐྱུར་བའི་དོན་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།)</p>	<p>Steve and sue looked at themselves. (རང་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་རང་ཉིད་ལ་བསྐྱུར་བའི་དོན་ཀྱི་ཐོག་མཐུག་པོ།)</p>



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

62.1 myself / yourself སྤྱོད་པ་བཞག་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) He looked at himself in the mirror.
- 2) I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with.....
- 3) Margaret had a nice time in London. She enjoyed.....
- 4) My friends had a nice time in London. They enjoyed.....
- 5) I picked up a very hot plate and burnt.....
- 6) He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about.....
- 7) I want to know more about you. Tell me about(one person)
- 8) Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after! (Two people)

62.2 by myself / by yourself སྤྱོད་པ་བཞག་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I went on holiday alone. I went on holiday by myself.
- 2) When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he
- 3) Don't go out alone. Don't
- 4) I went to the cinema alone. I
- 5) My sister lives alone. My sister.....
- 6) Many people live alone. Many people.....

62.3 རི་མོར་བཞུགས་ཐེས་ each other བཞག་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

<p>1</p>	<p>2</p>	<p>3</p>
<p>They like each other.</p>	<p>They can't</p>	<p>They</p>
<p>4</p>	<p>5</p>	<p>6</p>
<p>.....</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>.....</p>

62.4 each other ཡང་ན ourselves / yourselves/ themselves ཡང་ན us / you / them སྤྱོད་པ་བཞག་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་

ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

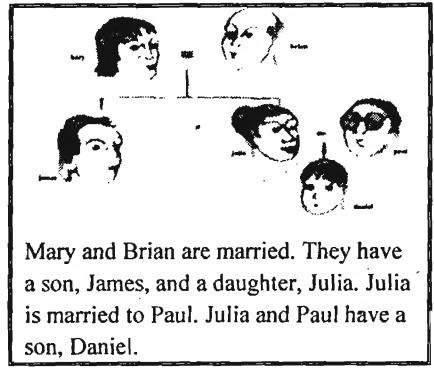
- 1) Paul and I live near each other.
- 2) Who are those people? Do you know them?
- 3) You can help Tom and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help.....
- 4) There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help.....
- 5) We didn't go to Ann's party. She didn't invite.....
- 6) When we go on holiday, we always enjoy.....
- 7) Mary and Jane were at school together but they never see.....now.
- 8) Diane and I are very good friends. We've knownfor a longtime.
- 9) 'Did you see David and Diane at the party?' 'Yes, but I didn't speak to
- 10) Many people talk towhen they're alone.



གསལ་སྒྲུབ་

63.1 རི་མོ་འཛིན་པ་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གི་འབྲེལ་བ་ཅི་ཡིན་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) (Brian / husband) Brian is Mary's husband.
- 2) (Julia / mother) Julia is Daniel's mother.
- 3) (Marry / wife) Mary iswife.
- 4) (James/ brother) James.....
- 5) (James / uncle)uncle.
- 6) (Julia / wife) Julia.....
- 7) (Mary / grandmother)
- 8) (Julia / sister).....
- 9) (Paul /husband).....
- 10) (Paul / father).....
- 11) (Daniel / nephew)



63.2 རི་མོ་ར་བལྟས་རྗེས་ཆོག་གཅིག་གིས་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།



Whose is this?
Alice's
Whose is this?



3 And this?
4 And these?



5 And this?
6 And these?

63.3 གསལ་སྒྲུབ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལས་མི་འགྲིག་པ་རྣམས་ལྷོ་ར་བཅོས་བྱེད་དགོས།

- 1) I stayed at the house of my sister.
- 2) What is the name of this village?
- 3) Do you like the color of this coat?
- 4) Do you know the phone number of Bill?
- 5) The job of my brother is very interesting.
- 6) Write your name at the top of the page.
- 7) For me the morning is the best part of the day.
- 8) The favorite color of Paula is blue.
- 9) When is the birthday of your mother?
- 10) The house of my parents isn't very big.
- 11) The walls of this house are very thin.
- 12) The car stopped at the end of the street.
- 13) Are you going to the party of Silvia next week?
- 14) The manager of the hotel is on holiday at the moment.

My sister's house
Ok

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

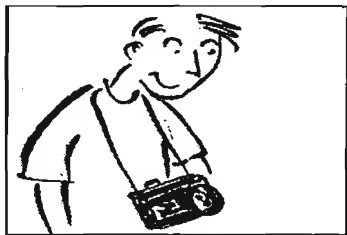
.....

.....

.....



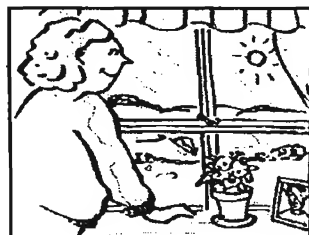
འཆན་ཅི་བཞི་བ། A / AN



He's got a camera.



She's waiting for a taxi.



It's beautiful day.

༥ བོ་དངོས་པོ་གཅིག་གམ་གང་ཟག་གཅིག་གི་དོན་རྟེ། དཔེར་ན།

- Alice works in a bank. ('in bank' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Can I ask a question? ('ask question' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I haven't got a car.
- There's a woman at the bus stop.

༦ an བོ་དང་དོན་འདྲ་ན་འདྲ་། བོད་སྐད་ཕྱིད་སྐད་ས་མི་འདྲ་སྟེ། གལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་ཐོག་མའི་གསལ་ཕྱིད་དེ་

དབྱེད་ས་ a / e / l / o / u ལས་གང་རུང་ཞིག་ཡིན་སྐབས་ང་ཆོས་མིང་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་སྔན་དུ་an བོད་སྐད་ཕྱིད་དགོས།

- Do you want an apple or banana?
- I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting programme on TV last night.

ང་ཆོས་ hour ཡི་སྔན་དུ་an བོད་སྐད་ཕྱིད་ལ། ལྷ་མཚན་ནི་ hour ཡི་ཐོག་མའི་གསལ་བཤད་ h དེ་སྔག་སྐབས་སུ་སྒྲ་མི་འབྲིན་པས་སྟེ། གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཆོས་ university དང་

European གསལ་སྐད་ལྟ་བུའི་ཆོག་གི་སྔན་དུ་a བོད་སྐད་ཕྱིད་ལ། ལྷ་མཚན་ནི་དེ་དག་གི་སྔག་མའི་དེ་You ཡི་སྔག་ཡིན་པས་སྟེ།

Another (an དང་ other གཉིས་ཀྱིས་གྲུབ་པ་ཡིན།) བོ་གཞན་ཞིག་གི་དོན་ཡིན།

- Can I have another cup of tea?

༧ a / an གཉིས་ནི་ང་ཆོས་དངོས་པོ་དང་མི་སྐད་གསལ་གང་ཡིན་སྟན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བོད་སྐད་ཕྱིད་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

- The sun is a star.
- Football is a game.
- Dallas is a city in Texas.
- A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person

ང་ཆོས་ a / an གཉིས་ནི་ལས་གནས་སྟན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་ཡང་བོད་སྐད་ཕྱིད་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

- A: What's your job?
- B: I'm a dentist. ('I'm dentist' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- What does Mark do? 'He's an engineer.'
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?





གསལ་རྒྱུ་

64.1 གསལ་རྒྱུ་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་སྟོན་ཏུ་ a དང་ an གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) <u>an</u> old book | 4.....airport | 9.....university |
| 2) .....window | 5.....new airport | 8.....hour |
| 3) .....horse | 6.....organisation | 7.....economic problem. |

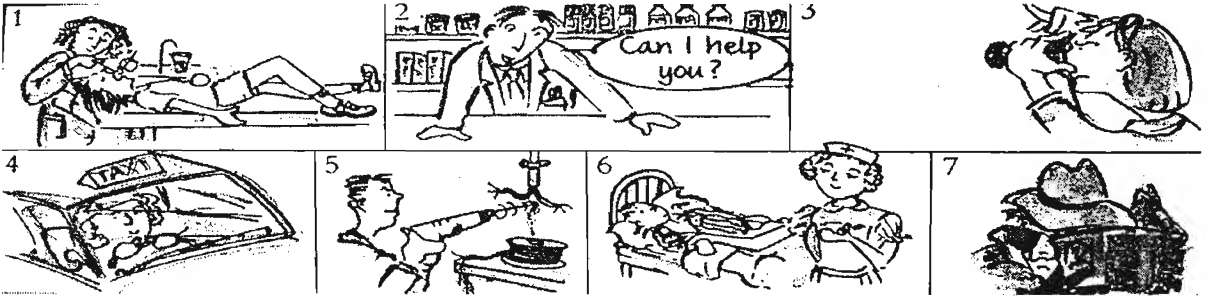
64.2 bird/fruit/mountain /river/musical instrument/flower/game/planet/tool/vegetable སྟོན་པའི་གསལ་རྒྱུ་དངོས་

པོ་དེ་དག་ཅི་ཞིག་ཡིན་པ་སྟོན་དགོས།

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) A duck is <u>a bird</u> . | 6.Jupiter is |
| 2) A carrot is | 7.A pear is |
| 3) Tennis is | 8.The Amazon is |
| 4) A hammer is | 9.A rose is |
| 5) Everest is | 10.A trumpet is |

64.3 Dentist/electrician/nurse/photographer/private detective/shop assistant/taxi driver སྟོན་པའི་གསལ་རྒྱུ་རིམ་མོའི་མི་མེད་

དག་གི་ལས་གནས་ཅི་ཞིག་ཡིན་པ་སྟོན་དགོས།



- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1) She's <u>a dentist</u> . | 5..... |
| 2) He's | 6..... |
| 3) She..... | 7..... |
| 4) | 8 And you? I'm..... |

64.4 གསལ་རྒྱུ་རེའུ་མིག་གཉིས་ལས་མིང་ཆོག་བདམས་ཇེས་དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་ a / an བཀོལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་

བཟོ་དགོས།

I want to ask you	Barbara works in
Tom never wears	Ann wants to learn
I can't ride	Jim lives in
My brother is	This evening I'm going to

old house	artist
party	question
bookshop	foreign language
hat	bicycle

- 1) I want to ask you a question.
- 2)
- 3)
- 4)
- 5)
- 6)
- 7)
- 8)



སྒྲིལ་རྩེ་ལྗང་། FLOWER(S) BUS (ES)

༡ བུ་མ་རྩེ་ལྗང་ཆོས་མིང་ཆོག་གི་རྩེ་ལྗང་སྤྱིར་བཏོན་པ་དེ་ལ་མིང་ཆོག་གི་མང་གྲངས་ཟེར།

ཆུང་གྲངས།	མང་གྲངས།
a flower	some flowers
a week	two weeks
a nice place	many nice places
this shop	these shops



a flower



some flowers

དག་ཆ་ཞིབ་མོར་ཟུར་བཀོད་པ་ལ་སྟུང་།

གལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་s /sh /ch /x /སྐད་མཐའ་ཆོས་དེ་དག་གི་རྩེ་ལྗང་སྤྱིར་བཏོན་པ་	bus - buses	dish - dishes
boxes	Church-churches	box-
	potato-potatoes	tomato-tomatoes
གལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་མཐའ་yཡིན་པ་དང་དེའི་སྟུང་གི་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་ཆོས་མཐའ་ཡིན་ཆོ་ཡེད་པ་ལ་སྤྱིར་བཏོན་པ་	dictionary - dictionaries	party - parties
baby - babies	day-days	monkey- monkeys
boy - boys		
གལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་མཐའ་f / feཡིན་ཆོ་ f / feག་གི་སྤྱིར་བཏོན་པ་	shelf -shelves	knife - knives
wife - wives		

༢ ག་ཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་འདི་དག་དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་ནང་དུ་མང་གྲངས་ཡིན།



scissors



glasses



trousers



jeans



shorts



tights



pajamas

- Do you wear glasses?
- Where are the scissors? I need them.

གཞན་དང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ལྟེ། a pair of scissors / a pair of trouser / a pair of pajamas

- I need a new pair of jeans. ཡང་ན་ I need some new jeans. (Not 'a new jeans')

༣ མིང་ཆོག་གི་མང་གྲངས་ཁ་ཤས་གྱི་རྩེ་ལྗང་སྤྱིར་བཏོན་པ་དེ་ལ་སྟུང་།

this man - these men	one foot - two feet	that sheep - those sheep
a woman - some women	a tooth - all my teeth	a fish - a lot of fish
a child - many children	a mouse - some mice	

གཞན་ཡང་ a person - two people / some people / a lot of people སྐད་ཀྱི་ལཱ།

- She's a nice person.
- They are nice people. ('nice persons' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

༤ people བོ་མང་གྲངས་ཡིན་ཕྱིར་དེ་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཀོལ་ཆོག་ལྟེ། people are / people have

- A lot of people speak English. (Not 'speaks' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I like the people here. They are very friendly.

Police ཡང་མང་གྲངས་ཡིན། དཔེར་ན།

- 'The police are here.' 'Why? What do they want?'

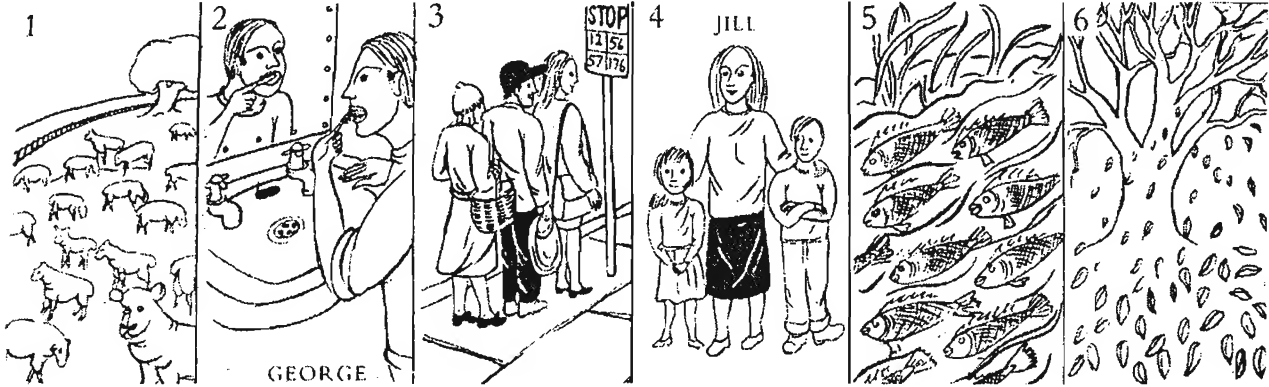


གསལ་བྱུང་

65.1 གསལ་བྱུང་མིང་ཆོག་འདི་དག་གི་མང་གུང་སྒྲིག་པ་ལྟོས།

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1) flower flowers | umbrella | family |
| 2) boat | address | foot |
| 3) woman | knife..... | holiday..... |
| 4) city | sandwich..... | potato..... |

65.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ནས་གསལ་བྱུང་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆོང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- | | |
|---|--|
| 1) There are a lot of sheep in the field. | 4 Jill has got two..... |
| 2) George is cleaning..... | 5 There are a lot of.....in the river. |
| 3) There are three.....at the bus stop. | 6 The are falling from the tree. |

65.3 གསལ་བྱུང་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལས་མང་ཤས་ནི་ཁོར་བ་ཡིན་པས་དེ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 1) I'm going to buy some flowers. **Ok**
- 2) I need a new jeans. **I need a new pair of jeans. Or I need some new jeans.**
- 3) It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.....
- 4) There was a woman in the car with two mens.....
- 5) Sheep eat grass.
- 6) David is married and has three childs.....
- 7) Most of my friend are student.
- 8) He put on his pyjama and went to bed.
- 9) We went fishing but we didn't catch many fish.....
- 10) Do you know many persons in this town?
- 11) I like your trouser. Where did you get it?.....
- 12) The town center is usually full of tourist.
- 13) I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them.
- 14) This scissor isn't very sharp.

65.4 སྒྲིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་ལས་གང་འགྲིག་བདམས་ནས་གསལ་བྱུང་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1) It's a nice place. Many people go there for a holiday. | (go ཡང་ན goes?) |
| 2) Some people .....always late. | (is ཡང་ན are?) |
| 3) The president is not popular. The people .....like him. | (don't ཡང་ན doesn't?) |
| 4) A lot of people .....television every day. | (watch ཡང་ན watches?) |
| 5) Three people .....injured in the accident. | (was ཡང་ན were?) |
| 6) How many people..... in that house? | (live ཡང་ན lives?) |
| 7) the police carry guns in your country? | (do ཡང་ན does?) |
| 8) The police .....looking for the stolen car. | (is ཡང་ན are?) |
| 9) I need my glasses but I can't find..... | (it ཡང་ན them?) |
| 10) I'm going to buy .....new jeans today. | (a ཡང་ན some?) |



ཐེ་ཚན་རེ་བྱ་བ། A CAR / SOME MONEY

༡ མིང་ཚིག་ལ་བཟང་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་དང་བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་གཉིས་སུ་དབྱེ་ཚོགས་
བཟང་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་ དཔེར་ན།

(a) car (a) man (a) key (a) house (a) flower (an) idea (an) accident

ང་ཚོས་བཟང་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་གི་སྡེ་ན་དུ་one / two / three སྟགས་བཀོལ་ཚོགས་ དཔེར་ན།



one car



two cars



three men



four houses

བཟང་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་ལ་རྒྱང་གྲངས་དང་མང་གྲངས་རྣམས་པ་གཉིས་ཡོད། དཔེར་ན།

རྒྱང་གྲངས། a car my car the car

མང་གྲངས། cars two cars the cars some cars many cars སྟགས་ལྟ་བུ་ལོ།

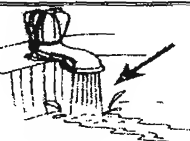
- I've got a car.
- There aren't many cars in the car park.
- New cars are very expensive.

ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཞིག་གི་ནང་དུ་རྒྱང་གྲངས་ཤིག་ཡོད་ཅེ། རྒྱང་གྲངས་དེའི་སྡེ་ན་དུ་ངེས་པར་དུ་a/an གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་ཅུང་རེ་བེད་སྤྱད་ཐེད་དགོས། (ཐེ་ཚན་ལ་ལ་
རྟོགས་)

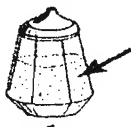
We can't get in without a key. (without key ཞེས་འཕྲིམ་ཅུང་)

༢ བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

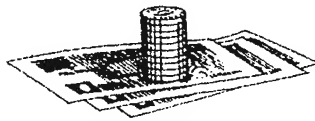
water air rice salt plastic money music tennis



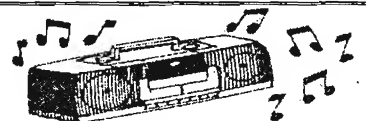
water



salt



money



music

ང་ཚོས་བཟང་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་གི་སྡེ་ན་དུ་one/two/three སྟགས་བེད་སྤྱད་ཐེད་མི་ཅུང་། དཔེར་ན། One water two water
money the money my money some money much money etc.

- I've got some money.
- There isn't much money in the box.
- Money isn't everything.

ང་ཚོས་a / an གཉིས་ནི་བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་གི་སྡེ་ན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་ཐེད་མི་ཅུང་། དཔེར་ན། a money a music

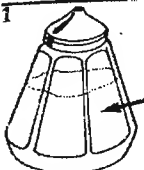
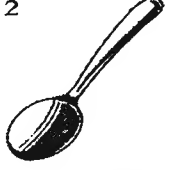



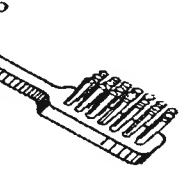

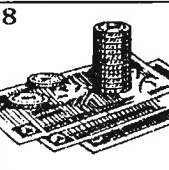
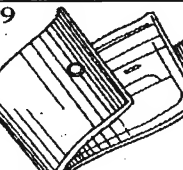
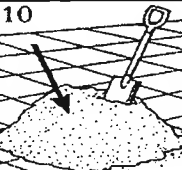
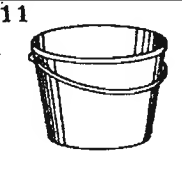
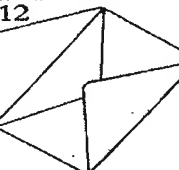
ཡིན་ནའང་། ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཚོགས་ཀྱི། a piece of ... / a glass of ... + བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་

a glass of water a can of oil a bar of chocolate
a piece of cheese a bottle of milk a piece of music
a bowl of rice a cup of coffee a game of tennis



གསལ་སྒྲིག་

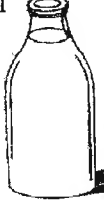

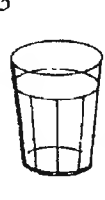


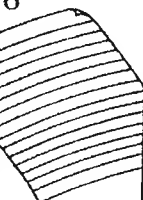

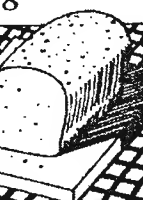

66.1 གསལ་སྒྲིག་མིང་ཆོག་གི་ཁྱོད་ཀྱི་བཟང་ཐུབ་པ་དང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཡོད་པས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་དགོས་པ་ཚོར་གཞིགས་ནས་a / an གཉིས་བཀོལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཆོག་ལྟམས་རང་རང་གི་རིམ་འོག་ཏུ་འབྲི་དགོས།

Bucket	envelope	milk	salt	spoon	toothpaste
egg	jug	money	sand	toothbrush	wallet
1 	2 	3 	4 	5 	6 
It's <u>salt</u> .	It's <u>a spoon</u> .	It's	It's	It's	It's
7 	8 	9 	10 	11 	12 
It's	It's	It's	It's	It's	It's

66.2 གསལ་སྒྲིག་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ལས་ཁ་སྐས་འབྲིག་མོད། འོན་ཀྱང་ཁ་སྐས་ལ་a / an གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་རུང་ཞིག་བཀོལ་དགོས་པས། ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་གསལ་སྒྲིག་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ལྟམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1) I haven't got watch. <u>a watch</u> | Jamaica is island..... |
| 2) Do you like cheese? <u>Ok</u> | I don't need key. |
| 3) Ann never wears hat..... | Everybody needs food..... |
| 4) Are you looking for job?..... | I've got good idea..... |
| 5) Mary eats apple every day..... | Can you drive car?..... |
| 6) Mary doesn't eat meat | Do you want cup of coffee?..... |
| 7) I'm going to party tonight. | Don't go out without umbrella. |

66.3 གསལ་སྒྲིག་རིམ་འོག་བཟུས་རྗེས་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་a... of... བཀོལ་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



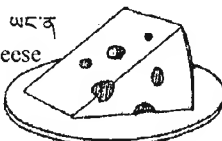
1 	2 	3 	4 	5 	6 	7 	8 	9 
--	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	---

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A: bar cup loaf glass bottle piece | B: bread milk tea chocolate |
| bowl jar piece | paper water money soup wood |
| 1) <u>A bottle of milk</u> | 2) |
| 4) | 6) |
| 7) | 9) |









ཐོ་ཆེན་རེ་བུ་ན་པ། A CAR/ SOME MONEY

༡ a / an དང some སྐད་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

<p>a / an ཡི་ཐོ་སྐད་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཤུལ་བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I need a new car. > Would you like an apple? <p>Some ཡི་ཐོ་སྐད་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཤུལ་བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I need some new shoes. > Would you like some apples? <p>གཞན་ཡང་Some ཡི་ཐོ་སྐད་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་རྒྱུ་ཤུལ་བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I need some money? > Would you like some cheese? > (ཡང་ན་ would you like a piece of cheese?) <p>a དང some གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > Linda bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume. > I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music. 	<p>An apple</p>  <p>Some apples</p>  <p>Some cheese ཡང་ན་ a piece of cheese</p> 
--	--

ཁ དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་མིང་ཆོག་མང་པོ་ཞིག་སྐབས་རེར་བཟང་ལུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་དང་སྐབས་རེར་བཟང་མི་ལུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན། དཔེར་ན།

 <p>a cake</p>	 <p>some cakes</p>	 <p>some cake or a piece of cake</p>
 <p>A chicken</p>	 <p>some chickens</p>	 <p>some chicken or a piece of chicken</p>

a paper དང་ some paper བསྟར་བ།

- > I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.
- > I want to make a list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (Not 'a paper' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

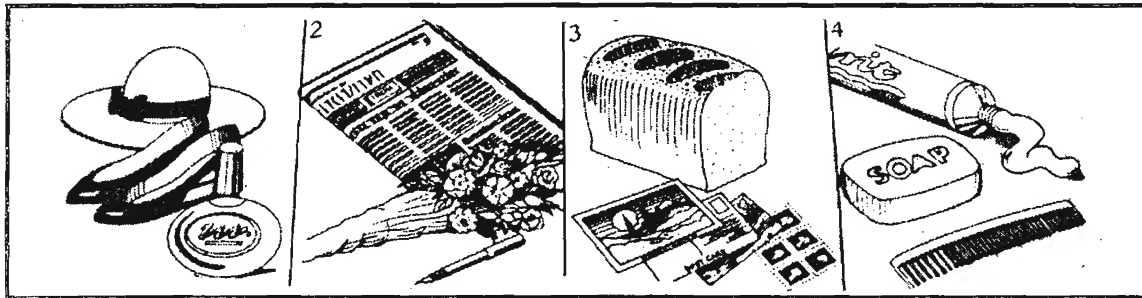
ག ག་ཤམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་འདི་དག་བཟང་མི་ལུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་པ་ཡིད་ལ་འཛིན་དགོས།

- | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|--------|---------|------|-------|------|-----------|------|
| information | advice | weather | news | bread | hair | furniture | work |
|-------------|--------|---------|------|-------|------|-----------|------|
- > I need some information about hotels in London. (informations ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
 - > It's nice weather today. (a nice weather ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
 - > Listen! I've just had some good news. (a good news ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
 - > I'm going to buy some bread. (a bread ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
 - > Sue has got very long hair. (hairs ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
 - > They've got some very nice furniture in their house. (furnitures ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
 - > 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard work.' (a hard work ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- ང་ཆོས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་ **a job** ཞེས་བཀོལ་ལ། **a work** ཞེས་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་ཅིང་མི་རུང་།
- > I've got a new job. ('a new work' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



གཞན་ཕུང་།

67.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྗེས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ཅི་ཞིག་ཉོས་པ་ནམས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོས།



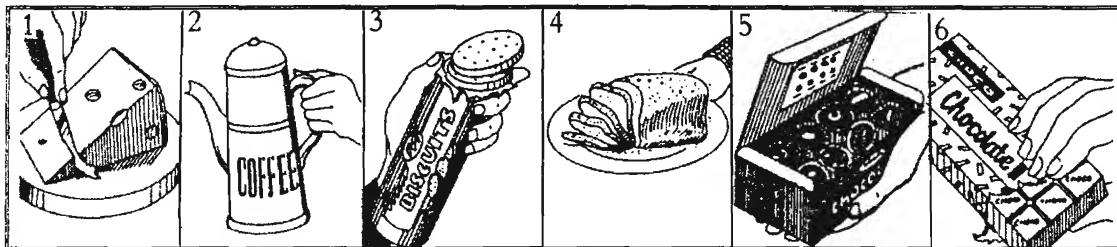
1. I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.

2. I bought.....

3.

4.

67.2 would you like a ..དང་ would you like some....གཉིས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1) Would you like some cheese?

4)

2) Would you like.....

5)

3) Would.....

6)

67.3 a / an / some སྐད་སྐད་བཀོལ་ནས་གཞན་ཕུང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆོག་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I read a book and listened to some music.

2. I needmoney. I want to buyfood.

3. We metinteresting people at the party.

4. I'm going to openwindow to getfresh air.

5. She didn't eat much for lunch - onlyapple andbread.

6. We live inbig house. There'snice garden withbeautiful trees.

7. I'm going to make a table. First I needwood.

8. Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give youadvice.

9. I want to write a letter. I needpaper andpen.

67.4 བཞུར་གྱི་ཆོད་པ།

1. I'm going to buy some new shoe / shoes. shoes is right

2. Martin has got brown eye / eyes.

3. Paula has got short black hair / hairs.

4. The tourist guide gave us some information / informations about the town.

5. We're going to buy some new chair / chairs.

6. We're going to buy some new furniture / furnitures.

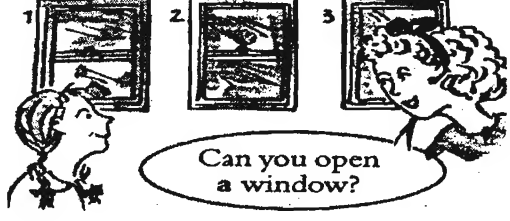
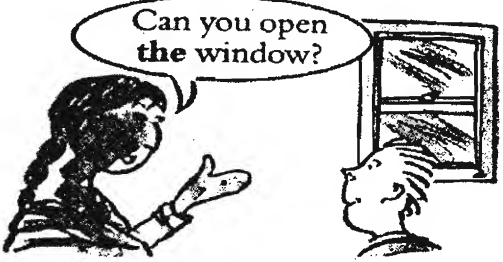
7. It's difficult to get a work / job at the moment.

8. We had lovely weather / a lovely weather when we were on holiday.



ཐེ་ཚན་རེ་བརྒྱད་པ། A /AN དང་THEསྐད་ཀྱི་

ག

 <p>There are three windows here.</p> <p>A window = window 1ཡང་ན་ 2ཡང་ན་3</p>	 <p>There is only one window here – the window.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I've got a car. (there are many cars and I've got one) > Can I ask a question?(there are many questions – can I ask one?) > Is there a hotel near here?(there are many hotels – is there one near here?) > Paris is an interesting city. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one) > Lisa is a student.(there are many students and Lisa is one) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I'm going to clean the car tomorrow. (=my car) > Can you repeat the question, please? (=the question that you asked) > We enjoyed our holiday. The hotel was very nice. (=our hotel) > Paris is the capital of France. (There is only one capital of France.) > Lisa is the youngest student in her class. (there is only one youngest student in her class)

aདང་theབརྒྱུད་པ།

- > I bought a jacket and a shirt. The jacket was cheap but the shirt was expensive.
(= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)

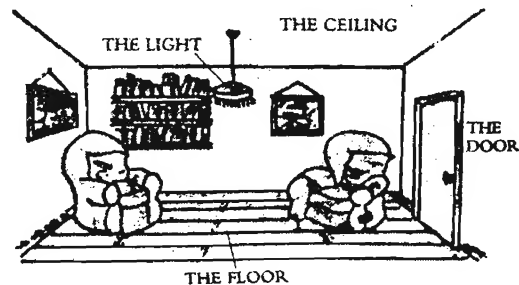
ཁ ང་ཚོས་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་སྟོན་འདོད་པའི་དངོས་པོ་དང་ཅ་ལག་སྐད་ཀྱི་གསལ་བོ་ཡིན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་དེའི་སྟོན་ཏུ་ the བེད་སྟོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

The door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (of a room)

The roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (of a house)

The center / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (of a town)

- > Where's Tom? 'In the kitchen.' (ང་ཁང་ནི་ཁང་བའི་ནང་ཏུ་ཡོད་པ་གསལ་བོ་ཡིན།)
- > Turn off the light and close the door. (ཁང་བ་དེའི་ནང་གི་སྟོན་གཞིམ་པ་གསལ་བོ་ཞུ།)
- > Do you live far from the center? (ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་རྒྱ་བ་དེ་སྟོན་པ་ལྟར།)
- > I'd like to speak to the manager, please. (ཚང་ཁང་དེའི་ཆེས་གཞིར་བ་གསལ་བོ་ལ་བརྒྱུད་པའོ།)





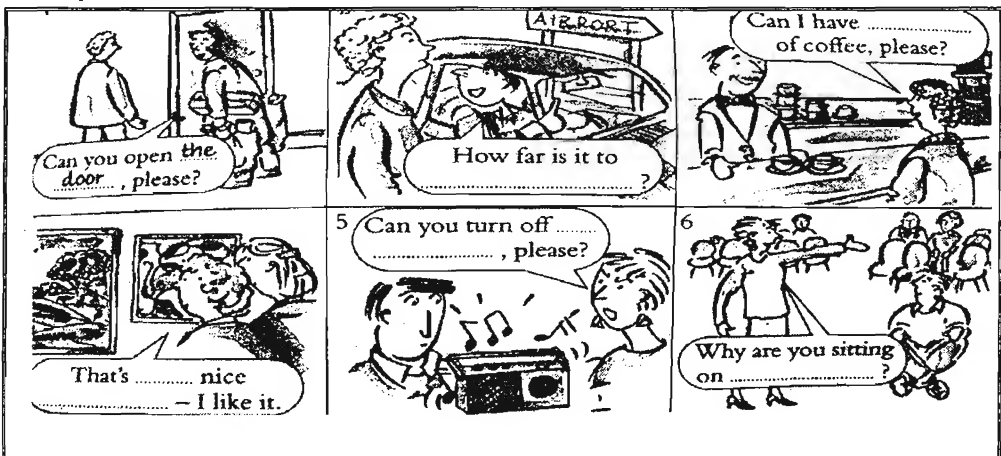
གསལ་སྤྱད།

68.1 a /an / the སློབ་གསལ་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་ཚུལ་སྤང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We enjoyed our holiday. The hotel was very nice.
2. 'Can I ask a question?' 'Of course, what do you want to ask?'
3. You look very tired. You needholiday.
4. 'Where's Tom?' 'He's inbathroom.'
5. Jane isinteresting person. You must meet her.
6. A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get tocity center?
B: Yes, go straight on and then takenext turning left.
7. A: Shall we go out formeal this evening?
B: Yes, that'sgood idea.
8. It'snice morning. Let's go forwalk.
9. Amanda isstudent. When she finishes her studies, she wants to bejournalist. She lives with two friends inflat near..... college where she is studying.flat is small but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have got two children,boy andgirl.boy is seven years old andgirl is three. Peter works infactory. Mary hasn't gotjob at the moment.

68.2 a /the གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སྟུགས་གསལ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

airport cup door floor picture radio



68.3 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་དུ་a /an / the སློབ་གསལ་བཀོལ་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Don't forget to turn of light when you go out. Turn off the light.
2. Enjoy your holiday and don't forget to send me postcard.
3. What is name of this village?
4. Canada is very big country.
5. What is largest city in Canada?
6. I like this room but I don't like color of carpet.
7. 'Are you OK?' ' No, I've got headache.'
8. We live in old house near station.
9. What is name of director of film we saw last night?



ཞི་ཚེན་རི་དགུ་བ། THE

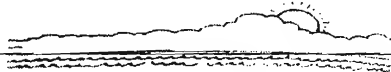

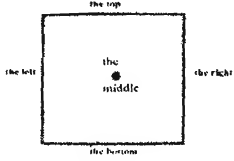


ག ང་ཚོས་the བོ་རི་འདྲི་མཉམ་པོ་དང་གང་ཟག་སྐད་ཀྱི་གསལ་བོ་ཡིན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- What is the name of this street? (སྐད་ཅི་དེར་མིང་ཞིག་ཡོད་པ་གསལ་བོ་ཡིན།)
- Who is the best player in your team? (དེར་ཅེད་མེ་ཅེ་མཁན་གཅིག་ཡོད་པ་གསལ་བོ་ཡིན།)
- Can you tell me the time, please?
- My office is on the first floor.
- ◆ ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།
- Do you live near the city center? ('near city center' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank? ('Where is nearest. ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



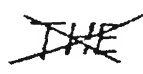
ཁ the same... ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- We live in the same street. ('in same street' ཉམ་པ་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're the same.' ('they're same' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ག ང་ཚོས་ the བོ་གསལ་གསལ་ལྟར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཚུགས།

<p>The + ཉི་མ། ལྗང་ལ། འཇིག་རྟེན། ན་མ་མཁལ། མཚོ་དང་ཞིང་གི་སྒང་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཕྱོད་ཏུ་བཀོལ།</p> <p>➤ The sky is blue and the sun is shining.</p> <p>➤ Do you live in a town or in the country?</p>	
<p>The + ཉེན་རྟོག་པ། མེ་གསོད་ཏུ་ཁག་དང་དམག་མི་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཕྱོད་ཏུ་བཀོལ།</p> <p>➤ My brother is a soldier. He's in the army.</p>	
<p>The + ཅེ་མོ། མཐའ་ལ། དཀྱིལ་དང་གཡོན་ཕྱག་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཕྱོད་ཏུ་བཀོལ།</p> <p>➤ Write your name at the top of the page.</p> <p>➤ My house is at the end of this street.</p> <p>➤ The table is in the middle of the room.</p> <p>➤ Do you drive on the right or on the left in your country?</p>	
<p>The + རྩ་ཆས་ཀྱི་ཕྱོད་ཏུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད།</p> <p>➤ Paula is learning to play the piano.</p>	
<p>The + སྒྲ་སྤྱད་འཕུལ་ཆས།</p> <p>➤ I listen to the radio a lot.</p>	

ང ང་ཚོས་the བོ་གསལ་གྱི་ཚིག་འདི་དག་དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་།

<p>བརྟན་འཕྲིན་འཕུལ་ཆས།</p> <p>I watch television a lot. What's on television tonight?</p> <p>ཡིན་ནའང། Can you turn off the television (=the TV set)</p>	
<p>ཞོགས་པ། རྩལ་ཇ་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཕྱོད་ཏུ་བཀོལ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་།</p> <p>What did you have for breakfast? (the breakfast ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</p> <p>Dinner is ready!</p>	
<p>The + Next / last སྐད་ཀྱི་ཕྱོད་ཏུ་གཟུང་འཛིན། ལྗང་ལ། ལྟ་ ཏུ་སྐད་ཀྱི་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཕྱོད་ཏུ་བཀོལ་མི་རུང་།</p> <p>I'm not working next week. (the next week ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</p> <p>Did you have a holiday last summer? (the last summer ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</p>	



གཤམ་སྒྱུར་

69.1 the བེད་སྤྱད་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། གལ་ཏེ་འཕྲིག་ཚེ་མཛུགས་ཏུ་ok ཞེས་ཟིན།

1. What is name of this street? **the name.**
2. What's on television tonight? **Ok**
3. Our apartment is on second floor.
4. Would you like to go to moon?
5. Which is best hotel in this town?
6. What time is lunch?
7. How far is it to city centre?
8. We're going away at end of May.
9. What are you doing next weekend?
10. I didn't like her first time I met her.
11. I'm going out after dinner.
12. What's biggest city in world?
13. My sister got married last month.
14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right.
15. We live in country about five miles from nearest village.

69.2 the same ཡི་ཇེས་སྤྱ་age/colour/problem/street/time སྟོན་པ་བཞེད་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

དགོས།

1. I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in **the same street.**
2. I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at
3. Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are
4. My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are
5. I've got no money and you've got no money. We've got

69.3 རི་མོར་བརྟམས་ཇེས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། (དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆག)



1. **The sun** is shining.
2. She's playing
3. They're having
4. He's listening to
5. They're watching
6. They're swimming in •••••

69.4 Capital/dinner/police/lunch/middle/name/sky/television སྟོན་པ་བཞེད་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

བཟོ་དགོས། (དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆག)

1. We had **dinner** at a restaurant last night.
2. We stayed at a very nice hotel but I don't remember
3. is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4. Did you see the film on last night?
5. Somebody was trying to break into the shop so I called
6. Tokyo is of Japan.
7. 'What did you have for?' 'A salad.'
8. I woke up in of the night.



ཐེ་ཚན་བརྟན་ཏུ་བ། GO TO WORK GO HOME GO TO THE CINEMA སྤགས།

༡



She's at work.



They're going to school.



He's in bed.

ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

(go) to ལས་ཀྱི།

- Goodbye! I'm going to work now. ('to the work' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) to སློབ་གྲྭ།

- What did you learn at school today? ('at the school' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Some children don't like school.

(go) to སློབ་ཆེན།

- Helen wants to go to university when she leaves school.
- What did you study at college?

(go) to སྐྱུན་ཁང་།

- Jack was in an accident. He had to go to hospital.

(go) to བཅོན་ཁང་།

- Why is he in prison? What did he do?

(go) to ཆོས་ཁང་།

- David usually goes to church on Sundays.

(go) to ཉལ་ཁྱི།

- I'm tired. I'm going to bed. ('to the bed' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- 'Where's Jill?' 'She's in bed.'

(go) ཡུལ།

- I'm tired, I'm going home. ('to home' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Are you going out tonight or are you staying at home?

THE

ཁ ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

(go to) the + སྐྱོག་བརྟན། སྐྱོག་གར། དངུལ་ཁང་། སྐྱོག་ཁང་།

- I never go to the theatre but I often go to the cinema.
- Are you going to the bank? 'No, the post office.'

(go to) the + སྐྱུན་ལ། སྤ་བཅོས་སྐྱུན་ལ།

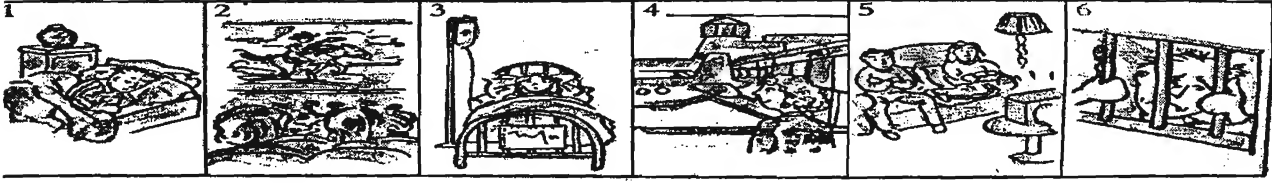
- You're not well. Why don't you go to the doctor?
- I'm going to the dentist tomorrow.

གནན་ཡང་ང་ཚོས་རྒྱངས་འཁོར་འབབ་ཚུགས། གནན་གྱི་ཐང་དང་གྲོང་ཁྱེར་གྱི་སྤུ་བ་བཅས་ཀྱི་སྐྱུན་ཏུ་བཞག་ལ།

THE



གཤམ་ཐུང་།



70.1 རི་མོ་འཛིན་པའི་མི་དེ་དག་གི་དུ་ཡོད་པ་གསལ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆའི་ཁག་ཏུ་འབྲི་དགོས། དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་སྟུང་ཅེད་
དགོས།

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. He's in <u>bed</u> . | 3 She's in..... | 5 they're at |
| 2. They're at..... | 4 she's at..... | 6 He's in |

70.2 Bank/bed/church/home/post office/school/station སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་

དགོས། (དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་སྟུང་ཅེས་)

- I need some money. I must go to the bank.
- David usually goes to church on Sundays.
- In Britain, children go to from the age of five.
- There were a lot of people at waiting for the train
- I phoned you last night but you weren't at
- I'm going to now. Goodnight!
- I'm going to to get some stamps.

70.3 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། (དགོས་དབང་གིས་ང་ཆོས་the བེད་སྟུང་བྱས་ཆོག)

- If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport.
- If you want to see a film, you go to
- If you are tired and you want to sleep, you
- If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you
- If you have a problem with your teeth, you
- If you want to study after you leave school, you
- If you are injured in an accident, you

70.4 དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བེད་སྟུང་བྱས་ཏེ་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། གལ་ཏེ་

ཆོག་གྲུབ་དེ་ཡང་དག་པ་ཡིན་ཆེ་མཁུག་ཏུ་ok བཀོལ་དགོས།

- We went to cinema last night. To the cinema.
- I finish work at 5 o' clock every day. Ok
- Mary wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.
- I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.
- Why is Angela always late for work?
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're at school.'
- We've got no money in bank.
- When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
- What time do you usually get home from work?
- Do you live far from city centre?
- 'Where shall we meet?' 'At station.'
- Jim is ill. He's in hospital.
- Margaret takes her children to school every day.
- Would you like to go to university?
- Would you like to go to theatre this evening?



ཐེ་ཚན་དོན་གཅིག་པ།

I LIKE MUSIC

I HATE EXAMS

༧



ང་ཚོས་theནི་སྒྱུར་བཏང་གི་བསམ་སྒྲོ་བཟོད་སྐབས་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I like music, especially classical music. (' the music...the classical music ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- We don't eat meat very often. (' the meat' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Life is not possible without water. ('The life...the water' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I hate exams. ('the exams' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Do you know a shop that sells foreign newspapers?
- I'm not very good at writing letters.

THE

གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཚོས་theནི་ཅེད་མོ་དང་ལུས་ཅལ་རིགས་ཀྱི་སྒྲོ་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད།

- My favorite sports are tennis and skiing. ('the tennis... the skiing' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

གཞན་ད་རུང་ང་ཚོས་theནི་སྐད་ཡིག་གམ་ཡང་ན་སྒྲོ་བ་ལྷན་སྒྲོ་བ་ཚན་ཁག་གི་སྒྲོ་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- Do you think English is difficult? (' the English ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

ཁ གྲུ་སྐྱེ་ དང་the flowers གཉིས་བསྐྱར་བ།

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Flowers are beautiful.
(མེ་རྩ་གཞུ་ལ་གྲོ།) ➤ I don't like cold weather.
(གནམ་གཤིས་གང་མ་སྐྱེ་ལ་གྲོ།) ➤ Are you interesting in history?
(མི་རྒྱལ་སྐྱེ་ལ་གྲོ།) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ This is a lovely garden.
The flowers are beautiful.
(ལྗམ་ར་དེར་སྐྱེ་ལོད་པའི་མེ་རྩ་གཞུ་ལ་མེ་གྲོ།) ➤ The weather isn't very good today.
(དེ་རིང་གི་གནམ་གཤིས་ལས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་གྱི་གནམ་གཤིས་ལ་མེ་གྲོ།) ➤ Are you interested in the history of your country? |
|--|--|





གཤམ་སྒྱུད་

71.1 གཤམ་གྱི་མིང་འདི་དག་གི་སྟེང་ཁྱེད་ལ་བསམ་ཚུལ་ཅི་འདྲ་ཞིག་ཡིད།

Dogs	big cities	motor racing	TV quiz shows	exams	parties
Museums	tea	basketball	computer games	loud music	hard work

I like.... / I don't like// I love/ I hate/ I don't mind སྒྲིག་སྒྱུ་གྱི་མགོ་ལ་ནས་ཚིག་གྱུ་བ་བཟོས།

1. I hate exams.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.

71.2 གཤམ་གྱི་དངོས་པོ་འདི་དག་ལ་ཁྱེད་རང་དགའ་སྤངས་ཡོད་དམ། རེ་ཕྱི་མཉམ་ནས་གི་ཚིག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཚིག་གྱུ་བ་བཟོ་དགོས།

I'm (very) interested in ...	I know a lot about...	I don't know much about...
I'm not interested in...	I know a little about...	I don't know anything about...

1. (history) I'm very interested in history.
2. (politics) I
3. (sport)
4. (art)
5. (astronomy)
6. (economics)

71.3 བརྗེས་ཤིག་ཅོད་པ།

1. My favorite sport is tennis / the tennis. Tennis is right.
2. I like this hotel. Rooms / the rooms are very nice. The rooms is right.
3. Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4. Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5. I went shopping this morning. Shops / the shops were very busy.
6. 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
7. I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8. 'Do you do any sport?' 'Yes, I play football / the football.'
9. These days lot of people use computers / the computers.
10. We went for a swim in the river. Water / the water was very cold.
11. I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12. Excuse me; can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13. I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14. Vegetables / the vegetables are good for you.
15. 'Where are children / the children?' they're in the garden.'
16. I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17. I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It's my hobby.
18. I must show you photographs / the photographs that I took when I was on holiday.
19. 'English/ the English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20. Money / the money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.



ཐེ་ཆོན་དོན་གཉིས་པ། THE ...ས་ཆའི་མིང་།

༡

ནམ་ཐུན་ང་ཆོས་theནི་ས་ཆའི་མིང་གི་ཐུན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- France is a very large country. (' the France' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

ཡིན་ནའང་ང་ཆོས་theནི་republic/states/kingdomསྐད་མིང་གི་གྲུབ་ཆ་ཡིན་པའི་མིང་གི་ཐུན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

The Republic of Ireland (ཡང་ན་ the Irish Republic)

The united States of America (the USA) the United Kingdom (the UK)

༢

ང་ཆོས་theནི་ལྷུ་ལའང་དང་གླིང་ལྷན། རི་བོ་སྐོག་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་མང་གུང་ས་ཐུན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

The Netherlands the Canary Islands the Philippines the Andes

༣

ང་ཆོས་theནི་ལྷུ་མཆོ། མཆོ། ལྷག་ས་ཆུ་དང་མིས་བཟོས་གཙང་བོ་སྐོག་སྤྱི་ཐུན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད།

The Atlantic (Ocean) the Mediterranean (Sea) the Amazon

The (river) Nile the Suez Canal the Black Sea

༤

ཐུར་ང་ཆོས་theནི་སྤང་ལམ་དང་ཐང་ཆེན་སྐོག་སྤྱི་ཐུན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- Where is High field Road, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

ང་ཆོས་theནི་ས་མིང་ངས་མི་ཡི་མིང་། གནམ་གྱི་ཐང་། འབབ་ཆུ་གསལ། སྤྱི་བ་ལྷ་ཆེན་མོ། མཁར་ཆོང་སྐོག་སྤྱི་ཐུན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་མི་བྱེད།

Kennedy Airport Victoria Station Cambridge University

Westminster Abbey Edinburgh Castle London Zoo

ནམ་ཐུན་ང་ཆོས་theནི་མཁོན་ཁང་དང་བཟའ་ཁང་། ཆང་ཁང་། རྒྱུ་བརྟན་ཁང་། རྒྱུ་གར་ཁང་། བཤམས་ལྷན་ཁང་སྐོག་སྤྱི་ཐུན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

the Hilton (hotel) the star of India (restaurant)
the Science Museum the Odeon (Cinema)
the National Theatre the Tate Gallery (art gallery)

༥

ང་ཆོས་theནི་མིང་དང་མཉམ་དུ་of ཡོད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

the Republic of Ireland the Bank of England

the Great Wall of China the Tower of London

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ལྟེ། the north / the south / the east / the west / the middle (of...)

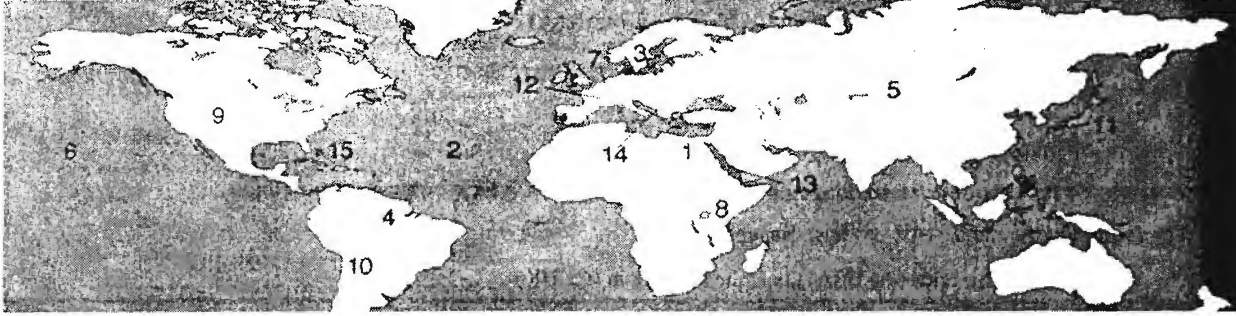
I've been to the north of Italy but not to the south.



གསལ་སྒྲུབ་།

72.1 གསལ་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། (དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་the བོད་སྐད་ཀྱིས་)

Alps/ Amazon/Andes/Asia/Atlantic/Bahamas/Cairo/Kenya/Malta/Pacific/Red Sea/Rhine/Sweden/Tokyo/United states



1. **Cairo** is the capital of Egypt.
2. **The Atlantic** is between Africa and America.
3. is a country in northern Europe.
4. is a river in South America.
5. is the largest continent in the world.
6. is the largest ocean.
7. is a river in Europe.
8. is a country in east Africa.
9. is between Canada and Mexico.
10. are mountains in South America.
11. is the capital of Japan.
12. are mountains in central Europe.
13. is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14. is an island in the Mediterranean.
15. are a group of islands near Florida.

72.2 གསལ་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ལ་འགྲིག་མིན་གཞིས་ཀྱི་ཡོད། གལ་ཏེ་མི་འགྲིག་ཆེ་the བོད་སྐད་ཀྱིས་ཡང་དག་

པར་བཟོ་དགོས། འགྲིག་ཆེ་ཟེས་སུ་ok ཞེས་འབྲི་དགོས།

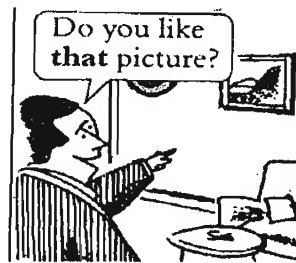
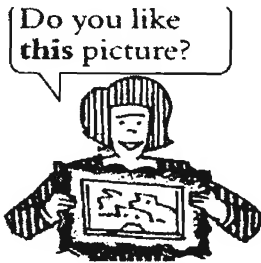
1. Kevin lives in Newton Street. **Ok.**
2. We want to see a play at national theatre. **at the national theatre.**
3. Have you ever been to China?
4. Have you ever been to Philippines?
5. Have you ever been to south of France?
6. Can you tell me where Regal cinema is?
7. Can you tell me where Merion Street is?
8. Can you tell me where Museum of Modern Art is?
9. Europe is bigger than Australia
10. Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.
11. Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile?
12. Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London?
13. 'Where did you stay?' 'At Park Hotel in Hudson road.'
14. How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (in London)?
15. Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
17. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.
18. I hope to go to United States next year.
19. Mary comes from a small town in west of Ireland.
20. Alan studied physics at Manchester University.



ཐེ་ཚན་དོན་གསུམ་པ།

THIS / THAT/ THESE /THOSE

ག



this
these



this picture
(= this picture here)
these flowers
(=these flowers here)

that
those



that picture
(=that picture there)
those people
(=those people there)

ཁ ང་ཚོས་ this / that /these /those སོགས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སྟེ་མིང་ཚིག་བཀོལ་ཆོག་ལ་མ་བཀོལ་གྱང་ཆོག དཔེར་ན།

- > This hotel is expensive but it's very nice.
 - > Who's that girl?' 'I bought them last week.
 - > Those apples look nice. Can I have one?
 - > This is a nice hotel but it's very expensive.
 - > 'Excuse me, is this your bag?' 'Oh yes, thank you.'
 - > Who's that? (=Who is that person?)
 - > Which shoes do you like most? These or those?
- With a noun
- without a noun

ག ང་ཚོས་ that བྱི་བྱང་ཟིན་པའི་དོན་ལ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- > I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' 'That's all right.'
- > That was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

གཞན་ཡང་ that བྱི་ང་ཚོས་མི་ཞིག་གི་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད་པ་དེ་ལྟར་འདྲིན་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད།

- > 'You're a teacher, aren't you?' 'Yes, that's right.'
- > 'Martin has got a new job.' 'Has he? I didn't know that.'
- > 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, that's nice.'

ང ང་ཚོས་ this is... ནང་ is that...? གཉིས་ཁ་པར་ཁྱུག་སྐབས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ།

- > Hello, this is David. (Thisནི་བཤད་མཁན་ལ་ནི)
- > Is that Sarah? (That ནི་ཉན་མཁན་ལ་ནི)

གཞན་ད་དུང་ང་ཚོས་ this is ...ནི་མི་སོགས་རྩིས་བྱེད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- > A: Brian, this is Chris.
- > B: Hello, Chris - pleased to meet you.
- > C: Hello.

DAVID

Hello, Sarah.
This is David.



Brian, this is Chris.



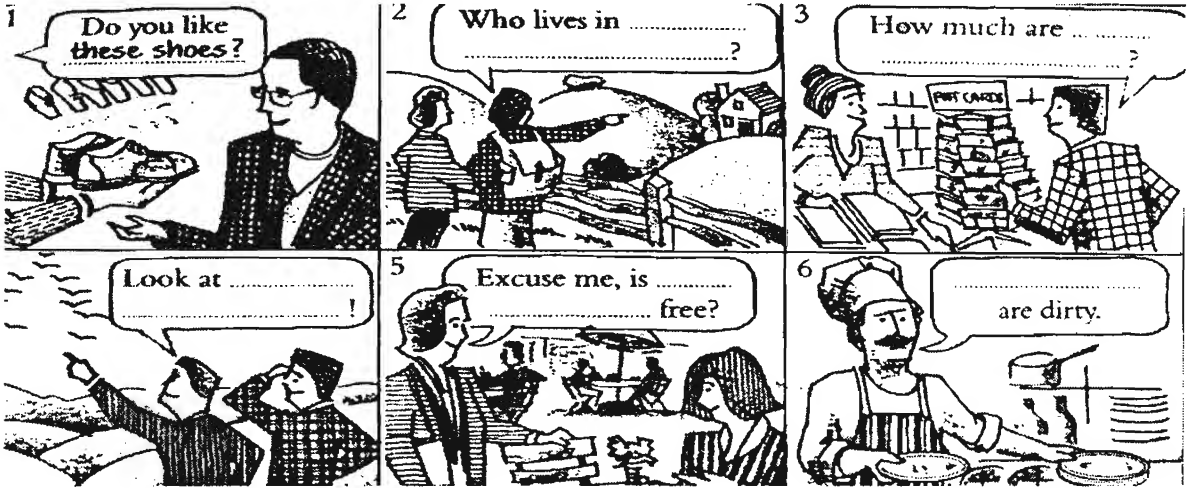
LINDA BRINA CHRIS



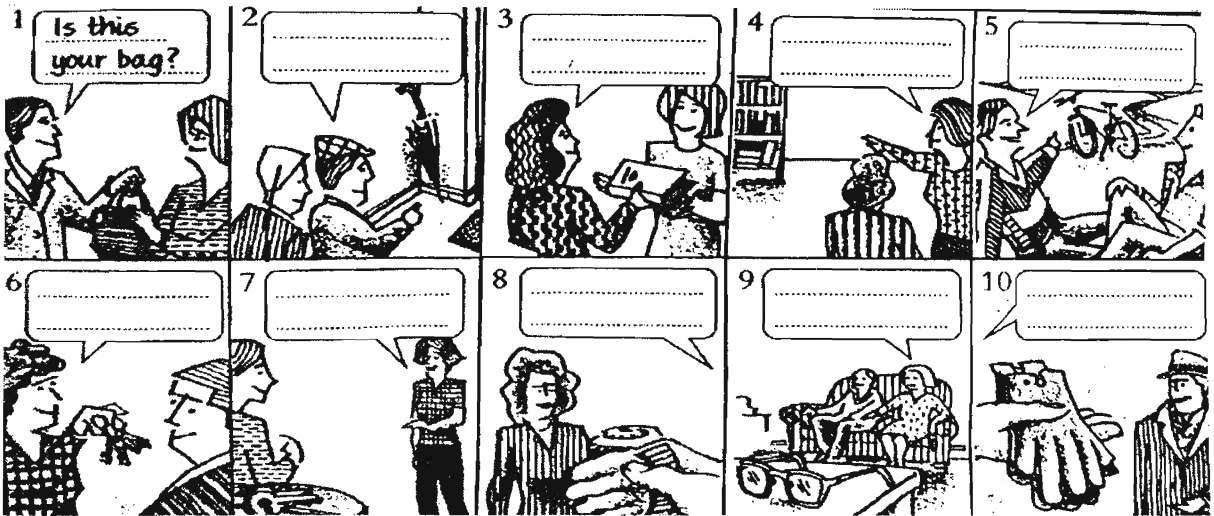
གསལ་བྱུང་།

73.1 Birds/house/plates/postcards/seat/shoes རྩམས་ཀྱི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་པོ་ལྟ་བུ་གསལ་བྱུང་།

རྩམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



73.2 is this / that your...? ཡང་ན་ are these/ those your...? རྩམས་བཞོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།



73.3 this is དང་that's ཡང་ན་ that རྩམས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བྱུང་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྩམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

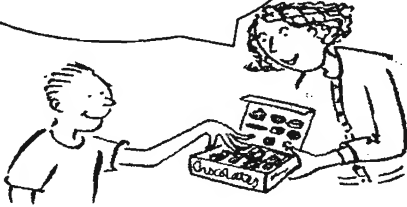
- A: I'm sorry I'm late. B: That's all right.
- A: I can't come to the party tomorrow. B: oh,..... a pity. Why not?
- (ཁ་པར་ནང་དུ།) Sue: Hello, Ann. Sue. Ann: Oh, hello, Sue .How are you?
- A: You're lazy. B:not true!
- A: Jill plays the piano very well. B: Really? I didn't know
- Mark meets Paul's sister (Ann): Paul: Mark,.....my sister, Ann. Mark: Hello, Ann.
- A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday. B:OK, forget it!
- A: You're a friend of John's, aren't you? B: Yes,.....right.



ཞི་ཚན་དོན་བཞི་བ། ONE / ONES

༡ one བོ་ a/an གཉིས་དང་དོན་འདྲའོ།

These
Chocolates are nice.
Would you like one?



Would you like one? བོ་ Would you like a chocolate? དང་དོན་འདྲའོ།

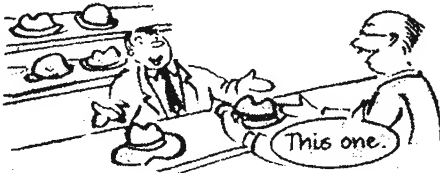
➤ I need a pen. Have you got one? (One = a pen)

➤ A: Is there a bank near here?

B: Yes, there's one at the end of this street. (One = a bank)

༢ one དང་ ones གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་ཚུལ།

one (ཁྱད་གངས་)



Which one? = Which hat?

One ཡི་ཇེས་སུ་མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཁྱད་གངས་ཡིན་དགོས། (one girl/ boy)

This one / that one

➤ Which car is yours? This one or that one?

The one...

➤ A: Which hotel did you stay at?

B: The one opposite the station

The ... one

➤ I don't like the black coat but I like the brown one.

➤ Don't buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a/an ... one

➤ This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one.

➤ That biscuit was nice. I'm going to have another one.

ones (མཐང་གངས་)



Which ones? = Which flowers?

Ones ཡི་ཇེས་སུ་མིང་ཚིག་གི་མཐང་གངས་ཡིན་དགོས། (ones cars/ flowers)

these / those (ནི་ནམ་ཚུན་ones དང་མཉམ་ཅུ་བཞོལ་ཚུ་མི་བྱེད་)

➤ Which flowers do you want? These or those?

The ones...

➤ A: Which keys are yours?

B: The ones on the table.

The ... ones

➤ I don't like the red shoes but I like the green ones.

➤ Don't buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

Some... ones

➤ These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?

➤ My shoes are very old. I'm going to buy some new ones.



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

74.1 རེ་འུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དང་མཉམ་དུ one བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས། a/an བཀོལ་མི་ཐུང་།

B doesn't need a car
there's a chemist in Mill Road
B hasn't got a pen

B has just had a cup of coffee
B is going to buy a bicycle
B hasn't got an umbrella

1. A: Can you lend me a pen? B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one.
2. A: Would you like to have a car? B: No, I don't.....
3. A: Have you got a bicycle? B: No, but
4. A: Can you lend me an umbrella? B: I'm sorry but
5. A: Would you like a cup of coffee? B: No, thank you.
6. A: Is there a chemist near here? B: Yes,

74.2 Better/big/clean/different/new/old སྟོན་སྟེ་a/an ... one སྟོན་སྟེ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཞེད་དགོས།

1. This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
2. I'm going to sell my car and buy
3. That's not a very good photograph but this is
4. I want today's newspaper. This is
5. This box is too small, I need
6. Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to

74.3 one/ones གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཁ་བཞུག་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཞེད་དགོས།

The coat black
The girl tall with long hair
The hotel is opposite the station
The house has got a red door
The flowers are yellow



I took the photographs on the beach last week
The shoes are green
The pictures are on the wall
The books are on the top shelf
The man has got a moustache and glasses

1. A: We stayed at a hotel
B: Which one?
A: The one opposite the station.
2. A: Those shoes are nice.
B:
A:
3. A: That's a nice house.
B:
A:with.....?
4. A: I like that coat.
B:?
A:
5. A: I like those pictures.
B:?
A:
6. A: Are those your books?
B:?
A:
7. A: Do you know that girl?
B:?
A:
8. A: Those flowers are beautiful.
B:?
A:
9. A: Who's that man?
B:?
A:
10. A: Have you seen my photographs?
B:?
A:



ཐེ་ཚན་དོན་ལྡན། SOME དང ANY

ག ང་ཚོས་someའི་དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་ཅིང་ལ། anyའི་དགག་མིན་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་ཅིང་།

Some	Any
 <p>I've got some money.</p>	 <p>I haven't got any money.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I'm going to buy some clothes > There's some ice in the fridge > We did some exercises. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I'm not going to buy any clothes. > There isn't any orange juice in the fridge. > We didn't do any exercises.

ཁ anyདང་someགཉིས་འདྲི་ཚིག་ནང་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཚིག་ལ། ཚིག་གྲུབ་མང་ཆེས་བའི་ནང་ཏུ་ང་ཚོས་anyབེད་

སྤྱད་ཅིང་། དཔེར་ན།

- > Is there any ice in the fridge?
- > Has he got any friends?
- > Why didn't you buy any food?

ནམ་རྒྱུན་someའི་ང་ཚོས་དངོས་པོ་སྤྲོད་མི་གཞན་ལ་མཁོ་སྤྱད་ཅིང་སྐབས་

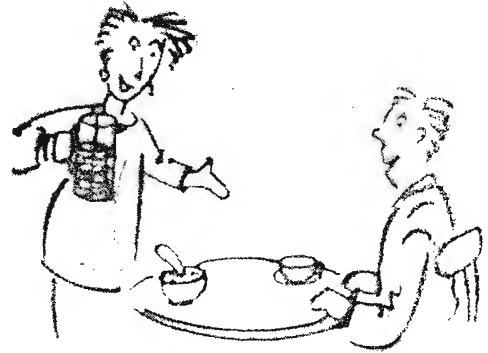
སྤྱད་ཅིང་། དཔེར་ན།(would you like...?)

- > A: Would you like some coffee?
- B: Yes, please.



ཡང་ན་ང་ཚོས་མི་ཞིག་ལ་དངོས་པོ་སྤྲོད་མི་སྐབས་སྤྱད་ཅིང་། དཔེར་ན།(can I have...?):

- > A: Can I have some soup, please?
- B: Yes. Help yourself.
- > A: Can you lend me some money?
- B: Sure. How much do you need?



Someདང་anyགཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སྤྲོད་མིང་ཚིག་མེད་པར་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བཞག་པ།

དཔེར་ན།

- > I didn't take any photographs but Ann took some. (=Some photographs)
- > You can have some coffee but I don't want any. (=Any coffee)
- > I've just made some coffee. Would you like some? (=Some coffee)
- > 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got any.' (= Any luggage)
- > 'Are there any biscuits?' 'Yes, there are some in the kitchen.' (= Some biscuits)

something/ somebody (or someone)	anything / anybody (or anyone)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > She said something. > I saw somebody (or someone) > Would you like something to eat? > Quick! Somebody's coming 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > She didn't say anything. > I didn't see anybody (or anyone) > Are you doing anything this evening? > Where's Ann? Has anybody seen her?



གཤམ་སྒྲིག་

75.1 some དང་ any གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I bought **some** cheese but I didn't buy **any** bread.
2. I'm going to the post office. I need stamps.
3. There aren't shops in this part of town.
4. George and Alice haven't got children.
5. Have you got brothers or sister?
6. There are beautiful flowers in the garden.
7. Do you know good hotels in London?
8. 'Would you like tea?' 'yes, please.'
9. When we were on holiday, we visited very interesting places.
10. Don't buy rice. We don't need
11. I went out to buy milk but they didn't have in the shop.
12. I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please?

75.2 some དང་ any གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་སྟོང་ཆ་སྟོང་དགོས།

air	cheese	help	letters	photographs
batteries	friends	languages	milk	shampoo

1. I want to wash my hair. Is there **any shampoo**?
2. This evening I'm going to write
3. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take
4. Do you speak foreign?
5. Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with of mine.
6. Can I have in my coffee, please?
7. The radio isn't working. There aren't in it.
8. It's hot in this office. I'm going out for fresh
9. 'Would you like?' 'No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.'
10. I can do this job alone. I don't need

75.3 some དང་ any གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

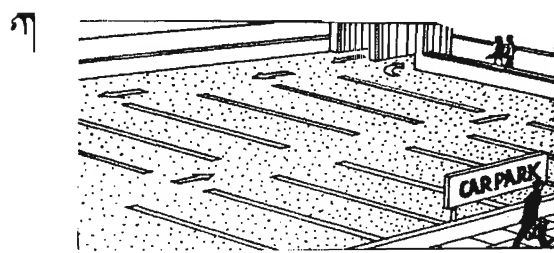
1. Ann didn't take any photographs but I **took some** (I / take)
2. 'Where's your luggage?' 'I **haven't got any**.' (I / not/ have)
3. 'Do you need any money?' 'No, thank you.' (I / have)
4. 'Can you lend me some money?' 'I'm sorry but' (I / not / have)
5. The tomatoes in the shop didn't look very good, so (I / not / buy)
6. There were some nice oranges in the shop, so (I / buy)

75.4 something/ somebody/ anything / anybody སྐད་གསལ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. She said **something** to me but I didn't understand it.
2. 'What's wrong?' 'There's in my eye.'
3. Do you know about politics?
4. I went to the shop but I didn't buy
5. has broken the window, I don't know who.
6. There isn't in the bag. It's empty.
7. I'm looking for my keys. Has seen them?
8. Would you like to drink?
9. I didn't eat because I wasn't hungry.
10. This is a secret. Please don't tell



མེ་ཆུན་དོན་བྱུག་པ། NOT + ANY NO NONE



ཆུང་ས་འཁོར་འཛོག་ས་སྟངས་པ་རེད།

There aren't any cars
There are no cars
How many cars are there in the car park?
None.

not (n't) + any

- There aren't any cars in the car park.
- Sally and Steve haven't got any children.
- You can have some coffee but I don't want any.

no ཡི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་བཀོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན། (no cars / no garden)

no ... གི་not + any ལས་ཡང་ན་not + a དང་དོན་འདྲའོ།

- There are no cars in the car park. (=There aren't any cars)
- We've got no coffee. (= We haven't got any coffee)
- It's a nice house but there's no garden. (There isn't a garden)

དམིགས་བསལ་གྱི་ང་ཆོས་no གི་have (got) དང་there is / are སྤྱི་མིང་སྤྱི་ཐོབ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

དགག་ཆོག་གི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་དང་དེའི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་གི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་དང་དེའི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་no ལྟར་བཞིན་དང་འདྲའོ།

- They haven't got any children. ཡང་ན། They've got no children. ('they haven't got no children' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་ཅུང་)
- There isn't any sugar in your coffee. ཡང་ན། There's no sugar in your coffee.

no དང་ none གཉིས་གྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

ང་ཆོས་no ཡི་ཇེས་སྤྱི་མིང་ཆོག་བཞིན་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- We've got no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

ང་ཆོས་none གི་ཁེར་རྒྱུ་དང་བཞིན་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- 'How much money have you got?' 'None.' (སྟར་མ་མེད་པའི་དོན་དུ་)
- 'Where there any problems?' 'No, none.' (དཀའ་ངལ་མེད་པའི་དོན་དུ་)

ག none དང་ no - one

None གི་གཅིག་གྲངས་མེད་པའི་དོན་དུ་

None གི་ང་ཆོས་how much? / How many? སྤྱི་མིང་ལ་ལན་འདེབས་སྐབས་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- How much money have you got? 'None.' (སྟར་མ་མེད་པའི་དོན་དུ་)
- How many people did you meet? 'None.' (མི་མེད་པའི་དོན་དུ་)

No - one གི་མི་གཅིག་གྲངས་མེད་པའི་དོན་དུ་ (ལྷོ་ཆུ་ 77 ལ་སྟེས་)

No - one གི་ང་ཆོས་who ཡི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་སྐབས་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Who did you meet? 'No - one.'



གཤམ་སྒྱུ་

76.1 no བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་བསྐྱར་དུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We haven't got any money. **We've got no money.**
2. There aren't any shops near here. There are
3. Carol hasn't got any free time.
4. There isn't a light in this room.

any བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་བསྐྱར་དུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

5. We've got no money. **We haven't got any money.**
6. There's no tea in the pot.
7. There are no buses today.
8. Tom has got no brothers or sisters.

76.2 no དང་ any གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. There's **no** sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married but he hasn't got.....children.
3. Sue doesn't speak.....foreign languages.
4. I'm afraid there's coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see Birds.'
6. 'Do you know where Jane is?' 'No, I've got Idea.'

no དང་ any ཡང་ན་ none སྐོམ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

7. There aren't Pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold but there was wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges but they didn't have In the shop.
10. Everything was correct. There were mistakes.
11. 'How much luggage have you got?' '.....'.
12. 'How much luggage have you got?' 'I haven't got'.

76.3 any དང་ no གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སྒྲུ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

Answer difference film friends furniture heating money
Photographs problems questions

1. Everything was ok. There were **no problems**.
2. They want to go on holiday but they've got
3. I'm not going to answer
4. He's always alone. He's got
5. There is between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6. There wasn't in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to phone you yesterday but there was
8. The house is cold because there isn't
9. I can't take there's in the camera.

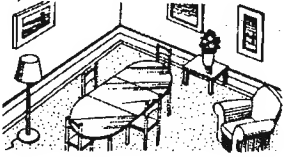
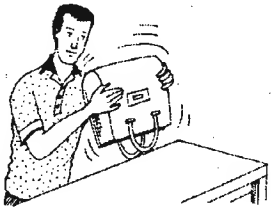
76.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ལ་སྟབས་བདེའི་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས། དགས་མཁོ་ཡང་ཆོ་ none བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཆོག

1. How many letters did you write yesterday? **Two.** ཡང་ན་ **a lot.** ཡང་ན་ **none.**
2. How many sisters have you got?
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday?
4. How many photographs have you taken today?
5. How many legs has a snake got?



མེ་ཆེན་དོན་བརྒྱན་པ། NOT + ANYBODY / ANYONE / ANYTHING / NOBODY / NO - ONE / NOTHING སྟགས།

ག

<p>Not + anybody / anyone Nobody / no - one (སྟགས་ནི་མི་ལ་ལེད་སྟུང་བྱེད)</p>  <p>➤ There isn't $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{anybody} \\ \text{Anyone} \end{array} \right\}$ in the room.</p> <p>➤ There is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nobody} \\ \text{no - one} \end{array} \right\}$ in the room</p> <p>➤ A: Who is in the room? B: Nobody. / No - one. Anybodyནི་anyoneདོན་འདྲའོ། nobody ནི་no -oneདོན་འདྲའོ། (anybody དང་anyone areགཉིས་དོན་འདྲའོ)</p>	<p>not + anything nothing (སྟགས་ནི་དངོས་པོར་ལེད་སྟུང་བྱེད)</p>  <p>➤ There isn't anything in the bag.</p> <p>➤ There is nothing in the bag.</p> <p>➤ A: What's in the bag? B: Nothing.</p>
--	---

ཁ

<p>not + anybody / anyone I don't know anybody (or anyone) here. Nobodyནི་not + anybody དང་འདྲ་ལ། no - one ནི་not + anyone དང་འདྲ་ལ། I'm lonely. I've got nobody to talk to. (ནི་I haven't got anybody དང་འདྲ་ལ།) The house is empty. There is no -one in it. (ནི་There isn't anyone in it.དང་འདྲ་ལ།)</p>	<p>not + anything I can't remember anything. nothingནི་not + anything དང་འདྲ་ལ། She said nothing. (ནི་She didn't say anything དང་འདྲ་ལ།) There's nothing to eat. (ནི་There isn't anything to eat.དང་འདྲ་ལ།)</p>
---	--

ག

<p>ང་ཆོས་nobody / no-one / nothingསྟགས་ནི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་བཞོལ་ཆོག་ལ། གཞན་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་སྐབས་སུ་དེ་ཆོ་ཁེར་རྒྱང་དུ་འང་བཞོལ་ཆོག་ལྟེ།</p> <p>➤ The house is empty. Nobody lives there. ('Anybody lives there' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང)</p> <p>➤ Who did you speak to?' 'No - one.'</p>	<p>➤ Nothing happened. ('anything happened' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང)</p> <p>➤ 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'</p>
---	---

ང་ ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།

དགག་ལྡན་ཆོག་གི་ཇེས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག་དང་དེའི་ཇེས་སུ་anybody / anyone / anything སྟགས་བཞོལ་དགོས།

དགག་མིན་ཆོག་གི་ཇེས་སུ་ལས་ཆོག་དང་དེའི་ཇེས་སུ་nobody / no - one / nothing སྟགས་བཞོལ་དགོས།

He doesn't know anything. ('He doesn't know nothing' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང)

Don't tell anybody. (t 'Don't tell nobody' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང)

There is nothing to do in this town. ('there isn't nothing' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང)



གཤམ་སྒྱུར།

77.1 **nobody/no- one/ nothing** སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྷན་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་བསྐྱར་དུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. There isn't anything in the bag. **There's nothing in the bag.**
2. There isn't anybody in the office. There's
3. I haven't got anything to do. I
4. There isn't anything on TV.
5. There wasn't anyone at home.
6. We didn't find anything.

77.2 **anybody/anyone/anything.** སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྷན་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་བསྐྱར་དུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. There's nothing in the bag. **There isn't anything in the bag.**
2. There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't
3. I've got nothing to read.
4. I've got no – one to help me.
5. She heard nothing.
6. We've got nothing for dinner.

77.3 **nobody/ no-one /nothing.** སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྷན་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་དྲི་བར་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1a. What did you say? Nothing. | 5a Who knows the answer? |
| 2a Who saw you? Nobody. | 6a What did you buy? |
| 3a What do you want? | 7a What happened? |
| 4a Who did you meet? | 8a Who was late? |

nobody/no-one/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྷན་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1b I didn't say anything. | 5b the answer. |
| 2b Nobody saw me. | 6b |
| 3b I don't | 7b |
| 4b I | 8b |

77.4 **nobody/no-one/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything** སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྷན་པ་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

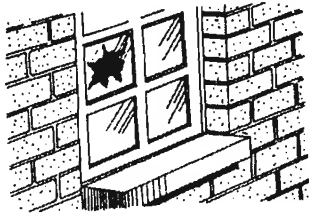
དགོས།

1. That house is empty **nobody** lives there.
2. Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember anything.
3. Be quiet! Don't say
4. I didn't know about the meeting told me.
5. 'What did you have to eat?' '..... I wasn't hungry.'
6. I didn't eat I wasn't hungry.
7. Jenny was sitting alone. She wasn't with
8. I'm afraid I can't help you. There's I can do.
9. I don't know..... about car engines.
10. The museum is free. It doesn't cost to go in.
11. I heard a knock on the door but when I opened it there wasthere.
12. She spoke very fast. I didn't understand
13. 'What are you doing this evening?' '..... why?'
14. Helen has gone away. knows where she is. She didn't tell where she was going.



ཐེ་ཆན་དོན་བསྐྱུད་པ། SOMEBODY / ANYTHING / NOWHERE སོགས།

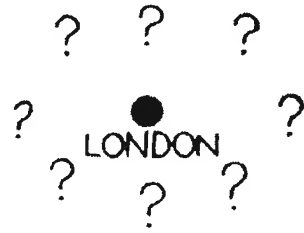
༡



Somebody (or someone)
has broken the window.



she has got something
her mouth.



Tom lives somewhere near
London.

somebody/someoneནི་ང་ཚོས་མི་སྒུ་ཡིན་མི་ཤེས་པའི་སྐྱབས་སུ་བཞག་ལ། **something**ནི་ང་ཚོས་དངོས་པོ་གང་ཡིན་མི་ཤེས་པའི་སྐྱབས་སུ་བཞག་ལ། **somewhere**ནི་ང་ཚོས་ས་ཆ་གང་ཡིན་མི་ཤེས་པའི་སྐྱབས་སུ་བཞག་ལ།

ཁ གང་ཟག་ (-body ཡང་ན་ -one)

Somebody / someone
Anybody/ anyone
Nobody/ no-one

- There is somebody (or someone) in the garden.
- Is there anybody (or anyone) in the garden?
- There isn't anybody (or anyone) in the garden.
- There is nobody (or no - one) in the garden.

-Body དང་-oneགཉིས་ནི་དོན་འདྲའོ།། somebody = someone, nobody = no - one etc.

དངོས་པོ།

Something
Anything
Nothing

- She said something but I didn't understand her.
- Are you doing anything at the weekend?
- I was angry but I didn't say anything.
- 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'

ས་ཆ།

Somewhere
Anywhere
Nowhere

- They live somewhere in the south of England.
- Did you go anywhere interesting for your holidays?
- I'm staying here. I'm not going anywhere.
- I don't like this town. There is nowhere to go.

ག something / anybody སོགས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་བྱུང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་བཞག་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

- Did you meet anybody interesting at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go somewhere different.
- What's that letter?' 'It's nothing important.'

ང something / anybody སོགས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་to...བཞག་ལ། དཔེར་ན།

- I'm hungry. I want something to eat. (= Something that I can eat)
- He hasn't got anybody to talk to. (= Anybody that he can talk to)
- There's nowhere to go in this town. (= Nowhere where people can go)



གཤམ་བྱ་དང་།

78.1 somebody/someone/something/somewhere མི་གསལ་བཞག་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་བྱ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. She said something . | What did she say? |
| 2. I've lost | What have you lost? |
| 3. They went | Where did they go? |
| 4. I'm going to phone..... | Who are you going to phone? |

78.2 nobody /or no-one/nothing/ nowhere མི་གསལ་བཞག་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་བྱ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1a What did you say? | Nothing. |
| 2a Where are you going? | ..... |
| 3a What do you want? | ..... |
| 4a Who are you looking for? | ..... |

not ཡི་རྩེས་སུ་ anybody/anything/anywhere མི་གསལ་བཞག་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་བྱ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| 1b I didn't say anything . | 3b |
| 2b I'm not | 4b |

78.3 somebody/somewhere/anything/nowhere མི་གསལ་བཞག་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་བྱ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- It's dark. I can't see **anything**.
- Tom lives **somewhere** near London.
- Do you know about computers?
- 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear
- 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for
- Please listen carefully. There's I want to tell you.
- 'did..... see the accident?' 'No,
- We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat
- 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know knows.'
- 'Do you know in London?' 'Yes, a few people.'
- 'What's in that cupboard?' '..... it's empty.'
- I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them
- I don't like cold weather. I want to live warm.
- Is there interesting on television tonight?
- Have you ever met famous?

78.4 གཤམ་བྱ་རེ་འུ་མིག་གཉིས་ལས་མིང་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

༡ Something anything nothing somewhere anywhere nowhere (མེད་ས་གཅིག་གམ་མང་བར་བཞག་ཆོག)

ཁ Do drink eat go play read sit stay

- We don't go out very much because there's **nowhere to go**.
- There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got
- I'm bored. I've got
- 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't
- 'Would you like?' 'Yes, please – a glass of orange juice.'
- All the hotels were full. There was
- I want I'm going to buy a magazine.
- Children need



Every house in the streetནི་all the houses in the streetདང་དྲན་འདྲེ།

ང་ཚོས་every + མིང་ཚིག་གི་རྒྱུར་ཤར་ས་པེད་སྒྱུད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- Alice has been to every country in Europe.
- Every summer we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different every time I see her.

Every + ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྒྱུར་གྲངས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

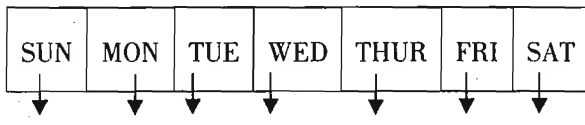
- **Every house** in the street is the same. (‘are the same’ *ཞེས་འགྲིམ་རུང་*)
- **Every country** has a national flag. (‘country have’ *ཞེས་འགྲིམ་རུང་*)

everyདང་allགཉིས་བསྐྱར་བ།

- | | |
|---|--|
| ➤ Every student in the class passed the exam. | ➤ All the students in the class passed the exam. |
| ➤ Every country has a national flag. | ➤ All countries have a national flag. |

every day དང་ all day གཉིས་ཀྱི་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་སྒྲུབ་ས།

Every dayདང་on all daysདོན་འདྲ།



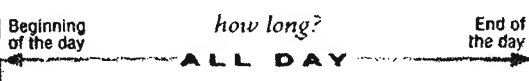
- A: How often do you read a newspaper?
B: Every day.

➤ Bill watches TV for about two hours

Every evening (ནི་On all evening དང་ནི་ན་འདྲ)

གཞན་ཡང་ every morning / night / summer

all day དང་the complete day རྟེན་འདྲ།



- The weather was bad yesterday. It rained all day.
- I was tired after work yesterday, so I watched TV **all evening**. (ཁི་The complete evening ངང་རྟོན་འདྲུག་)

གཞན་ཡང་། all morning / night / summer

७ **everybody (or everyone)/ everything / everywhere**

Everybody ཡང་ན་everyone འི་མི་ལ་མེད་
ཕྱོད་ཅིང་།

Everything ཅུ་དངོས་ལ་མེད་སྟོན་ཅིང་།

Everywhere ས་ཆར་བེད་སྤྱོད་ཅིང་།

- Everybody (or everyone) needs friends. (= All people need friend)
- Have you got everything you need? (= All the things you need)
- I've lost my watch. I've looked everywhere for it. (=I've looked in all places)

everybody / everyone/ everything + ལས་མིག་རྒྱུར་གྲངས་པེད་སྒྲིང་ཕྱེད་དམོག་།

- Everybody has problems. ('Everybody have' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



གཤམ་ཕྱད་

79.1 every ཡི་རྗེས་སུ་ Day/room/student/time/word སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་

དགོས།

1. **Every student** in the class passed the exam.
2. My job is very boring. in the same.
3. Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play she wins
4. in the hotel has a private bathroom.
5. 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it but not

79.2 every day དང་ all day གཉིས་ཅིང་སྤྱད་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Yesterday it rained **all day**.
2. I buy a newspaper but sometimes I don't read it.
3. I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home
4. I usually drink about four cups of coffee
5. Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed
6. Last year we went to the seaside for a week and it rained
7. I'm tired now because I've been working hard

79.3 every དང་ all གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours **every** evening.
2. Barbara gets up at 6.30 morning.
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat in the garden afternoon.
4. I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away week.
5. 'How often do you go skiing?' '..... year. Usually in March.'
6. A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday? B: Yes, I was at home morning. I went out after lunch.
7. My sister likes cars. She buys a new one..... year.
8. I saw Jack at the party. He wasn't very friendly. He didn't speak to me evening.
9. We go away on holiday for two or three weeks summer..

79.4 everybody / everything/ everywhere སྐད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ན་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. **Everybody** needs friends.
2. Chris knows about computers.
3. I like the people here. is very friendly.
4. This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and is very clean.
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes by motor – bike.
6. Let's have dinner. is hungry.
7. Sue's house is full of books. There are books
8. You are right. you say is true.

79.5 ལས་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Everybody **has** problems.
2. Are you ready yet? Everybody waiting for you.
3. The house is empty. Everybody gone out.
4. George is very popular. Everybody him.
5. This town is completely different. Everything changed.
6. I arrived home very late. I came in quietly because everyone asleep.
7. Everybody mistakes!



ཕྱི་ཆ་འབྲུག་ཏུ་བ།

ALL

MOST

SOME

ANY

NO / NONE

༡ བསྐྱར་བ།

Children / money / books སྐད་ཅི་གང་ཟག་གམ་བྱ་དངོས་སྤྱི་ལ་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་ཅིང་། > Children like playing. (ཕྱ་གུ་སྤྱི་ལ་ནི) > Money isn't everything. (སྒྲིང་མི་སྤྱི་ལ་ནི) > I enjoy reading books. > Everybody needs friends.	The children / the money / these books སྐད་ཅི་གང་ཟག་དང་བྱ་དངོས་ཅི་ཟག་གམ་དམིགས་བསལ་ལ་བེད་སྤྱད་ཅིང་། > Where are the children? (ནི་ང་ཆོའི་སྤྱི་གུར་ནི) > I want to buy a car but I haven't got the money. (ནི་སྒྲིང་མ་འཁོར་ཉི་ཕྱི་སྤྱི་ལ་མི་རྒྱུ་ནི) > I often go out with my friends.
--	--

ཁ བཏུ་མེད་པའི་... , some / some of ... སྐད་ཅི་གྱི་བེད་སྤྱད་ཅིང་ཚུལ།

most / some + མིང་ཆོག་བཀོལ་བ། (most + city = most cities)

all	of	city
most		children
some		books
any		money
no		

all most some

- Most children like playing. (ཕྱ་གུ་སྤྱི་ལ་ནི)
- I don't want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He's got no friends.
- All cities have the same problems. (སྒྲིང་ཆེར་སྤྱི་ལ་ནི)

འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་དུ་ང་ཆོས་of བེད་སྤྱད་མི་ཕྱིད།

- Most people drive too fast. ('most of people' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Some birds can't fly. ('Some of birds' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

most of / some of སྐད་ཅི་གྱི་རྒྱུ་ལ་ཆོས་ the/this/my.... སྐད་ཅི་གྱི་བེད་སྤྱད་ཅིང་།

བཀོལ་བ། (most of + the + city = most of the cities)

all	of	the...
most	of	this / that...
some		these / those ..
any		my/your...
none		

any no / none / not + any

- Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want any of this money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends live near me.

ང་ཆོས་all the / all my ཞེས་བཀོལ་བ་ལས་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ནང་of བེད་སྤྱད་ཅིང་མི་རུང་།

- All the students in our class passed the exam.
- Silvia has lived in London all her life.

ག བཏུ་མེད་པའི་... all / most / none / of + མིང་ཆོག་བེད་སྤྱད་ཅིང་། དཔེར་ན།

all	of	it
most		them
some		us
any		you
none		

- > You can have some of this cake but not all of it.
- > A: Do you know those people?
B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- > Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- > I've got a lot of books but I haven't read any of them.
- > How many of these books have you read? 'None of them.'



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

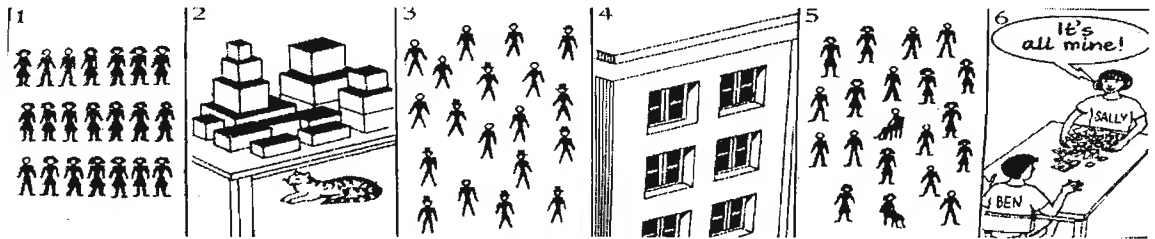
80.1 སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། དགོས་མཁོ་ཡོད་

ཆོ་སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་གི་ཇེས་སུ་of བཞོལ་ཆོག

1. **Most** children like playing. (most)
2. **Some of** this money is yours. (some)
3.people never stop talking. (some)
4.the shops in the city centre close at 6.30 (most)
5. You can change your money inbanks. (most)
6. I don't likethe pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He's lost his money. (all)
8. my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you knowthe people in this photograph? (any)
10. birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed the film but I didn't like the ending. (most)
12. sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can't find anywhere to stay. the hotels are full. (all)
14. You must have this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained the time. (most)

80.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་most/some/none སྐད་སྒྲིམ་གྱི་ཇེས་སུ་of them/ of it བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་

པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. How many of the people are women? **Most of them.**
2. How many of the boxes are on the table?
3. How many of the men are wearing hats?
4. How many of the windows are open?
5. How many of the people are standing?
6. How much of the money is Ben's?

80.3 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལས་མི་འགྲིག་པ་ནམས་དག་བཅོས་བྱེད་དགོས།

1. Most of children like playing. **Most children.**
2. All the students failed the exam. **Ok.**
3. Some of people work too hard.
4. Some of questions in the exam were very easy.
5. I haven't seen any of those people before.
6. All of insects have six legs.
7. Have you read all these books?
8. Most of students in our class are very nice.
9. Most of my friends are going to the party.
10. I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of right.



neither (not + either)

- 161



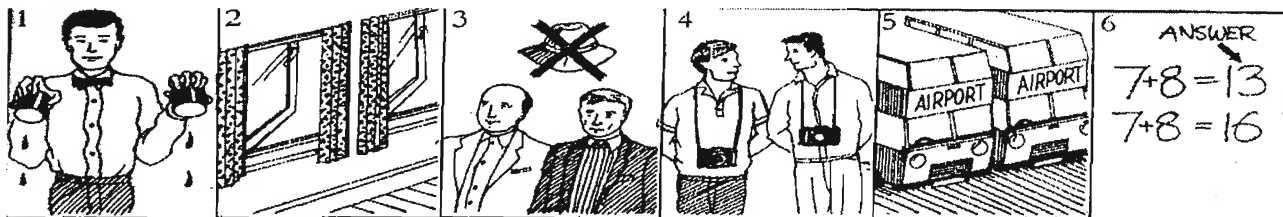
གསལ་བཤད་

81.1 both/ either/ neither སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐུན་འཇུག་གི་ཐོག་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་གི་ཆེད་དུ་ཐུན་འཇུག་པའི་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། དགོས་མཁོར་

གཞིགས་ནས་of བཞོལ་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག

1. Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like either of them.
3. It was a good football match. teams played well.
4. It wasn't a good football match team played well.
5. 'Is your friend English or American?' '..... she's Australian.'
6. We went away for two days but the weather wasn't good. It rained on days.
7. A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want? B: It doesn't matter which one.
8. I invited Diana and Mike to the party but them came.
9. 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' '..... I always walk.
10. 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like them.'
11. 'Do you work or are you a student?' '..... I've got a job and I study too.'
12. Paula and I didn't know the time because us had a watch.
13. Ann has got two sisters and a brother. sisters are married.
14. Ann has got two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother but I haven't met her sisters.

81.2 རི་མོར་བཞུགས་མེས་both.../neither...གཞིགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་གི་ཆེད་དུ་ཐུན་འཇུག་ཆ་ཆར་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <u>Both</u> cups are empty. | 4. cameras. |
| 2. are open. | 5. to the airport. |
| 3. ....wearing hat. | 6. ....right. |

81.3 གསལ་བཤད་གི་དྲི་བ་ནི་ཕོ་མོ་གཉིས་ལ་དྲིས་པ་ཡིན་ལ། དེ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ལན་གཅིག་མཚུངས་ཡིན་པས། ཟ࿳་དྲ་ཀྱིས་

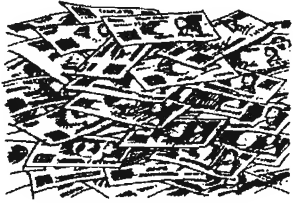
both/neither of them གཞིགས་བཞོལ་ནས་ཁོང་གཉིས་ཀྱི་སྤྱད་ཆ་ཐུན་འཇུག་གི་ཐོག་ནས་

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|--------|--------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Are you married? | No | no | <u>Neither of them is married.</u> |
| 2. How old are you? | 21 | 21 | <u>Both of them are 21.</u> |
| 3. Are you a student? | Yes | yes | students. |
| 4. Have you got a car? | No | no | a car. |
| 5. Where do you live? | London | London | ..... |
| 6. Do you like cooking? | Yes | yes | ..... |
| 7. Can you play the piano? | No | no | ..... |
| 8. Do you read newspapers? | Yes | yes | ..... |
| 9. Are you interested in sport? | No | no | ..... |



མི་ཚུ་གྲུ་གཉིས་པ། A LOT MUCH MANY

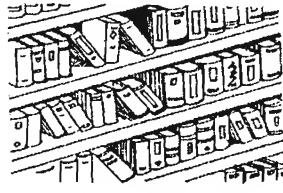
༡



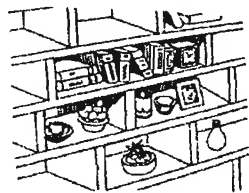
a lot of money



not much money



a lot of books



not many books

ང་ཚོས་much + བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་བརྒྱུད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Did you buy much food?
- We haven't got much luggage.
- How much money do you want?
- A: Have you got any money?
- B: I've got some but not much.

ང་ཚོས་many + མིང་ཚིག་གི་མང་གུང་ས་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- Did you buy many books?
- We don't know many people.
- How many photographs did you take?
- A: Did you take any photographs?
- B: I took some but not many.

ང་ཚོས་a lot of + མིང་ཚིག་གང་ཡང་རུང་བ་ (ཉེ་བཟང་རུང་མིན་གཉིས་ཀྱི།) བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཚིག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- We bought a lot of food.
- Paula hasn't got a lot of free time.

- We bought a lot of books.
- Did they ask you a lot of question?

ཡིད་འཛིག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།

- There is a lot of food / money / water ...

(ལས་ཚིག་ནི་རྒྱུད་གུང་ས་ཡིན་པས་ཇེས་སྟེ་བཟང་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་བརྒྱུད་པ།)

- There are a lot of trees / shops / people...

(ལས་ཚིག་ནི་མང་གུང་ས་ཡིན་པས་ཇེས་སྟེ་མིང་ཚིག་གི་མང་གུང་ས་བརྒྱུད་པ།)

- A lot of people speak English. ('speaks'ཇེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ཁ ང་ཚོས་ much བོ་ནམ་རྒྱུན་འདྲི་ཚིག་དང་དགག་ལུན་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད།

- Do you drink much coffee/ a lot of coffee?
- I don't drink much coffee/ a lot of coffee.
- I drink a lot of coffee. ('I drink much coffee. ཇེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- 'Do you drink much coffee?' 'Yes, a lot.' ('much ཇེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ང་ཚོས་manyདང་a lot of གཉིས་བོ་ཚིག་གྲུབ་གང་ཡང་རུང་བའི་ནང་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཚིག་ དཔེར་ན།

- Have you got many friends/ a lot of friends?
- We haven't got many friends/ a lot of friends.
- We've got many friends/ a lot of friends.

ག muchདང་a lot གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སྟེ་མིང་ཚིག་མི་རྒྱུར་བར་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཚིག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Diane spoke to me but she didn't say much.
- 'Do you watch TV much?' 'No, not much.' (རྒྱན་ལྟན་མིན་པའི་དོན།)
- We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot. (much ཇེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I don't like him very much.



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

82.1 much དང་ many གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Did you buy <u>much</u> food? | 5 Did .....students fail the examination? |
| 2. There aren't .....hotels in this town. | 6 Paula hasn't got money. |
| 3. We haven't got .....petrol. | 7 I wasn't very hungry. I didn't eat |
| 4. Were there people on the train? | 8 I haven't seen George for years. |

how much དང་ how many གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- 9 people are coming to the party?
 10 milk do you want in your coffee?
 11 bread did you buy?
 12 players are there in a football team?

82.2 Books/countries/luggage/people/time/times སྟགས་ much འམ་ many གཉིས་དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I don't read very much. I haven't got <u>many books</u> . | 4 Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know |
| 2. Quick! We must hurry. We haven't got..... | 5 'Have you got?' 'No, only this bag.' |
| 3. Do you travel a lot? Have you been to | 6 I know Paris very well. I've been there |

82.3 a lot of དང་མཉམ་ཏུ་Accidents/books/fun/interesting/things/traffic སྟགས་གང་རུང་འེ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I like reading. I have <u>a lot of books</u> . | 4 We enjoyed our holiday. We had |
| 2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw | |
| 3. This road is very dangerous. There are | 5 It took me a long time to drive here. There was |

82.4 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁ་ཤས་ཀྱི་ནང་དུ་ནམ་རྒྱུ་ much བེད་སྟོང་མི་ཁྱེད་པས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་དེ་དག་བཅའ་ཇེས་ནོར་བཅས་བྱས། གལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་འགྲིག་ཆེ་མཁུག་ཏུ་ok ཞེས་འཁྲི་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. Do you drink <u>much</u> coffee? | <u>Ok</u> |
| 2. I drink <u>much</u> tea. | <u>A lot of tea.</u> |
| 3. It was a cold winter. We had <u>much</u> snow. | |
| 4. There wasn't <u>much</u> snow last winter. | |
| 5. It costs <u>much</u> money to travel around the world. | |
| 6. We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost <u>much</u> | |
| 7. Do you know <u>much</u> about computers? | |
| 8. 'Have you got any luggage?' 'Yea, <u>much</u> .' | |

82.5 ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་ much དང་ a lot གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གི་སྐོར་འཁྲི་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Jim loves films. (Go to the cinema) | <u>He goes to the cinema a lot.</u> |
| 2. Linda thinks TV is boring. (Watch TV) | She doesn't watch TV much. |
| 3. Tina is a good tennis player. (Play tennis) | She |
| 4. Martin doesn't like driving. (Use his car) | He |
| 5. Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out) | ..... |
| 6. Sue has been all over the world. (Travel) | ..... |



ཐེ་ཆེན་གྱི་གསུམ་པ། (A) LITTLE

(A) FEW སྟགས།

a little water



little + བཟང་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་སྟུང།

- (a) little water (a) little money
- (a) little time (a) little soup

A few books



few + མིང་ཆོག་གི་མང་གྲངས་སྟུང།

- (a) few books (a) few question
- (a) few people (a) few days.

a little ཁྱིམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་ཅིང་ཐུབ་པའི་ཐུག་པའི་དོན། a

little ཡི་ཆེས་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་དེ་དེས་པར་དུ་བཟང་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་དགོས།

- > She didn't eat anything but she drank a little water.
- > I speak a little Spanish. (ཁྱིམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་ཅིང་ཐུབ་པའི་ཐུག་པའི་དོན།)
- > A: Can you speak Spanish?
B: A little.

A few ཁྱིམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་ཅིང་ཐུབ་པའི་ཐུག་པའི་དོན།

a few ཡི་ཆེས་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་དེ་དེས་པར་དུ་བཟང་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་དགོས།

- > Last night I wrote a few letters.
- > We're going away for a few days.
- > I speak a few words of Spanish.
- > A: Are there any shops in the village?
B: Yes, a few.

little ཁྱིམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་ཅིང་ཐུབ་པའི་དོན།

little ཡི་ཆེས་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་དེ་དེས་པར་དུ་བཟང་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་དགོས།

- > There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཟང་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་དོན། very little

- > Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (ལམ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།)

Few ཁྱིམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་ཅིང་ཐུབ་པའི་དོན།

few ཡི་ཆེས་ཀྱི་མིང་ཆོག་དེ་དེས་པར་དུ་བཟང་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན་དགོས།

- > There were few people in the park. It was nearly empty.

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཟང་མེ་ཐུབ་པའི་དོན། very few

- > Your English is very correct. You make very few mistakes.

little དང་ a little གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཁྱུང་པར།

A little ལ་དགག་མིན་གྱི་བསམ་སྒྲིག་ལྟར། (ཐུབ་པའི་ཐུག་པའི་དོན།)

- > They have a little money, so they're not poor. (ཁོ་ཆེར་སྒྲིག་པའི་ཐུག་པའི་དོན།)

Little ཁྱིམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་ཅིང་ཐུབ་པའི་དོན། ལམ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།

- > They have little money. They are very poor. (ལམ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།)



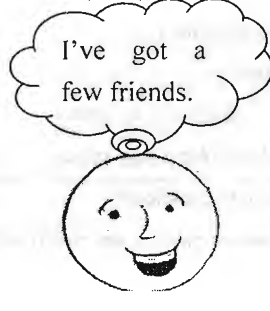
Few དང་ a few གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཁྱུང་པར།

A few ལ་དགག་མིན་གྱི་བསམ་སྒྲིག་ལྟར། (ཐུབ་པའི་ཐུག་པའི་དོན།)

- > I've got a few friends, so I'm not lonely. (ཁོ་ཆེར་སྒྲིག་པའི་ཐུག་པའི་དོན།)

Few ཁྱིམ་གྱི་མིང་ཆོག་ཅིང་ཐུབ་པའི་དོན། ལམ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།

- > I'm sad and I'm lonely. I've got few friends. (ལམ་ཆེར་མེད་པའི་དོན།)





གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

83.1 a little དང་ a few གཉིས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ལ་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

1. 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, a little.'
2. 'Have you got any envelopes?' 'Yes.....'
3. 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes,, please.'
4. 'Did you take any photographs when you were on holiday?' 'Yes,
5. 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes
6. 'Are there any factories in this town?' 'Yes,

83. 2 a little/ a few གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སུ་Air/chairs/days/friends/letters/milk/Russian/times སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Last night I wrote a few letters to my family and friends.
2. Can I have in my coffee, please?
3. 'When did Julia go away?' '..... ago.'
4. 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'I can speak
5. 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with
6. 'Have you ever been to Rome?' 'Yes,
7. There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and
8. I'm going out for a walk. I need fresh

83.3 very little/ very few གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སུ་Coffee/hotels/mistakes/people/rain/time/work སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
2. I drink I don't like it.
3. The weather here is very dry in summer. There is
4. It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are
5. We must hurry. We've got
6. The town is very quiet at night. go out.
7. Some people in the office are very lazy. They do

83.4 little/ a little / few/ a few སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
2. 'When did Sarah go out?' '.....minutes ago.'
3. I can't decide now. I need time to think about it.
4. There was traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5. The bus service isn't very good at night – there are buses after 9 o'clock.
6. 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes,, please.'
7. I'd like to practice my English more but I have opportunity.

83.5 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལས་མི་འགྲིག་པ་ནམས་ནོར་བཙོས་ཁྱུང་། གལ་ཏེ་འགྲིག་ཆོ་མཆུག་ཏུ་ok ཞེས་འབྲི་དགོས།

1. We're going away for few days next week. For a few days.
2. Everybody needs little luck.
3. I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do.
4. I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much.
5. Excuse me, can I ask you few questions?
6. There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty.



ཐེ་ཚན་གྱི་འཛིན་པ། OLD /NICE /INTERESTING སྐད་སྒྲུབ།

༡ བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ + མིང་ཚིག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་	+	མིང་ཚིག་
It's a nice		day today.
Laura has got brown		eyes.
There's a very old		bridge in this village.
Do you like Italian		food?
I don't speak any foreign		languages.
There are some beautiful yellow		flowers in the garden

བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ནི་མིང་ཚིག་གི་སྟོན་པ་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- They live in a modern house. ('a house modern' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Have you met any famous people? ('people famous' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་ནི་ནམ་ཡང་འགྱུར་བ་མེད་དེ། དཔེར་ན།

A different place different places ('differents' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ཁ be (am / is / was སྐད་སྒྲུབ།) ཡི་རྩེས་སྟུ་བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱས་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

- The weather is nice today.
- These flowers are very beautiful.
- Are you cold? Shall I close the window?
- I'm hungry. Can I have something to eat?
- The film wasn't very good. It was boring.
- Please be quiet. I'm reading.



ག look / feel / smell / taste / sound སྐད་སྒྲུབ། ཡི་རྩེས་སྟུ་ཡང་བྱང་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་བཤད་སྟུང་བྱས་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།



- 'You look tired.' 'Yes, I feel tired.'
- George told me about his new job. It sounds very interesting.
- Don't cook that meat. It doesn't smell good.

བསྟར་བ།

He	is	
feels		tired.
looks		

They	are	
look		American.
sound		

It	is	
smells		good.
tastes		



གཤམ་སྒྱུར་

84.1 གཤམ་གྱི་སྒྱུར་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་གོ་མོ་ལ་ཐོ་བའི་ཆོག་དག་བསྒྱུར་དུ་བསྒྲིག་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཅོ་དགོས།

1. (new/ live in/ house/ they/ a) **They live in a new house.**
2. (like/ jacket/ I / that/ green) I
3. (Music/ like /do/ classical/ you?) Do
4. (Had / wonderful/ a /I /holiday)
5. (Went to/ restaurant/ a Chinese/ we)

84.2 སྒྱུར་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་ཁ་ཤས་ནི་བྱང་ཆོས་སྒྱུར་པའི་ཆོག་ཡིན་ལ་ཁ་ཤས་ནི་མིང་ཆོག་ཡིན། བྱང་གྱིས་མིང་ཆོག་རེ་དང་བྱང་ཆོས་སྒྱུར་པའི་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཅོ་དགོས།

air	clouds	foreign	holiday	job	languages	sharp
black	dangerous	fresh	hot	knife	long	water

1. Do you speak any **foreign languages**?
2. Look at those it's going to rain.
3. Sue works very hard and she's very tired. She needs a
4. I want to have a bath but there's no
5. Can you open the window? We need some
6. I need a to cut these onions.
7. Fire - fighting is a

84.3 རེ་འུ་མིག་ཀྱི་དང་ཁ་གཉིས་ལས་མིང་ཆོག་བདམས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་མོ་རེ་ལ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རེ་བཅོ་དགོས།

ཀ	feel (s)	look (s)	sound (s)	ཁ	happy	ill	nice
	looks (s)	smell (s)	taste (s)		horrible	new	surprised

1 You sound happy.....

2 It

3 I

4 You

5 They

6 It

84.4 གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་འུ་མིག་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ནང་དོན་ཆ་ཆང་བ་ཞིག་མིན་པས། བྱང་གྱིས་རེ་འུ་མིག་གཡས་པའི་སྒྱུར་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཅོ་དགོས།

You look tired.	Do I? I <u>don't</u> feel tired (feel)
This is a new coat.	Is it? It (look)
I'm American.	Are you? You (sound)
You look cold.	Do I? I (feel)
These bags are heavy.	Are they? They (look)
That soup looks good.	Does it? It (taste)



ཕྱི་ཚུན་གྲུ་ལྔ་བ། QUICKLY / BADLY / SUDDENLY སྐོག་སྐོག།

༡

7. 10



7. 12



7. 15



He ate his dinner very quickly.

Suddenly the shelf fell down.

གོང་གསལ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ནང་གི་quickly དང་suddenly གཉིས་ནི་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཡིན།

བྱང་ཆས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ + ly སྐྱར་ན་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཏུ་འགྱུར་གྱིན། དཔེར་ན།

བྱང་ཆས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་	quick	bad	sudden	careful	heavy
ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་	quickly	badly	suddenly	carefully	heavily

ཚིག་གི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ་ཞིབ་མོར་བྱུར་བཀོད་ 5 ལ་སྟོན། easy – easily heavy – heavily

ཁ རོན་དག་ཞིག་དེ་ལྟར་བྱུང་བའམ་ཡང་ན་མི་ཞིག་གིས་བྱ་བ་ཞིག་དེ་ལྟར་སྐྱབ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ལ་ང་ཚོས་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཟེར།

- The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly.
- Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.



བསྐྱར་བ།

བྱང་ཆས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་

Sue is very quiet.

Be careful!

It was a bad game.

I feel nervous. (= I am nervous)

ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་

Sue speaks very quietly. (speaks very quiet ཞེས་འབྲིམ་རུང་)

Listen carefully! (listen careful ཞེས་འབྲིམ་རུང་)

Our team played badly. (played bad ཞེས་འབྲིམ་རུང་)

I waited nervously.

ག hard /fast/ late/ early འདི་དག་ནི་བྱང་ཆས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཡིན་ལ་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཀྱང་ཡིན།

- The bus was late / early.
- Ben is a fast runner.
- Sue's job is very hard.

- Sue works very hard. (hardly ཞེས་འབྲིམ་རུང་)
- Ben can run fast.
- I went to bed late / early.

ང good (ནི་བྱང་ཆས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་)— well (ནི་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཡིན)

- It was a good game.
- Your English is very good.

- You speak English very well. ('very good ཞེས་འབྲིམ་རུང་')
- Our team played well.

ཡིན་ནའང་། well ནི་བྱང་ཆས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ཀྱང་ཡིན་ཆོག་སྟེ། དཔེར་ན།

- 'How are you?' 'I'm very well, thank you. And you?'

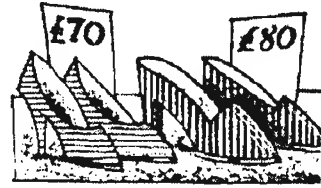
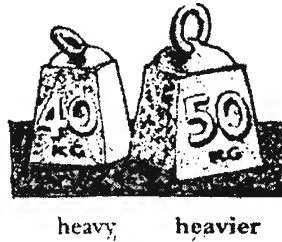
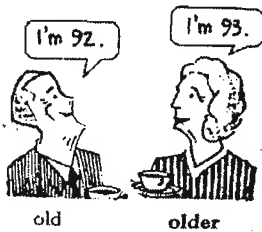


མི་ཚེན་གྱི་བྱུག་པ།

OLD / OLDER

EXPENSIVE / MORE EXPENSIVE སྤྱི་གཤམ།

ག



Older / heavier / more expensive སྤྱི་གཤམ་ནི་བྱུང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་བསྐྱར་ཆོག་ཡིན།

བྱུང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་སྟོན་དུ་ more སྐྱོར་བའམ་ཡང་ན་རྒྱུ་ལུ་ er སྐྱོར་བ་ནི་བྱུང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་བསྐྱར་ཆོག་གི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ་ཡིན།

ཁ བྱུང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་ + er སྐྱོར་ཚུལ།

བྱུང་ཆོས་ཆོག་ཐུང་ངམ་སྐྱུ་ཆོག་སྤྱི་གཤམ་འདྲན་ཐུབ་པའི་བྱུང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་རྒྱུ་ལུ་ + er སྐྱོར་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

(དབྱངས་རྟ་གཅིག་གིས་འདྲན་ཐུབ་པ་ལ་གོ།)

old — older

slow — slower

cheap — cheaper

nice — nicer

late — later

big — bigger

སྐྱོར་ཚུལ་ཞིབ་མིར་ཐུབ་པའོད་པ་ལྟོས། big — bigger hot — hotter thin — thinner

ཆོག་མཐའ་ yཡིན་པ་དང་དེའི་སྟོན་གྱི་ཆོག་ནི་གསལ་བཤད་ཡིན་སྐབས་ང་ཆོས་yདེ་ i ཅུ་བསྐྱར་རྒྱུ་ལུ་ er སྟོན་དགོས།

easy — easier

heavy — heavier

early — earlier

- Rome is old but Athens is older. ('more old' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? ('more cheap ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Helen wants a bigger car.
- This coat is OK but I think the other one is nicer.
- Don't write a letter. It's easier to phone. (more easy ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Far — further:

- 'How far is it to the station? A mile?' 'No, it's further. About two miles.'

ག more ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

ཆོག་རིང་ངམ་སྐྱུ་ཆོག་སྤྱི་གཤམ་འདྲན་ཐུབ་པའི་བྱུང་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་སྟོན་དུ་ང་ཆོས་+ more བེད་སྟུང་བྱེད་དགོས།

(དབྱངས་རྟ་གཅིག་གིས་འདྲན་ཐུབ་པ་ལ་གོ།)

careful — more careful

polite — more polite

expensive — more expensive

interesting — more interesting

- You must be more careful.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
- Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

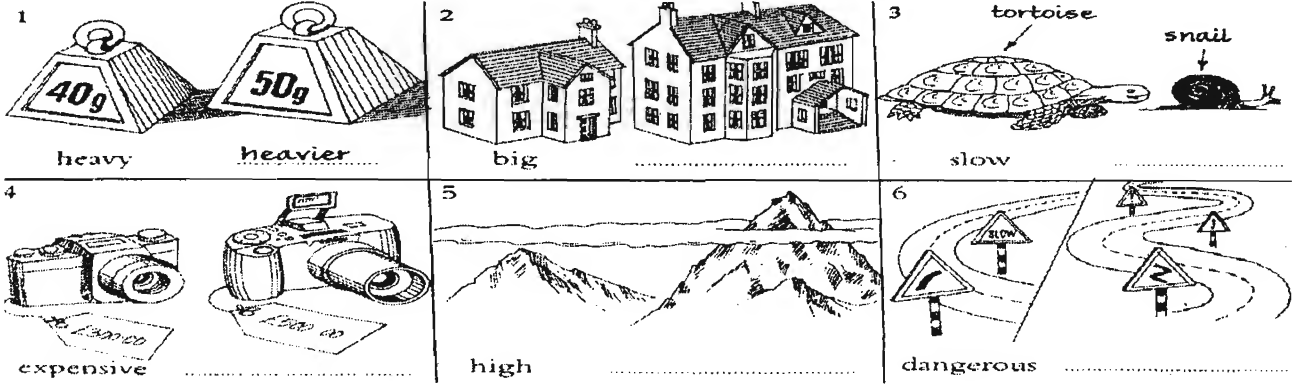
ཏ good / well — better bad — worse སྤྱི་གཤམ་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- The weather wasn't very good yesterday but it's better today.
- 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel worse.'
- Which is worse – a headache or a toothache?



གསལ་སྤྱད།

86.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྗེས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་དག་གི་བསྟར་ཆོག་འབྲི་དགོས།



86.2 གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་དག་གི་བསྟར་ཆོག་མིས།

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Old older | 6 Good |
| 2. Strong | 7 Large |
| 3. Happy | 8 Serious |
| 4. Modern | 9 Pretty |
| 5. Important | 10 Crowded |

86.3 གསལ་གྱི་བསྟར་ཆོག་དག་གི་ཕྱག་ཆོག་མིས།

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. Younger older | 4 Better |
| 2. Colder | 5 Nearer |
| 3. Cheaper | 6 Easier |

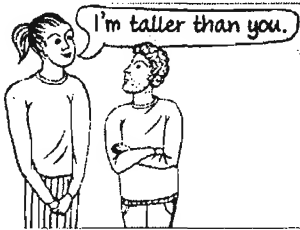
86.4 བསྟར་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a **bigger** one.
- My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- You're not very tall. Your brother is
- David doesn't work very hard. I work
- My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is
- Your plan isn't very good. My plan is
- These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are
- My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is
- I'm not very interested in art. I'm in history.
- It isn't very warm today. It was Yesterday.
- These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted
- Britain isn't very big. France is
- London isn't very beautiful. Paris is
- This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a One?
- People today aren't very polite. In the past they were



ཕྱི་ཆེན་གྱི་བརྟན་པ། OLDER THAN

MORE EXPENSIVE THAN སྤྲུལ་སྤྱོད་



She's taller than him.

Hotel Prices (per person, per night)	
Europe Hotel	£90
Grand Hotel	£85.50
Royal Hotel	£83
tel	£70

The Europa hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

ང་ཚོས་^{than}ཞི་བཟུང་ཚིག་གི་རྗེས་སུ་བཀོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན། (older than ཞེས་འཕྲིད་ནས་)

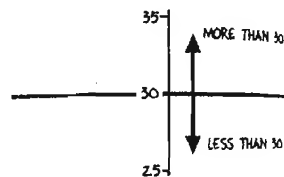
- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It's easier to phone than to write a letter.
- 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'
- The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

ཁ ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་ཏེ། than me / than him / than her / than us / than them

- I can run faster than him. ཡང་ན། I can run faster than he can.
- You are a better singer than me. ཡང་ན། You are a better singer than I am.
- I got up earlier than her. ཡང་ན། I got up earlier than she did.

ག more / less than གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།

- A: How much did your shoes cost? \$ 30?
- B: No, more than that. (=more than \$ 30)
- The film was very short – less than an hour.
- They've got more money than they need.
- You go out more than me.



2 a bit older / much older སྐད་སྐར་གྱི་བརྗོད་ཚུལ།



Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.



Box C is much bigger than Box D.

a bit	bigger	than
much	older	
	better	
	more difficult	
	more expensive	

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Jill is a bit older than Gary – she's 25 and he's 24 1/2.
- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

87.1 རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་ *than* བཀོལ་ནས་ལྷེ་ས་དང་ཟླན་གཉིས་ཀྱི་སྒྲོར་མིས།

1. I don't go to the cinema very much.	1. I'm 24.
2. I speak French very well.	2. I'm a very good swimmer.
3. I'm very intelligent.	3. I'm 1 meter 63 tall.
4. I'm not a very good dancer.	4. I start work at 8.30.
5. I'm not very patient.	5. I work very hard.
6. I'm a very good driver.	6. I've got a lot of money.
7. I haven't got much money.	7. I'm not a very good driver.
8. I don't work very hard.	8. I'm very patient.
9. I start work at 8 o' clock.	9. I'm good dance.
10. I'm 1 meter 69 tall.	10. I'm not very intelligent.
11. I'm not a very good swimmer.	11. I don't speak French very well.
12. I'm 26	12. I go to the cinema a lot.

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. <u>Liz is older than Ben.</u> | 7 Liz is a |
| 2. <u>Ben is a better swimmer than Liz.</u> | 8 Ben |
| 3. Liz is..... | 9 Ben |
| 4. Liz starts | 10 Ben. Liz |
| 5. Ben | 11 Liz |
| 6. Ben has got | 12 Ben |

87.2 *than* བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. He isn't very tall. You're tall than him. (or ... than he is)
2. She isn't very old. You 're
3. I don't work very hard. You work
4. He doesn't watch TV very much. You
5. I'm not a very good cook. You
6. We don't know many people. You
7. They haven't got much money. You
8. I can't run very fast. You can
9. She hasn't been here very long. You
10. They didn't get up very early. You
11. He wasn't very surprised. You

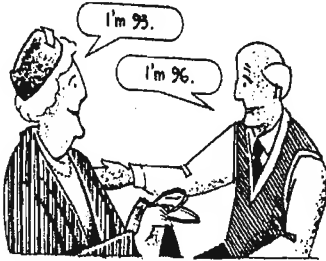
87.3 *a bit* དང་ *much* གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཇེས་སུ་བསྐྱར་ཆོག་རེ་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་དང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Jill is 25. Gary is 24 .
Jill is a bit older than Gary.
2. Jack's mother is 54. His father is 69.
Jack's mother
3. My camera cost 100. Yours cost 96.
My camera
4. Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel ok.
I fell
5. Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was ten degrees.
It's
6. Ann is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very good.
Ann

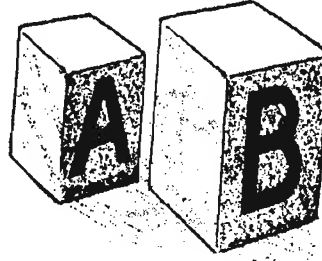


ཕྱི་ཆེན་གྱི་བརྒྱད་པ། NOT AS ...AS

༡ not as ... as ཡི་བཀོལ་ཚུལ།



She's old but she's not as old as he is.



Box A isn't as big as Box B.

- Rome is not as old as Athens. (Athens གི་Rome ལས་མ་ཆེ་བའི་དོན།)
- The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as the Europa. (the Europa གི་Grand Hotel ལས་འཇགས་ཆུང་བའི་དོན།)
- I don't play tennis as often as you. (ང་གི་ཚུད་དང་འདྲ་བར་ན་མ་ཆུན་མི་ཆེ་བའི་དོན།)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn't as cold. (གནམ་གཤེས་ཁ་སང་ལྟར་གྲང་མ་མེད་པའི་དོན།)

༢ not as much as/ not as many as གཉིས་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་ཚུལ།

- I haven't got as much money as you. (ང་ལས་ཚུད་ལ་དངུལ་ཉུང་བའི་དོན།)
- I don't know as many people as you. (ང་ལས་ཚུད་གྱིས་མི་མང་པོ་འོ་ཤེས་པའི་དོན།)
- I don't go out as much as you. (ང་ལས་ཚུད་རང་ཕྱི་རུ་མང་པོ་འགྲོ་བའི་དོན།)

༣ not as... as དང་than གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- Rome is not as old as Athens.
Athens is older than Rome. ('older as Rome ཞེས་འགྲིམ་ཅི་རུང་)
- Tennis isn't as popular as football.
Football is more popular than tennis.
- I don't go out as much as you.
You go out more than me.

༤ ང་ཆོས་ as me/ as him / as her སྐད་ཀྱི་འདི་ལྟར་བཀོལ་ཆོག་སྟེ།

- She's not as old as him. ཡང་ན་ She's not as old as he is.
- You don't work as hard as me. ཡང་ན་ You don't work as hard as I do.

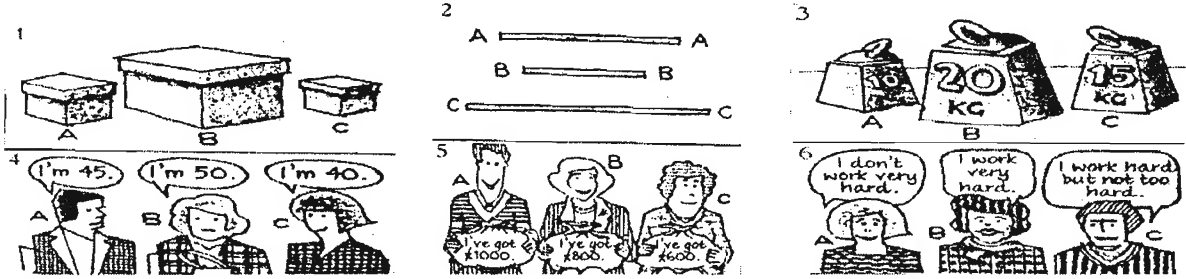
༥ ང་ཆོས་ the same as གི་འདི་ལྟར་བཀོལ་ཆོག་སྟེ།

- The weather today is the same as yesterday.
- My hair is the same color as yours.
- I arrived at the same time as Tim.



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

88.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་A/ B/ C གསུམ་གྱི་སྒྲོར་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. A is bigger than C but not as big as B.
2. A is
3. C is B but not
4. A is A but
5. B has got but
6. C works

88.2 as... as... བཀོལ་ནས་གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn't as old as Athens.
2. My room is bigger than yours. Your room is not
3. You got up earlier than me. I didn't
4. We played better than them. They
5. I've been here longer than you. You
6. She's more nervous than him. He

88.3 as དང་than གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་རུང་རེ་བཤད་སྐད་ནས་གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

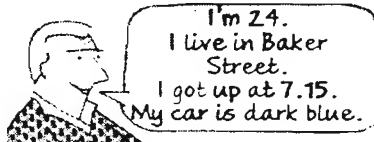
1. Athens is older than Rome.
2. I don't watch TV as much you.
3. You eat more me.
4. I feel better I felt yesterday.
5. Jim isn't as clever he thinks.
6. Belgium is smaller Switzerland.
7. Brazil isn't as big Canada.
8. I can't wait longer an hour.

88.4 གསུམ་གྱི་གནས་ཚུལ་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་བྱོང་གིས་the same age/ the same street སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

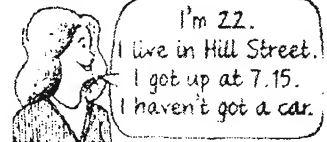
CAROLINE



ANDREW



JULIA



1. (age) Andrew is the same age as Caroline.
2. (street) Julia lives
3. (time) Julia got up
4. (color) Andrew's

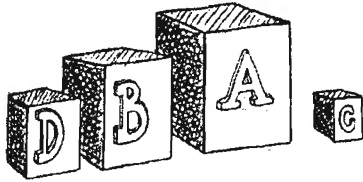


ཐོ་མོན་གྱི་དགུ་བ།

THE OLDEST

THE MOST EXPENSIVE

ཀ།



HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON (per person . per night)			
Europa Hotel	£95	Grosvenor	£60
Grand Hotel	£85.50	Bennetts	£58
Royal	£85	Carlton	£55
Asloria	£70	Star	£50
Palace	£65	Station	£45

Box A is bigger than Box B.

Box A is bigger than all the other boxes.

Box A is the biggest box.

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than all the other hotels in the town.

The Europa hotel is the most expensive hotel in the town.

Bigger / older / more expensive སྐད་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་བསྐར་ཆོག་ཡིན།

Biggest / oldest / most expensive སྐད་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་ཡིན།

ཁ ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་གི་ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་སྟོན་ཏེ་ most དང་ཡང་ན་ཆེས་སུ་ est སྐར་བ་ལས་ཟུབ་པ་ཞིག་ཡིན།

ཆོག་སྐར་བ་དང་ཆོག་སྐར་བ་ཆེས་ཆེ་གིས་འདོན་སྐབས་པའི་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་ + est སྐར་བ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

Old - oldest cheap - cheapest nice - nicest

ཡིན་ནའང་། good - best bad - worst

ཟུབ་ཆུ་ལ་ཞིབ་མེད་ཟུར་བཞུད་ 5 ལ་སྟོན། big - biggest hot - hottest

ཆོག་མཐའ་ནི་ y ཡིན་ལ་དེའི་སྟོན་གྱི་ཆོག་ཏེ་གསལ་བཤད་ཡིན་ཆོང་ཆོས་y དེ་ i ཏུ་བསྐར་ཆེས་སུ་+est སྐར་བ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

Easy - easiest heavy -heaviest pretty - prettiest

ཆོག་རིང་དང་ཆོག་སྐར་བ་ཆེ་གིས་འདོན་སྐབས་པའི་ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་སྟོན་ཏེ་ most ཞེས་སྐར་བ་དགོས།

Careful -most careful interesting - most interesting

ག ང་ཆོས་ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་གི་སྟོན་ཏེ་ངས་པར་ཏུ་theབཞོལ་སྦྱང་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- > The church is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.(=it is older than all the other buildings)
- > What is the longest river in the world?
- > Money is important but it isn't the most important thing in life.
- > Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?

ད the oldest / the best / the most expensive སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆེས་སུ་མིང་ཆོག་མ་སྐར་བར་བཞོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- > Ken is a good player but he isn't the best in the team.(the best = the best player)

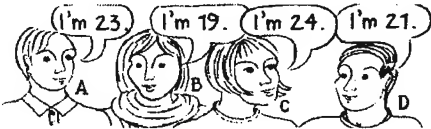
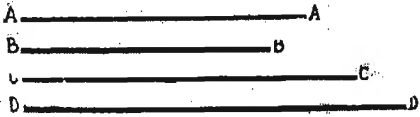
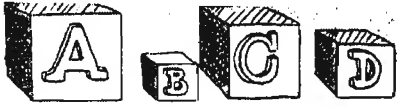
ཅ ཁྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་I've ever/ you've ever སྐད་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- > The film was very bad. I think it's the worst film I've ever seen.
- > What is the most unusual thing you've ever done?



གཤམ་ཐུང་།

89.1 བསྐྱར་ཆོག་གམ་ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



RESTAURANT A excellent
RESTAURANT B not bad
RESTAURANT C good but not wonderful
RESTAURANT D awful

(big / small)

(A/ D) A is bigger than D.

(A) A is the biggest.

(B) B is the smallest.

(long / short)

(C/ A) C is A

(D) D is

(B) B

(young / old)

(D/ C) D

(B)

(C)

(expensive/ cheap)

(D / A)

(C)

(A)

(good/ bad)

(A / C)

(A)

(D)

89.2 ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- This building is very old. It's the **oldest building** in the town.
- It was a very happy day. It was of my life.
- It's a very good film. It's I've ever seen.
- She's a very popular singer. She's in the country.
- It was a very bad mistake. It was I've ever made.
- It's a very pretty village. It's I've ever seen.
- It was a very cold day. It was of the year.
- He's a very boring person. He's I've ever met.

89.3 ཆེས་མཐོ་ཆོག་བཀོལ་ནས་རྒྱ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་གི་གོ་རིམ་ཡང་དག་པར་སྒྲིག་དགོས།

Sydney Brazil	Large	Country	planet	The USA	the solar system
Everest Jupiter	long	city	state	Africa	South America
Alaska the Nile	high	river	mountain	the world	Australia

- Sydney is the largest city in Australia.**
- Everest
-
-
-
-



མེ་ཆོན་དུ་འཕྱུར་བ། ENOUGH

༡



She can't buy a sandwich.
She hasn't got enough money.



He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't tall enough.

ཁ enough + མིང་ཆོན་པེད་སྤྱད་ཐུང་བ། དཔེར་ན། (enough + money = enough money)

- 'Is there enough sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
- We wanted to play football but we didn't have enough players.
- Why don't you buy a car? You've got enough money. ('money enough' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Enough + མིང་ཆོན་མ་སྤྱད་པར་བཞག་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- I've got some money but not enough to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car.)
- 'Would you like some more to eat?' 'No, thanks. I've had enough.'

ག བྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོན་གི་རྒྱུ་སྤྱད་ཐུང་བ། + enough སྤྱད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- 'Shall we sit outside?' 'No, it isn't warm enough.' (Not 'enough warm'.)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice but it isn't long enough. (=It's too short)

ཡིད་འཇོག་ཐུང་དགོས་པ།

Enough + མིང་ཆོན་སྤྱད་པ། enough ཡི་སྟོན་པེད་བྱད་ཆོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོན་སྤྱད་དགོས་པ།

enough money
enough time
enough people

tall enough
good enough
old enough

ང ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

Enough for (མི་འཕུལ་དངོས་)	This pullover isn't big enough for me. I haven't got enough money for a car.
Enough to (ལས་ཆོག་ཞིག་)	I haven't got enough money to buy a car. (for buy a car' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་) Is your English good enough to have a conversation? (for have ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
Enough for (མི་འཕུལ་དངོས་) to (ལས་ཆོག་ཞིག་)	There aren't enough chairs for everybody to sit down.



ཕྱི་ཚུན་གོ་གཅིག་ལ། TOO

ག



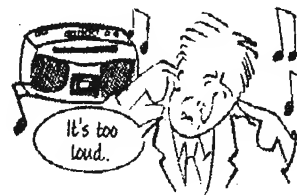
His shoes are too big for him.



There is too much sugar in it.

ཁ too + བྱད་ཚོས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་གམ་ནམ་པ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་སྦྱར་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- Can you turn the radio down? It's too loud. (སྒྲ་དེ་ངའི་འདྲིང་པ་ལས་ཆེ་བའི་དོན།)
- I can't work. I'm too tired.
- I think you work too hard.



ག too much / too many གཉིས་ནི་ང་ཚོས་བྱ་དངོས་ཞིག་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་འདྲིང་པའི་

ཚད་ལས་བརྒལ་བའི་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I don't like the weather here. There is too much rain. (ཆར་བ་དེ་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་འདྲིང་པ་ལས་མང་བ།)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies too much.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are too many cars.

ང too དང་ not enough གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ The hat is too big for him. ➤ The radio is too loud. Can you turn it down, please? ➤ There's too much sugar in my coffee. (རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་འདྲིང་པ་ལས་མང་བ།) ➤ I don't feel very well. I ate too much. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ The hat isn't big enough for him. (དེ་ཉེ་རང་ཚུང་དྲགས་པའི་དོན།) ➤ The radio isn't loud enough. Can you turn it up, please? ➤ There's not enough sugar in my coffee. (ང་མང་ཙམ་དགོས་པའི་དོན།) ➤ You're very thin. You don't eat enough.
--	---



ཅ ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཚིག་སྟེ།

Too ... for (མི་འམ་བྱ་དངོས་)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ These shoes are too big for me. ➤ It's small house – too small for a large family.
Too ... to (ལས་ཚིག་ཅིག་)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ I'm too tired to go out. (' for go out' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་) ➤ It's too cold to sit outside.
Too ... for (མི་འམ་བྱ་དངོས་) to (ལས་ཚིག་ཅིག་)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ She speaks too fast for me to understand



ཐོ་ཆེན་གོ་གཉིས་པ། HE SPEAKS ENGLISH VERY WELL. ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གོ་རིམ། ༡

༡ བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆོག་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

Sue reads a newspaper every day.

བྱེད་པ་པོ། ལས་ཆོག་ བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

སྤྱིར་བཏང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁྲོད་དུ་ལས་ཆོག་དང་བྱ་

བའི་ཡུལ་གཉིས་མཉམ་དུ་ཡོད། དཔེར་ན།



➤ Sue reads a newspaper every day. ('Sue reads every day a newspaper.' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ལས་ཆོག་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

He speaks English very well. ('he speaks very well English' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

I like Italian food very much. ('I like very much' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Did you watch television all evening? ('Did you watch all evening ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

We invited a lot of people to the party. ('We invited to the party... ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Paul often wears a black hat. ('Paul wears often... ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

I opened the door quietly.

Why do you always make the same mistake?

I'm going to borrow some money from the bank.

ཁ རུས་ཆོད་དང་ས་ཆའི་གོ་རིམ།

We went to a party last night.

ནམ་རྒྱུན་དང་ཆོས་ས་ཆའི་རུས་ཆོད་ཀྱི་སྒོན་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

➤ We went to a party last night. ('We went last night to a party.' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ས་ཆའི་མིང་།

(གནས་གང་ཞིག་ཏུ)

Liz walks **to work**

Will you be **at home**

I usually go **to bed**

We arrived **at the airport**

They've lived **in the same house**

Jim's father has been **in hospital**

རུས་ཆོད།

(རུས་ནམ་ཞིག་གམ་རུས་ཡུན་གཞི་དུ་ཡིང་)

every day. ('...every day to work' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

this evening? (not '... this evening at home? ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

early. (not '...early to bed' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

at 7 o'clock.

for 20 years.

since June.



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

92.1 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་ཐུབ་ནམས་འགྲིག་མིན་ལ་བལྟས་རྗེས་མི་འགྲིག་པ་ནམས་ནོར་བཙོས་བྱེད་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Did you watch all evening television? | <u>Did you watch television all evening?</u> |
| 2. Sue reads a newspaper every day. | <u>Ok</u> |
| 3. I like very much this picture. | ..... |
| 4. Tom started last week his new job. | ..... |
| 5. I want to speak English fluently. | ..... |
| 6. Jane bought for her friend a present. | ..... |
| 7. I drink every day three cups of coffee. | ..... |
| 8. Don't eat your dinner too quickly! | ..... |
| 9. I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds. | ..... |

92.2 གཤམ་གྱི་སྒྲོ་བྱིས་ནང་གི་ཆོག་ནམས་གོ་རིམ་ལྟར་སྒྲིག་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. (the door/ opened/ I / quietly) | <u>I opened the door quietly.</u> |
| 2. (two letters/ I / this morning/ wrote) | I |
| 3. (Passed / Paul/ easily/ the exam) | ..... |
| 4. (Ann / very well / French / doesn't speak) | ..... |
| 5. (A lot of work/ did/ I / yesterday) | ..... |
| 6. (London/ do you know / well?) | ..... |
| 7. (We/ enjoyed/ very much/ the party) | ..... |
| 8. (The problem/ carefully/ I / explained) | ..... |
| 9. (We / at the airport/ some friends / met) | ..... |
| 10. (Did you buy / in England/ that jacket?) | ..... |
| 11. (Every day/ do / the same thing/ we) | ..... |
| 12. (Football/ don't like/ very much / I) | ..... |

92.3 གཤམ་གྱི་སྒྲོ་བྱིས་ནང་གི་ཆོག་ནམས་གོ་རིམ་ལྟར་སྒྲིག་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. (to work/ every day/ walks / Liz) | <u>Liz walks to work every day.</u> |
| 2. (at the hotel/ I / early/ arrived) | I |
| 3. (goes/ every year/ to Italy/ Julia) | Julia |
| 4. (We/ since 1988/ here/ have lived) | We |
| 5. (in London/ Sue/ in 1960 / was born) | Sue |
| 6. (didn't go/ yesterday/ Paul/ to work) | Paul |
| 7. (to the bank/ yesterday afternoon/ went/ Ann) | Ann |
| 8. (I / in bed/ this morning/ my breakfast/ had) | I |
| 9. (In October/ Barbara/ to university/ is going) | ..... |
| 10. (I / a beautiful bird / this morning/ in the garden/ saw) | I |
| 11. (many times/ have been/ my parents/ in the garden/ saw) | I |
| 12. (my umbrella/ I / last night/ left/ in the restaurant) | I |
| 13. (To the cinema/ tomorrow evening/ are you going?) | Are |
| 14. (the children/ I / took/ this morning/ to school) | I |



ཐེ་ཆེན་གྱི་གསུམ་པ། ALWAYS / USUALLY / OFTEN ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་གོ་རིམ། ༡

༡༡

Always	often	ever	rarely	also	already	all
Usually	sometimes	never	seldom	just	still	both

གོང་གི་ཚིག་འདི་དག་ནི་ང་ཚོས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- My brother never speaks to me.
- She's always late.
- Do you often go to restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (ཡང་ན་ Sometimes I eat too much.)
- I don't want to go to the cinema. I've already seen the film.
- I've got three sisters. They're all married.

ཁ རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་གི་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆུང་མཛུགས་ རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་གི་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆུང་མཛུགས་ རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་གི་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆུང་མཛུགས་

always	go
often	play
never	feel
usually	get up

- I always go to work by car. ('I go always' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- Ann often plays tennis. ('Ann plays often tennis' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- You sometimes look unhappy.
- They usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We rarely (ཡང་ན་ seldom) watch television.
- Richard is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyball. (He plays also tennis ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I've got three sisters. They all live in London.

ཡིན་ནམ་ང་ཚོ་ཚིག་འདི་དག་ནི་ང་ཚོས་ནམ་རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

am	already
is	always
are	often
was	never
were	usually

- I am never ill. (not 'I never am ill' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- They are usually at home in the evenings.
- It is often very cold here in winter.
- When I was a child, I was always late for school.
- 'Where's Linda?' 'She's still in bed.'
- I've got two brothers. They're both doctors.

ག རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་གི་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆུང་མཛུགས་ རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་གི་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆུང་མཛུགས་ རྒྱུན་ལས་ཚིག་གི་སྤྱོད་པའི་ཆུང་མཛུགས་

ལས་ཚིག་དང་པོ།		ལས་ཚིག་གཉིས་པ།
will	always	go
can	often	find
do	never	remember
have		gone
has		been

- I will always remember you.
- It doesn't often rain here.
- Do you usually go to work by car?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Rome?
- A: Where's Linda?
B: She's just gone out. (she's གི་ she has ཡི་སྤྱོད་ཚིག་ཡིན)
- Where are your friends?
B: They've all gone to the cinema.



གཤམ་སྒྱུར།

93.1 སྤུའ་མི་ཡི་ངྱིས་ལན་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་བྱོང་གིས་ **often/ never** སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Do you ever play tennis? Yes, often. **Paul often plays tennis.**
2. Do you get up early? Yes, always. He
3. Are you ever late for work? No, never. He
4. Do you ever get angry? Sometimes
5. Do you ever go swimming? Yes, often.
6. Are you at home in the evening? Yes, usually.

93. སྒྲོ་ཁྱིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་བསྒྱུར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. My brother speaks to me . (never) **My brother never speaks to me.**
2. Susan is polite. (always) Susan
3. I finish work at 5 o' clock. (usually) I
4. Jill has started a new job. (just) Jill
5. I go to bed before midnight. (rarely)
6. The bus isn't late. (usually)
7. I don't eat fish. (often)
8. I will forget what you said. (never)
9. Have you lost your passport?(ever)
10. Do you work in the same place? (still)
11. They stay in the same hotel. (always)
12. Diane doesn't work on Saturday. (usually)
13. Is Tina here? (already)
14. What do you have for breakfast? (usually)
15. I can remember his name. (never)

93.3 also དང་མཉམ་དུ་སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་འོག་གི་འདྲི་ཆོག་ནམས་ལ་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།

1. Do you play football? (tennis) **Yes, and I also play tennis.**
2. Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I
3. Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and
4. Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes.....
5. Did you buy any clothes? (some books)

93.4 both དང་ all གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།



I live in London. I play football. I'm a student. I've got a car.	I live in London. I play football. I am a student. I've got a car.	I'm married. I was born in England. I live in new York.
---	--	---

1. **They both live in London.** They Foot ball.student Cars.
2. They.....married they England.

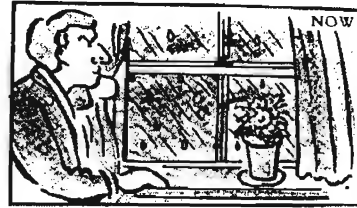


ཐེ་ཚན་གོ་བཞི་བ། STILL YET ALREADY སྐག་ས།

༡ still



An hour ago it was raining.



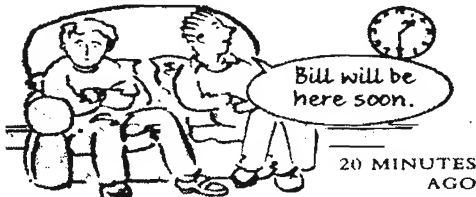
It is still raining now.

Still བོ་དོན་དེ་སྤར་བཞིན་འགྱུར་བ་མ་བྱུང་བའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I had a lot to eat but I'm still hungry. (ངས་ཟ་མ་ཟོས་ཀྱང་ད་ལྟ་ད་དུང་སྤར་བཞིན་སྐྱགས་པའི་དོན)
- 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've still got it.'
- 'Do you still live in Barcelona?' 'No, I live in Madrid now.'

ཁ དet

Yet བོ་དོན་དེ་སྤར་བཞིན་འགྱུར་བ་མ་བྱུང་བའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།



ནམ་རྒྱུ་ང་ཆོས་Yet བོ་དགག་ལུན་དང་འབྲི་ཆོག་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- A: Where's Diane?
B: She isn't here yet. (ད་དུང་མ་སླེབས་པའི་དོན)
- A: What are you doing this evening?
B: I don't know yet. (ད་དུང་ཤེས་མེད་པའི་དོན)
- A: Are you ready to go yet?
B: Not yet. Wait a moment. (ད་ལྟ་ད་དུང་ག་སྒྲིག་བྱས་མེད་པའི་དོན)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper yet?
B: NO, I'm still reading it.

yet དང་still གཉིས་བསྟར་བ།

- She hasn't gone yet. = she's still here. མོ་ད་དུང་སང་མེད་པའི་དོན། ('she is yet here' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I haven't finished eating yet. = I'm still eating. ངས་ད་དུང་ཟ་བཞིན་པའི་དོན།

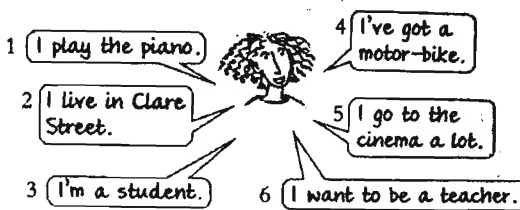
ག already བོ་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་རེ་བའི་སྒྲན་དུ་འགྲུབ་ཟིན་པའི་གནས་སྐབས་སུ་བཀོལ། དཔེར་ན།

- 'What time is John arriving?' 'He's already here.'
- 'I'm going to tell you what happened.' 'That's not necessary. I already know.'
- Ann doesn't want to go to the cinema. She has already seen the film.



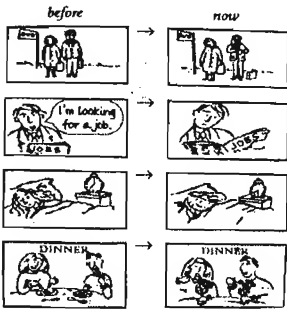
གསལ་བྱུང་།

94.1 ལོ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཡར་ཚུན་དུ་མངལ་བའི་ཁྱད་ཀྱི་སྐྱགས་མོ་ལོ་ས་ལ་དེ་རིང་ཡང་བསྐྱར་དུ་མངལ་བས། ཁྱད་ཀྱིས་still
བཀོལ་ནས་མོ་ལོ་འདྲི་ཆོག་ཁ་ཤས་འདྲི་དགོས།



1. Do you still play the piano.
2. Do you
3. Are
4.
5.
6.

94.2 ག་ཤམ་གྱི་གནས་སྐབས་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་ཁྱད་ཀྱིས་རིམ་རེ་ལ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གསུམ་རེ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. (before) They were waiting for the bus. (still) They are still waiting.
(yet) The bus hasn't come yet.
2. (before) He was (still) He
(yet)
3. (before) She (still)
(yet)
4. (before) They (still)
(yet)

94.3 yet བཀོལ་ནས་ག་ཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: Are you ready yet?
2. You are waiting for Ann to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody:
Ann
3. Mary did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now. You ask her:
you
4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him:

94.4 already བཀོལ་ནས་ག་ཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. What time is John arriving? He's already here.
2. Does Ann want to see the film? No, she has already seen it.
3. I must see Julia before she goes. It's too late. She
4. Do you need a pen? No, thanks. I One.
5. Shall I pay the bill? No, it's ok. I
6. Shall I tell Paul about the meeting? No, he..... I told him.

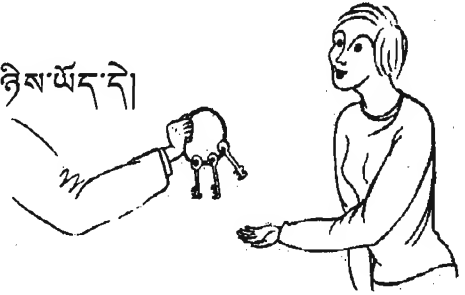


ཆེ་ཆེན་གྱི་ལུ་བ། GIVE ME THAT BOOK! GIVE IT TO ME! སྐད་ཀྱི་སྐད་

ག give lend pass send show

གང་གི་ལས་ཆེག་འདི་དག་ལ་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆུ་མ་པ་གཉིས་ཡོད་དེ།

- ༡) བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + give + དངོས་པོ་ + to གང་ཟག
 - I gave the keys to Liz
- ༢) བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + give + གང་ཟག + དངོས་པོ།
 - I gave Liz the keys.



ཁ བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + give + བྱ་དངོས་ + to + གང་ཟག་གི་ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆུ་མ་པ་དང་པོ་འདི་དཔེ་བཞིན་ཅི།

	བྱ་དངོས་	to + མི
That's my book. Give	it	to me.
These are Sue's keys, can you give	them	to her?
Can you give	these flowers	to your mother?
I lent	my car	to a friend of mine.
Did you send	a postcard	to Kate?
We've seen these photos. You showed	them	to us

ག བྱེད་པ་པོ་ + give + མིའམ་གང་ཟག་ + བྱ་དངོས་ཏེ་ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆུ་མ་པ་གཉིས་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་ཅི།

	མིའམ་གང་ཟག་	བྱ་དངོས་
Give	me	that book. It's mine.
Tom gave	his mother	some flowers.
I lent	John	some money.
How much money did I lend	him?	
I sent	you	a postcard. Did you receive it?
Linda showed	us	her holiday photos.
Can you pass	me	the salt, please?

གཞན་དང་ཆོས་ buy / get གཉིས་ཀྱང་ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་གཉིས་པའི་ཆུ་མ་པ་ལྟར་བཤུད་བྱས་ཆེག་དཔེ་རྒྱུ།

- I bought my mother some flowers.
- Can you get me a newspaper when you go out?

ང ཆེག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་གཉིས་བསྐྱར་བ།

- I gave the keys to Liz.
I gave Liz the keys. ('I gave to Liz the keys.' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- That's my book. Can you give it to me?
Can you give me that book? ('give to me that book' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

གལ་ཏེ་ཆེག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ནང་གི་བྱ་དངོས་དེ་it དང་ them གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཆབ་མཆོན་བྱེད་སྐབས་སུ་དང་ཆོས་ནམ་ཞུན་ཆེག་གྲུབ་

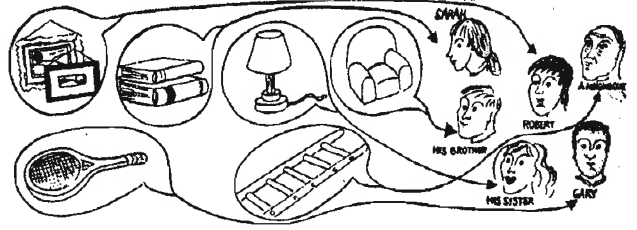
བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆུ་མ་པ་དང་པོ་འདི་དཔེ་བཞིན་ཅི། དཔེ་རྒྱུ།

- I gave it to her. ('I gave her it' ཞེས་མི་འབྲི་རུང་)
- Here are the keys. Give them to your father. ('Give your father them' ཞེས་མི་འབྲི་རུང་)



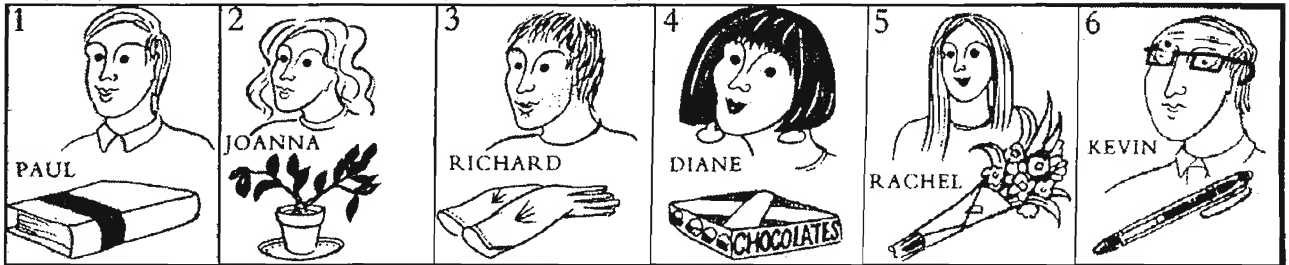
གསལ་བྱུང་།

95.1 རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་དངོས་པོ་དག་ནི་ལྷན་ཁུ་ལགས་
ལ་མ་དགོས་པས། ཁོས་དེ་ནམས་རང་གི་སྒྲིགས་པོ་ཆོར་
སྤང་བྱིན། སྤྱད་ཀྱིས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་he gave...ཟིན་
ནས་གསལ་བྱུང་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆོར་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. What did Mark do with the armchair? **He gave it to his brother.**
2. What did he do with the tennis racket? He have
3. What happened to the books? He
4. What about the lamp?
5. What did he do with the pictures?
6. And the ladder?

95.2 གསལ་བྱུང་རིམ་འོ་ནང་གི་དངོས་པོ་དག་སྤྱད་ཀྱིས་རང་གི་སྒྲིགས་པོ་ཆོར་ལེགས་སྐྱེས་སུ་འབུལ་བྱུང་ཁེམས་ཐག་
བཅད་བྱིན་པས། སྤྱད་ཀྱིས་རིམ་འོ་ལ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རེ་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. I gave **Paul a book.**
2. I gave
3. I
4.
5.
6.

95.3 can you give me../can you pass me ...? སྒྲིགས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་བཀོལ་ནས་འདྲི་ཆོག་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (you want the salt) (pass) **Can you pass me the salt.**
2. (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you
3. (you want my address) (give) Can you
4. (you need ten pounds) (lend)
5. (you want some information) (send)
6. (you want to see the letter) (show)
7. (you want some stamps) (get)

95.4 བརྒྱུ་ཤ་གཙོད་པ།

1. I gave to Liz the keys. / I gave Liz the keys. **I gave Liz the keys** is right.
2. I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the letter me? / did you send the letter to me ?
4. I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Ann's bag. Can you give it go her? / can you give her it?
7. I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.



མེ་ཆུང་གི་བྱ་བ། 6 AT 8 O' CLOCK ON MONDAY IN APRIL སྐག་ས།

༡ at བོ་རུས་ཆེད་ལ་བེད་སྤྱོད། དཔེར་ན།

- I start work at 8 o'clock.
- The shops close at 5.30.

at	8 o'clock
	10.30
	midnight

at



on



On བོ་གཟའ་འཁོར་དང་ཉིན་མར་བཀོལ། (ཆེས་གུང་ས་མཇུག་ཆེན་སྐག་ས)

- Goodbye! See you on Friday.
- I don't work on Sundays.
- The concert is on 22 November.

on	Sunday/Monday
	25 April/ 6 June 7, 2006
	New Year's Day

In བོ་ལ་དང་ལྷ་བ། རུས་ཆོག་ས་བཅས་ལ་བཀོལ། དཔེར་ན།

- I'm going on holiday in October.
- Emma left school in 1993.
- The garden is lovely in spring.

in	April / June
	1985/ 1750
	Summer /spring

in



ཁ ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

at the weekend
at night
at Christmas / at Easter
at the end of
at the moment

- Are you going away at the weekend?
- I can't sleep at night.
- Where will you be at Christmas? (but on Christmas Day)
- I'm going on holiday at the end of October.
- Are you busy at the moment?

༢ In the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening སྐག་ས།

Morning/ afternoon/ evening སྐག་ས་ཀྱི་སྔོན་དུ་རུས་ཆེད་སྔོན་པའི་ཆོག་གཞན་མེད་སྐབས། ང་ཆོས་དེ་དག་གི་སྔོན་དུ་ in བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- I always feel good in the morning.
- Do you often go out in the evening?

ཡིན་ནའང་། ང་ཆོས་གོང་གི་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་སྔོན་དུ་རུས་ཆེད་སྔོན་པའི་ཆོག་ཡོད་སྐབས་དེ་དག་གི་སྔོན་དུ་ in མི་བཀོལ་བར་ on བཀོལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night སྐག་ས་ལྟ་བུའོ།

- I'm meeting Jill on Monday morning.
- Are you doing anything on Saturday evening?

༣ ང་ཆོས་གཤམ་གྱི་རེ་ལྷ་མཁན་དང་གི་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་སྔོན་དུ་ at/on/in སྐག་ས་བཀོལ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་མི་རུང་།

this...(this morning/ this week)
last...(last August/ last week)
next...(next Monday/ next week)
every....(every day/ every week)

- Are you going out this evening?
- The garden was lovely last summer.
- I'm going on holiday next Monday.
(' on next Monday' ལྟར་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

༤ few minutes/ a few days/ six weeks/ two years སྐག་ས་ཀྱི་སྔོན་དུ་ང་ཆོས་ in བཀོལ་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

- Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes. (ད་ནས་མེ་འཁོར་འགྲོ་བའི་བར་སྐར་མ་བྱུག་ཡོད་པའི་དོན་དུ་)
- Goodbye! I'll see you in a few days. (ཉིན་ལ་གསལ་གྱི་རྒྱུ་སྟེ།)





གཤམ་ཐུང་།

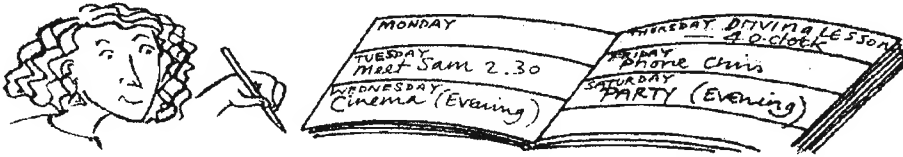
96.1 at/ on/ in སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཐུང་ཆ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. On 6 June. | 7 24 September | 13 Friday morning |
| 2. In the evening. | 8 Thursday | 14 Saturday night |
| 3. half past two. | 9 11.45 | 15 night |
| 4. Wednesday. | 10 Christmas day. | 16 The end of the day. |
| 5. 1987 | 11 Christmas. | 17 the weekend |
| 6. September | 12 the morning. | 18 winter |

96.2 at/ on/ in སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཐུང་ཆ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Goodbye! See you on Friday. | 11 I often go away the weekend. |
| 2. Where were you 28 February? | 12 I'm starting my new job 3 July. |
| 3. I got up 8 o'clock this morning. | 13 We often go to the beach Summer. |
| 4. I like getting up early..... the morning. | 14 George isn't here the moment. |
| 5. My sister got married..... May. | 15 Julia's birthday is January. |
| 6. Diane and I first met 1979. | 16 Do you work Saturday? |
| 7. Did you go out.... Tuesday. | 17 The company started 1969. |
| 8. Did you go out.....Tuesday evening? | 18 I like to look at the stars ... night. |
| 9. Do you often go out..... the evening? | 19 I'll send you the money the end of the month. |
| 10. Let's meet.... 7.30 tomorrow evening. | |

ལེ་ས་ཡི་གཟའ་ཇེས་མའི་ཉིན་ཐོ་ལ་བལྟས་ཇེས་ཐོད་ཀྱིས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Lisa is going to the cinema on Wednesday evening. | 4 She's got a driving lesson |
| 2. She has to phone Chris | 5 She's going to a party |
| 3. She isn't doing anything special | 6 She's meeting Sam |

96.4 In.... བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. It's 17.25 now. The train leaves at 17.30. | The train leaves in five minutes. |
| 2. It's Monday today. I'll phone you on Thursday. | I'll |
| 3. Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June. | My |
| 4. It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30. | Tom |

96.5 ཆོག་གྲུབ་གྱི་དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་ཐོད་ཀྱིས་ at/ on/ in སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁ་ཤས་ལ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་མི་དགོས་པས་དེ་དག་གི་ནང་དུ་ཐོད་ཀྱིས་རྟགས་- འདི་འབྲི་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I'm leaving on Friday. | 7 What are you doing the weekend? |
| 2. I'm leaving ... next Friday. (no preposition) | 8 I phone Robert every Sunday. |
| 3. I always feel tired the evening. | 9 Shall we play tennis next Sunday? |
| 4. Will you be at home this evening? | 10 I can't go to the party Sunday. |
| 5. We went to France last summer. I'm going out. | 11 I'll be back an hour. |
| 6. Laura was born 1975. | 12 I don't often go out night. |



གསལ་ཁྱུང་།

97.1 གསལ་གྱི་གནས་ཚུལ་དག་བསྟན་པའི་ཐད་ from... to / until/ since སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྟ་སྟེན་གྱི་ཐད་ནས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཅོ་དགོས།



Alex I live in England now. I lived in Canada before. I came to England in 1990.	Alice I live in Switzerland now. I lived in France before. I came to Switzerland in 1991.	Carol I work in a restaurant now. I worked in a hotel before. I started work in the restaurant in 1993.	Gerry I'm a salesman now. I was a teacher before. I started work as a salesman in 1989
---	--	--	---

- (Alex/ Canada/ 1982-1990) Alex lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.
- (Alex / Canada/ -1990) Alex lived in Canada 1990.
- (Alex/ England/ 1990-) Alex has lived in England
- (Alice/ France/ -1991) Alice lived in
- (Alice /Switzerland/ 1991-) Alice has lived in
- (Carol/ a hotel/ 1990-1993) Carol worked 1990.....
- (Carol / a restaurant/ 1993-) Carol has worked
- (Gerry/ a teacher/ 1983-1989) Gerry was a
- (Gerry/ a salesman/ 1989-) Gerry has been

for བཞུགས་པའི་ཆར་གྱི་ཐད་ནས་བཅོ་དགོས།

- (Alex/ Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
- (Alex / England) Alex has lived in England
- (Alice/ Switzerland) Alice has.....
- (Carol/ a hotel) Carol worded
- (Carol/ restaurant) Carol
- (Cerry/ a teacher) Gerry
- (Gerry/ a salesman) Gerry

97.2 until/ since/ for སྐད་ཀྱི་ལྟ་སྟེན་གྱི་ཐད་ནས་ཡང་སྟོན་དགོས།


- Mr. and Mrs. Kelly have been married since 1968.
- I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed 10 o'clock.
- We waited for Sue half an hour but she didn't come.
- 'Have you just arrived?' 'No, I've been here half past seven.'
- 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' '..... midnight.'
- David and I are good friends. We have known each other ten years.
- I'm tired. I'm going to lie down a few minutes.
- Don't open the door of the train the train stops.
- This is my house. I've lived here I was seven years old.
- Jack has gone away. He'll be away Wednesday.
- Next week I'm going to Paris..... three days.
- I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I worksix.
- 'How long have you known Ann?' '..... we were at school together.
- Where have you been? I've been waiting for you twenty minutes.



ཕྱི་ཆུང་གི་བརྒྱུད་པ། BEFORE AFTER DURING WHILE སྐག་སྤྱོད།


༡

before




before the film

during



during the film

after

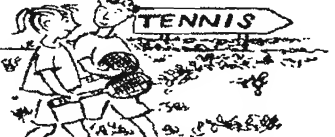


after the film

- Everybody is nervous before exams.
- I went to sleep during the film.
- We were tired after our visit to the museum.


༢

before




before we played

while



while we were playing

after



after we played

- Don't forget to close the window before you go out.
- I often go to sleep while I'm watching television.
- They went home after they did the shopping.

༣ during, while དང་ for སྐག་སྤྱོད།

ང་ཚོས་ during + མིང་ཆོག་བེད་སྤྱོད་ཕྱིད་ལ། while + ཕྱིད་པ་པོ་ + ལས་ཆོག་བཞག་པ་གོ་ལ་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

- We didn't speak during the meal.
- We didn't speak while we were eating. ('during we were eating' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

For + དུས་ཆེད་སྟོན་པའི་ཆོག་བེད་སྤྱོད་ཕྱིད། དཔེར་ན།

- We played tennis for two hours. ('during two hours' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I lived in London for a year. ('during a year' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

༤ ང་ཚོས་ before/after + རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་ལས་མ་མེད་བཞག་པ། (ལས་ཆོག་གི་རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་+ ing སྟར་བའི་རྒྱུ་སྤྱོད་པ་རང་ཆོས་ལས་མ་མེད་ཟེར།) དཔེར་ན།

- I always have breakfast before going to work. (before I go to work དང་འདྲཏོ)
- After doing the shopping, they went home. (after they did དང་འདྲཏོ)

ང་ཚོས་ before to go/ after to do སྐག་སྤྱོད་ཕྱིད་མི་རུང་སྟེ། དཔེར་ན།

- Before eating the apple, I washed it carefully. ('before to eat' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- I started work after reading the newspaper. ('after to read' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)



གསལ་བཤད་

98.1 Before/during/after/while སྐད་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་the concert/the exam/they went to Australia/the course/lunch/you are

waiting/the end/ the night སྐད་ཀྱི་ལས་གང་རུང་ལྟ་བུ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆེན་གྱུ་བ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Everybody was nervous before the exam.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning, and another two hours
3. The film was very boring. We left
4. Ann went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot.....
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London
6. A: Somebody broke a window did you hear anything? B: No. I was asleep all the time.
7. Would you like to sit down
8. 'Are you going home ?' 'No, we're going to a restaurant.'

98.2 during/ while / for སྐད་ཀྱི་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་སྟངས་ཀྱི་ནམས་ཆ་ཆ་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. We didn't speak while we were eating.
2. We didn't speak during the meal.
3. George phoned you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome five days.
5. Sally wrote a lot of letters..... she was on holiday.
6. The students looked very bored the lesson.
7. I fell out of bed I was asleep.
8. Yesterday evening I watched TV three hours.
9. I don't usually watch TV the day.
10. Do you ever watch TV you are having dinner?

98.3 ལས་ཁ་མེད་ (doing) བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆེན་གྱུ་བ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. After doing the shopping, they went home.
2. I felt sick after..... too much chocolate.
3. I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully beforeit.
4. I felt awful when I got up this morning. I left better after..... a shower.
5. After my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before to a foreign country, it's a good idea to learn a few words of the language.

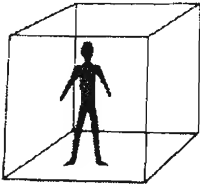
98.4 before དང་ after གཉིས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་ལས་ཁ་མེད་བཀོལ་ནས་གསལ་བཤད་ཀྱི་ཆེན་གྱུ་བ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. They did the shopping. Then they went home. After doing the shopping, they went home.
2. John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years. John worked
3. I read a few pages of my book. Then I went to sleep. Before
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired. After
5. Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out. Let's

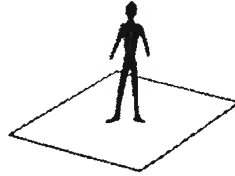


ཐེ་ཚན་གོ་དགུ་བ། IN AT ON བ་ཆ། ༡

ཀ in



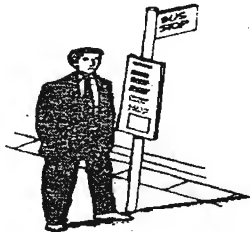
In a room
In a shop
In a car
In the water



in a garden
in a town
in the city center
in France

- 'Where's David?' 'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
- Angela works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
- I had a swim in the river / in the sea.
- Milan is in the north of Italy.
- I live in a town but I want to live in the country.

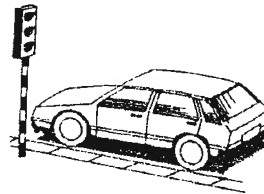
ཁ at



At the bus stop



at the door



at the traffic lights



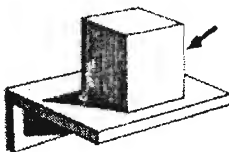
at her desk

- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Julia is working at her desk.

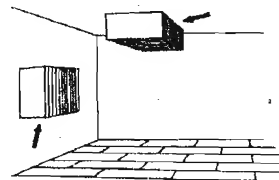
At the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...)

- Write your name at the top of the page.
- My house is at the end of the street.

ག on



On a shelf
On a plate
On a balcony
On the floor etc.



on a wall
on a door
on the ceiling etc.

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- There is a stamp on the envelope.



གཞན་ཡང་། on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motor - bike:

- Who is that man on the motor - bike?



ཕྱི་ཆོན་འགྲུ་ཐམ་ལ། IN AT ON ས་ཆ། ༡

ག in

In bed	'Where's Kae?' 'She's in bed.'
In hospital / in prison	David's father is ill. He's in hospital.
In a street	I live in a small street near the station.
In the sky	I like to look at the stars in the sky at night.
In the world	What's the largest city in the world?
In a newspaper / in a book	I read about the accident in the newspaper.
In a photograph / in a picture	You look sad in this photograph.
In a car / in a taxi	Did you come here in your car?
In the middle (of...)	There's a big tree in the middle of the garden.

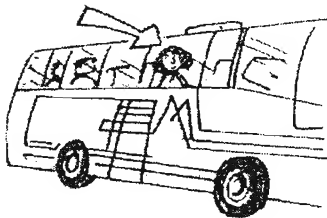
ཁ at

At home	Will you be at home this evening?
At work / at school	'Where's Kate?' 'She's at work.'
At university/ at college	Helen is studying law at university.
At the station / at the airport	Do you want me to meet you at the station?
At Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house) / at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's etc.	'Where were you yesterday?' 'At my sister's.'
	I saw Tom at the doctor's.
At a concert / at a party / at a football match	There weren't many people at the party.

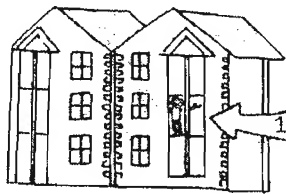
ནམ་རྒྱུ་ད་ཆོས་ buildings ,hotel, restaurants སྐག་ལ་ in དང་ཡང་ན་ at བེད་རྒྱུད་ཐུས་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

➤ We stayed at a nice hotel. ཡང་ན་ we stayed in a nice hotel.

ག on



On a bus



on the first floor



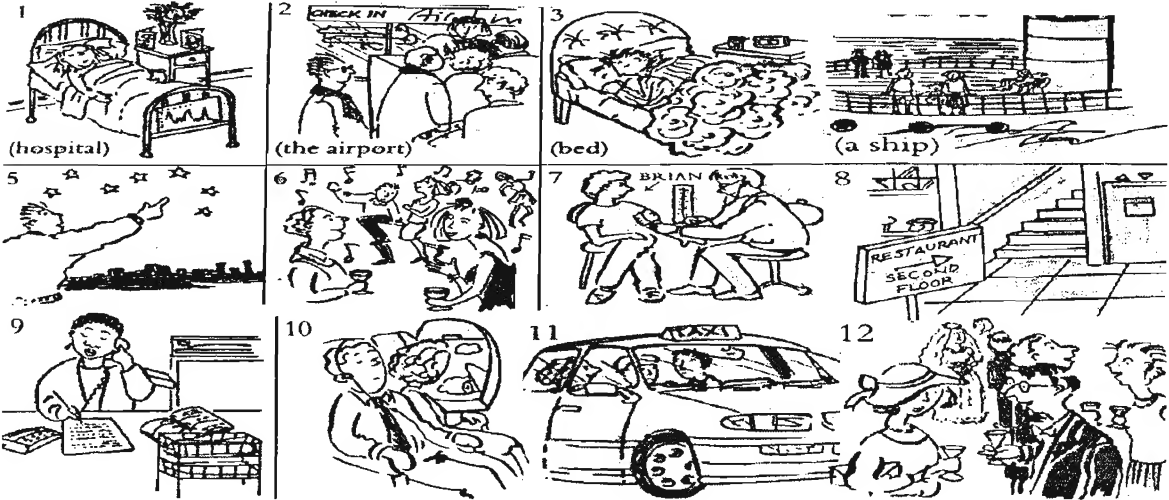
on the way from A to B

On a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship	➤ Did you come here on the bus?
On the ground floor / on the first floor etc.	➤ The office is on the first floor. (' in the first floor' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
On the way (to...) / on the way home	➤ I met Ann on the way to work / on the way home.



གཤམ་ཁྱེད་

100.1 རི་མོར་བལྟས་ཇེས་in/at/on སྐགས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་རི་མོའི་འདེབས་ཀྱི་སྒྲོར་ཁྱིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་ཀྱི་འདྲི་ཆོག་རྣམས་ལ་དྲིས་ལན་འདེབས་དགོས།



- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Where is she? in hospital. | 7. Where is Brian..... |
| 2. Where are they? | 8. Where is the restaurant? |
| 3. Where is he? | 9. Where is she? |
| 4. Where are they? | 10. Where are they? |
| 5. Where are the stars? | 11. Where are they? |
| 6. Where are they? | 12. Where are they? |


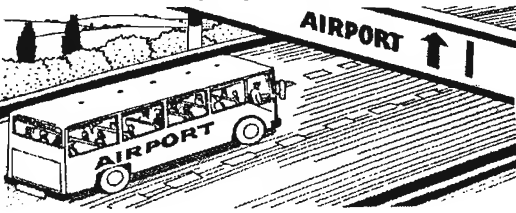

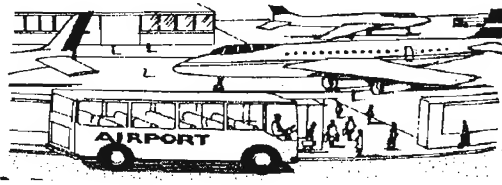
100.2 in/at/on སྐགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ལ་དག་པར་བཟླ་དགོས།

- Helen is studying law at university.
- There was a big table the middle of the room.
- What is the longest riverthe world?
- Were there many people the concert last night?
- Will you be home tomorrow afternoon?
- Who is that man this photograph? Do you know him?
- Where are your children? Are they school?
- George is coming by train. I'm going to meet him the station.
- Charlie is hospital. He's going to have an operation tomorrow.
- How many pages are there this book?
- 'Are you hungry after your journey?' 'No, I had a meal the train.'
- I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down the way here.
- 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he's his brother's.
- Don't believe everything you see the newspaper!
- I walked to work but I came home the bus.



ཕྱི་ཆོན་བརྒྱ་དང་གཅིག TO IN AT ས་ཆ། ༣

༡

To	In/ at (ཕྱི་ཆོན་99 དང་100 ལ་སྟེས)
<p>Go/come/ return/ walk སྐགས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལུ་ to...</p> <p>—— To London → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > We're going to London next week. > I want to go to Italy. > We walked from my house to the city center. > What time do you go to bed? 	<p>Be /stay / do something སྐགས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལུ་ in...</p> <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > Piccadilly Circus is in London. > My bother lives in Italy. > The main shops are in the city center. > I like reading in bed. <p>Be/stay / do something སྐགས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་ལུ་ at...</p> 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > The bus is going to the airport. > Sally didn't go to work yesterday. > I went to a party last night. > You must come to our house. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > The bus is at the airport. > Ann wasn't at work yesterday. > I met her at a party. > Ann stayed at her brother's house.

འ home

<p>Go/ come / walk + home (to མེད་པར་བསྐོས་དགོས)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I'm tired. I'm going home. (not 'to home' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་) > Did you walk home? 	<p>be/stay/ do + བྱ་དངོས་ + at home:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I'm staying at home this evening. > 'Where's Ann?' 'At home.'
--	---

ག arrive དང་ get

<p>Arrive in རྟེན་ལྷ་ཁབ་དང་གྲོང་བརྒྱུ་འབྱོར་བའི་སྐབས་ལུ་བསྐོས། དཔེར་ན།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > They arrived in England last week. ('arrived to England' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་) <p>Arrive at གཞན་པའི་ས་ཆ་གང་ཡིན་ལ་བསྐོས་སྟེན་བྱས་ཆོག་ལ། དཔེར་ན།</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > What time did you arrive at the hotel? ('arrive to the hotel' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་) <p>Get to + ས་ཆ་ཞིག</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > What time did you get to the hotel? > What time did you get to Paris? <p>Get home / arrive home (འབྲིས་ཆོག་མེད་པར་བསྐོས)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I was tired when I got home. ཡང་ན། I was tired when I arrived home. 	
---	--



གཤམ་སྒྱུར་

101.1 to འཕྲིན་ཡིང་ན་ in བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I like reading <u>in</u> bed. | 5 I was tired, so I stayed bed late. |
| 2. We're going Italy next month. | 6 What time do you usually go bed? |
| 3. Sue is on holiday Italy at the moment. | 7 Does this bus go the centre? |
| 4. I must go the bank today. | 8 Would you like to live another country? |

101.2 དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ཏེ་to དང་ཡང་ན་at བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།
 ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁ་ཤས་ལ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་མི་དགོས་པས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་རྟགས་ + འདི་སྟངས་ཆའི་ནང་དུ་བཞོལ་ཆོག

- Paula didn't go to work yesterday.
- I'm tired. I'm going ...to... home.(no preposition)
- Ann is not very well. She has gone the doctor.
- Would you like to come a party on Saturday?
- 'Is Liz home?' 'No, she's gone work.'
- There were 20,000 people the football match.
- Why did you go home early last night?
- A boy jumped into the river and swam the other side.
- There were a lot of people waiting..... the bus stop.
- We had a good meal ... a restaurant and then we went back ... the hotel.

101.3 དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ཏེ་to/ in/at སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།
 ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁ་ཤས་ལ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་མི་དགོས་པས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་རྟགས་ + འདི་སྟངས་ཆའི་ནང་དུ་བཞོལ་ཆོག

- I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying at home.
- We're going a concert tomorrow evening.
- I went New York last year.
- How long did you stay New York?
- Next year we hope to go Canada to visit some friends.
- Shall we go the cinema this evening?
- Is there a restaurant the station?
- After the accident three people were taken hospital.
- How often do you go the dentist?
- 'Is Diane here?' 'No, she's Ann's.'
- My house is the end of the street on the left.
- I went Mary's house but she wasn't home.
- There were no taxis, so we had to walk home.
- 'What did you study university?' 'I didn't go university.'

101.4 དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ཏེ་to/ at/ in སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།
 ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཁ་ཤས་ལ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་མི་དགོས་པས་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་རྟགས་ + འདི་སྟངས་ཆའི་ནང་དུ་བཞོལ་ཆོག

- What time do you usually get work?
- What time do you usually get home?
- What time did you arrive the party?
- When did you arrive London?
- What time does the train get Paris?
- We arrived home very late.

101.5 to/ in/ at སྐགས་བཞོལ་ནས་ཁྱོད་རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་སྐོར་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཏུ་འབྲི་དགོས།

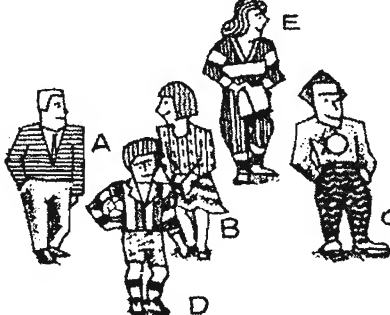
- At three o'clock this morning I was in bed.
- Yesterday I went
- At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was
- One day I'd like to go
- I don't like going
- At 9 o'clock yesterday evening I was



ཕྱི་ཆེན་བརྒྱ་དང་གཉིས། UNDER BEHIND OPPOSITE འབྲེལ་ཆོག ༡

༡

next to (or beside) / between / in front of / behind སྤྱི་བཞུགས་ཆུང་ལ།



A is next to B. ཡང་ན། A is beside B.

B is between A and C.

D is in front of B.

E is behind B.

གཞན་ཡང་།

A is on the left.

C is on the right.

B is in the middle (of the group)

༢

opposite / in front of སྤྱི་བཞུགས་ཆུང་ལ།



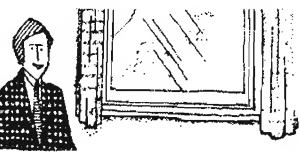
A is sitting in front of B.

A is sitting opposite C.

C is sitting opposite A.

༣

by (འགྲམ་དུ་ཐུང་ཏུ་ཡིན་ན།) ཡི་བཞུགས་ཆུང་ལ།



➤ Our house is by the sea. (= beside the sea)

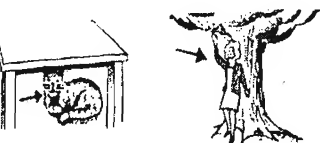
➤ Who is that man by the window?

➤ 'Is there a public phone here?' 'Yes, by the door.'

By the window

༤

under ཡི་བཞུགས་ཆུང་ལ།



➤ The cat is under the table.

➤ The girl is standing under a tree.


➤ I'm wearing a jacket under my coat.


Under the table


under a tree

༥

above དང་ below གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཞུགས་ཆུང་ལ།

A  A is above the line.
(ཐིག་ལས་མཐོ་བའི་དོན།)

B  B is below the line.
(ཐིག་ལས་དམའ་བའི་དོན།)



The pictures are above the shelves.

The shelves are below the pictures.



ཕྱི་ཆོན་བརྒྱ་དང་གསུམ། UP OVER THOUGHT འབྲེལ་ཆོན་ ༡

<p>to → </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Jane is going to France next week. ➤ We walked from the hotel to the station. ➤ A lot of English words come from Latin. 	<p> from</p>
<p> into (in)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ We jumped into the water. ➤ A man came out of the house and got into a car. ➤ Why are you looking out of the window? ➤ I took the old batteries out of the radio. <p>ང་ཆོས་put something in ཞེས་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་ཅིང་པ་ལས། ལྷན་ཏུ་put into ལྷན་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་མི་ཅིང་།</p>	<p> out of</p>
<p> on</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Don't put your feet on the table. ➤ Please take your feet off the table. ➤ I'm going to hang some pictures on the wall. ➤ Be careful! Don't fall off your bicycle. ➤ We got on the bus in Princes Street. 	<p> off</p>
<p> up</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ We walked up the hill to the house. ➤ Be careful! Don't fall down the stairs. 	<p> down</p>
<p> over</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ The plane flew over the mountain. ➤ I jumped over the wall into the garden. ➤ Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder. 	<p> under</p>
<p> through</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ A bird flew into the room through a window. ➤ The old road goes through the village. ➤ The new road goes round the village. ➤ The bus stop is just round the corner. ➤ I walked round the town and took some photographs. ➤ You can also use around (= round): ➤ We walked around the town. 	<p> round</p>
<p> along</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ I was walking along the road with my dog. ➤ Let's go for a walk along the river. ➤ The dog swam across the river. 	<p> across</p>
<p> past</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ They walked past me without speaking. ➤ A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital? ➤ B: Go along this road. Past the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left. 	<p> cinema bridge hospital</p>



ཐོ་ཚུགས་བརྒྱ་དང་བཞི། ON AT BY WITH ABOUT འབྲེལ་ཆོག ༩

༡

On holiday	Jane isn't at work this week. She's on holiday.
On television	We watched the news on television.
On the radio	We listened to the news on the radio.
On the phone	I spoke to Carol on the phone last night.
On fire	The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.
On time(ཐོ་ཚུགས་སྐབས་ལྟར་བཞི་དོན་ཅན་)	'Was the train late?' 'No, it was on time.'

༢

མི་དང་ལེ་དབར། ལུས་ཚིན། རྫོང་ཚད་སྟགས་ཀྱི་ཐོན་རུ་འཇུག་ཐུང་ཕྱིད་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Lisa got married at 21 ... (ཡང་ན་... at the age of 21)
- The car was traveling at 50 kilometers and hour when the accident happened.
- Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

༣

car / bus / plane / air / bike སྟགས་ཀྱི་ཐོན་རུ་འཇུག་ཐུང་ཕྱིད་དགོས་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- Do you like traveling by train?
- Jane usually goes to work by bike.

ཡིན་ནའང་ཀང་བ་ལ འཇུག་ཐུང་ཕྱིད་དགོས་པ་ལས་ by foot འཇུག་ཐུང་ཕྱིད་མི་ཕྱིད།

- She goes to work on foot. (ཀང་ཐང་རུ་སྐབས་པའི་དོན་ཅན་)

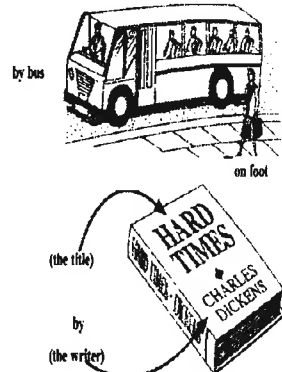
A book by... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... སྟགས་ཀྱི་

མིང་ + by + མིའམ་སྟག་ཆགས་ཀྱི་མིང་། དེ་ནི་མིའམ་སྟག་ཆགས་དེ་ཡིས་ལས་ཀ་དེ་བསྐྱབ་པའི་དོན་ཅན་།

- Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?
- Who is that painting by? Picasso?

By བྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཞན་དབང་ཅན་གྱི་ཐོན་རུ་འཇུག་ཐུང་ཕྱིད་པ། (ཐོ་ཚུགས་ 21 ལ་སྟོས་)

- I was bitten by a dog.



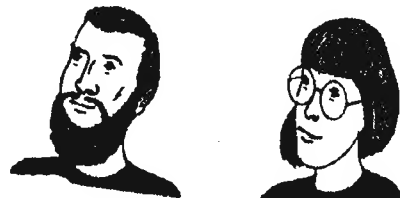
༤

with /without གཉིས་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་ཚུལ།

- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don't go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

A man with a beard / a woman with glasses སྟགས་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་ཚུལ།

- Do you know that man with the beard?
- I'd like to have a house with a big garden.



༥

talk / speak / think / hear / know about སྟགས་ཀྱི་བཞོལ་ཚུལ།

ལས་ཆོག + about + མིང་ཆོག་གམ་ཚབ་ཆོག་བཞོལ། དེ་ནི་མིང་ཆོག་གམ་ཚབ་ཆོག་དེའི་སྐོར་ཞིག་བཤད་པའམ་བསམ་པ། ཟླེང་བ། ཡང་ན་ཤེས་པའམ་གོ་བ་ སྟགས་ཀྱི་དོན་ཅན་།

- Some people talk about their work all the time.
- I don't know much about cars.

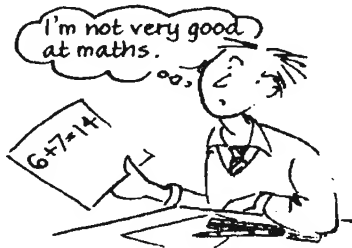
A book / a question / a programme about མིང་ཆོག་+ about + མིང་ཆོག་གམ་ཚབ་ཆོག་བཞོལ་ལ། དེའི་དོན་ཅན་གོང་དང་འདྲ།

Did you see the programme about computers on TV last night?



ཐྱེ་ཚན་བརྒྱ་དང་ཕྱེ། AFRAID OF... GOOD AT... སྟགས།

༡ afraid of / good at སྟགས་སྟེ། བྱད་ཚུལ་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་ + འབྲེལ་ཚིག་ + མིང་ཚིག་དང་ཡང་ན་ལས་ཁ་མིང་
བཞོལ་དགོས།



Afraid of ...	Are you afraid of dog?
Angry with somebody	Why are you angry with me? What have I done?
Angry about something	Are you angry about last night? (=something that happened last night.)
Different from ...	Ann is very different from her sister.
Fed up with ...	I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different.(=I've had enough of my job)
Full of...	The room was full of people.
Good at .../ bad at...	Are you good at maths? Tina is very bad at writing letters.
Interested in ...	I'm not interested in sport.
Married to...	Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
Nice / kind of somebody to...	It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.
(be) nice / kind to (somebody)	David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.
Sorry about (something)	I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that.
Sorry for (doing something)	I'm sorry for not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)

༢ འབྲེལ་ཚིག་ + ལས་ཁ་མིང་བཅུད་སྦྱང་བྱེད་ཚུལ། (for + telling)

ད་ཚུལ་འབྲེལ་ཚིག་ at / with / for སྟགས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་ལས་ཚིག་བཅུད་སྦྱང་བྱེད་དགོས་ཚེ། ལས་ཚིག་དེ་ངེས་པར་དུ་ལས་
ཁ་མིང་གི་ནང་པར་བཅོད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

I'm not very good at	telling	stories.
Are you fed up with	doing	the same thing every day?
I'm sorry for	not phoning	you yesterday.
Mark is thinking of	buying	a new car.
Tom left without	saying	goodbye. (=he didn't say goodbye)
After	doing	the shopping, they went home.



ཟླ་ཆ་ན་བསྟུ་དང་བྱུག་ LISTEN TO / LOOK AT སྐད་སྐད།



ག

ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སྤྱ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

Ask (གང་ཟག) for...	A man stopped me and asked me for money.
Belong to...	Does this book belong to you? (དེ་མ་འདི་ཚོད་ཀྱི་ཟེད་དམ)
Happen to ...	I can't find my pen. What's happened to it?
Listen to...	Listen to this music. It's beautiful.
Speak / talk to (གང་ཟག) about (བྱ་དངོས)	Did you talk to Paul about the problem? (ཁ་ཕར་ནང་དུ)
	Can speak to Chris, please?
Thank (གང་ཟག) for...	Thank you very much for your help.
Think about ... or think of...	He never thinks about (or of) other people.
	Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a new car.
Wait for ...	Don't go yet. Wait for me.
Write to (གང་ཟག)	I never get letters. Nobody writes to me.
ཡིན་ན་འང་། ང་ཆོས་'phone ཡི་ཆེས་སྤྱ་ཐད་ཀར་གང་ཟག་བཞོལ་བ་ལས་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་བེད་སྤྱོད་མི་བྱེད།	
I must phone my parents. ('phone to my parents' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)	

བ

Look at / look for / look after སྐད་སྐད།

Look at...		She's looking at her watch.
		Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.
		Why are you looking at me like that?
Look for འཆོལ་བའི་དོན་		He's lost his key. He's looking for it.
		I'm looking for Sarah. Have you seen her?
Look after...		
(བདག་སྤྱོད་ངམ་གཉོར་སྤྱོད་)		When Barbara is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.
		Don't lose this book. Look after it.

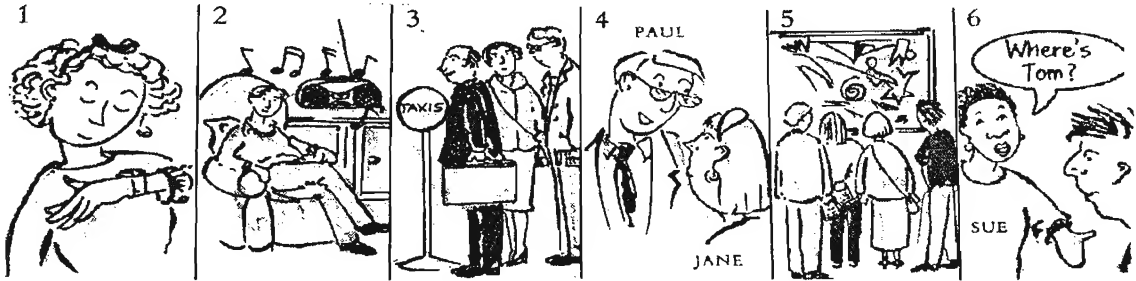
ག depend

ང་ཆོས་depend on...ཞེས་བཤད་ཆོག་གྱེ།	
A: Do you like eating in restaurants?	
B: Sometimes. It depends on the restaurant. (not 'it depends of)	
གཞན་ཡང་ང་ཆོས་ it depends what/ where / how སྐད་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཆེས་སྤྱ་on སྤྱོད་ཆོག་ལ་མ་སྤྱོད་ཀྱང་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།	
A: Do you want to come out with us?	
B: It depends where you're going. ཡང་། It depends on where....	
ཞིབ་དུ་ཤེས་ན་48 ལ་སྟོན།	



གསལ་སྤྱད།

106.1 རིམ་རིམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. She's looking <u>at</u> her watch. | 4 Paul is talking Jane. |
| 2. He's listening The radio. | 5 They're looking a picture. |
| 3. They're waiting a taxi. | 6 Sue is looking Tom. |

106.2 གསལ་སྤྱད་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆམས་ཆ་ཚང་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། གལ་ཏེ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་དགོས་ཆེ་སྟངས་ཀྱི་ཆ་ཚང་ནང་དུ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་བཞག་ཆོག་

- Thank you very much for your help.
- This is not my umbrella. It belongs a friend of mine.
- (On the phone) Can I speak Mr. Davis, please?
- (On the phone) Thank you phoning. Goodbye.
- What happened Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
- We're thinking going to Australia next year.
- We asked the waiter coffee but he brought us tea.
- 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends the book.'
- John was talking but nobody was listening what he was saying.
- We waited Karen until 2 o'clock but she didn't come.
- 'Are you writing a letter?' 'Yes. I'm writing Diane.'
- Don't forget to phone your mother this evening.
- He's alone all day. He never talks anybody.
- 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends the type or room.'
- Catherine is thinking Changing her fob.

106.3 at/ for/ after སྐབས་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆམས་ཆ་ཚང་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- I looked the newspaper but I didn't read it carefully.
- When you are ill, you need somebody to look you.
- Excuse me, I'm looking Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
- Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look yourself.
- I'm going to take a photograph of you. Please look the camera and smile.
- Garry is looking a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

106.4 It depends... བཞག་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆམས་ཆ་ཚང་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Do you want to go out with us? | <u>It depends where you're going.</u> |
| 2. Do you like eating in restaurants? | <u>It depends on the restaurant.</u> |
| 3. Do you enjoy watching TV? | It depends |
| 4. Can you do something for me? | It |
| 5. Are you going away this weekend? | ..... |
| 6. Can you lend me some money? | ..... |



ཕྱི་ཆེན་འབྱུང་དང་འབྱུང་།

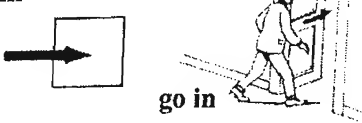


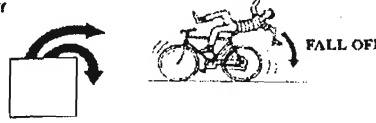
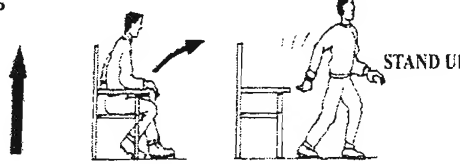
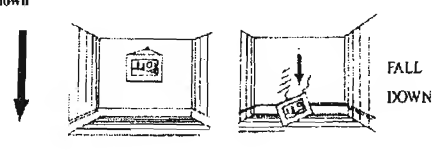


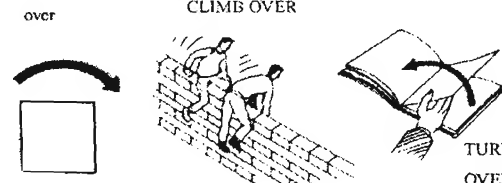
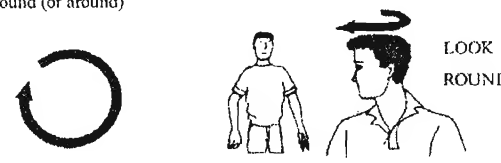
GO IN

FALL OFF

RUN AWAY

ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོག་སྒྲིག་པའི་ཆེད་དུ་

༡ ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོག་སྒྲིག་པའི་ཆེད་དུ་འབྱུང་དང་འབྱུང་། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོག་སྒྲིག་པའི་ཆེད་དུ་

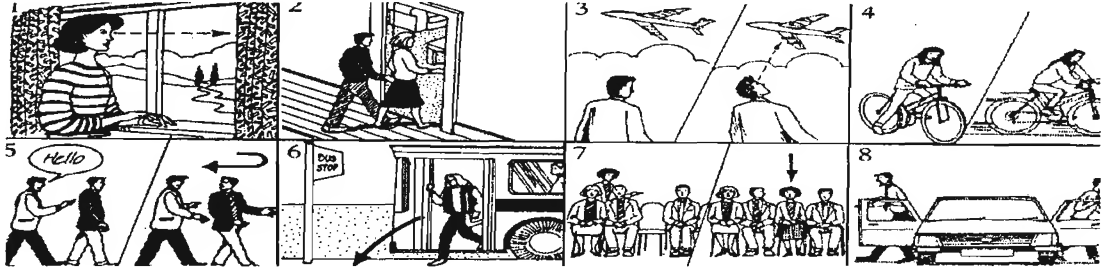
<p>in</p>  <p>➤ Ann opened the door of the car and got in. (=into the car ཞེས་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཆོག)</p> <p>➤ I waited outside the house. I didn't go in.</p>	<p>out</p>  <p>➤ The car stopped and a woman got out.(out of the car ཞེས་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཆོག)</p> <p>➤ I went to the window and looked out.</p>
<p>on</p>  <p>➤ The bus arrived and I got on.</p>	<p>off</p>  <p>➤ Be careful! Don't fall off.</p>
<p>UP</p>  <p>➤ He stood up and left the room.</p> <p>➤ I usually get up early. (=get out of bed)</p> <p>➤ We looked up at the stars.</p>	<p>down</p>  <p>➤ Would you like to sit down?</p> <p>➤ The picture fell down.</p> <p>➤ Lie down on the floor.</p>
<p>away or off</p>  <p>➤ The thief ran away. (ཡང་ན་ ... ran off)</p> <p>➤ Ann got into the car and drove away. (ཡང་ན་ drove off)</p> <p>Be / go away (= བཀག་ཞན་ཞིག་ཏུ་སྐད་པའི་དོན་དུ་)</p> <p>➤ Ann has gone away for a few days.</p>	<p>back</p>  <p>➤ We went out for dinner and then went back to our hotel.</p> <p>➤ Go away and don't come back.</p> <p>Be back:</p> <p>➤ Ann is away. She'll be back on Monday.</p>
<p>over</p> <p>CLIMB OVER</p>  <p>➤ The wall wasn't very high, so we climbed over.</p> <p>➤ Turn over and look at the next page.</p>	<p>round (or around)</p>  <p>➤ Somebody shouted my name, so I looked round (ཡང་ན་ around).</p> <p>➤ We went for a long walk. After six miles we turned round (ཡང་ན་ around) and went back.</p>



གཤམ་སྒྱུད།

107.1 Got/got/looked/rode/sat/turned/went སྔགས་ཀྱི་རྩེས་སྤྱོད་in/ out/ up སྔགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་

ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. I want to the window and <u>looked out</u> . | 5 I said hello and he |
| 2. The door was open, so we | 6 The bus stopped and she |
| 3. He heard a plane, so he | 7 There was a free seat, so she |
| 4. She got on her bike and | 8 A car stopped and two men |

107.2 out/away/back སྔགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. 'What happened to the picture on the wall?' 'It fell down.'
2. Please don't go.....! Stay here with me.
3. She heard a noise behind her, so she looked
4. I'm goingnow to do some shopping. I'll be..... at 5o'clock.
5. I'm feeling very tired. I'm going to lie on the sofa.
6. When you have read this page, turn and read the other side.
7. Jim is from Canada. He lives in London now but he wants to go to Canada.
8. We haven't got a key to the house, so we can't get
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get
10. Ann is going on holiday next month. She's going on the 5th and coming on the 24th.

107.3 Break/fall/give/slow/Take/carry/get/hold/speak/wake སྔགས་ཀྱི་རྩེས་སྤྱོད་on/ off/ up/ down/ over སྔགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ནམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས། དགོས་མཁོར་གཞིགས་ནས་ལས་ཆོག་གི་གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ཆོག་

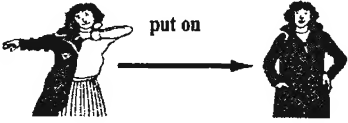
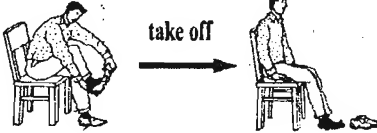
1. I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and woke up at eight o'clock the next morning.
2. 'It's time to go.' '.....a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
3. The trainand finally stopped.
4. I like flying but I'm always nervous when the plane
5. How was your exam? How did you
6. It's difficult to hear you. Can youa little?
7. This car isn't very good. It hasmany times.
8. When babies try to walk, they sometimes
9. I told him to stop but he Perhaps he didn't hear me.
10. I tried to find a job but I It was impossible.



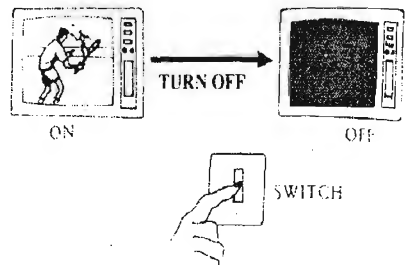
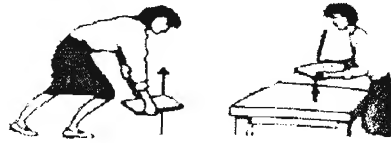
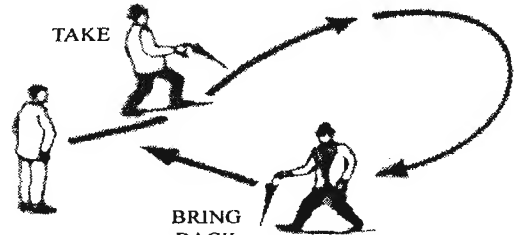
ཕྱི་ཚེན་བརྒྱ་དང་བརྒྱད། PUT ON YOUR SHOES PUT YOUR SHOES ON ལས་ཚོག་ཚོག་ཚོགས་ ༩

༧

སྐབས་རེར་ལས་ཚོག་ཚོག་ཚོགས་ལ་བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་མེད་པར་བཀོལ་ཚོག་ དཔེར་ན།

<p>ལས་ཚོག་ བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།</p> <p>Put on your coat</p>  <p>Put on your coat</p> <p>ཡང་ན་ put your coat on</p> <p>ང་ཚོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཚོག་སྟེ།</p> <p>Put it on ('put on it ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</p> <p>Here's your coat. Put it on.</p> <p>It was cold, so I put on my coat.</p> <p>(ཡང་ན་ I put my coat on)</p>	<p>ལས་ཚོག་ བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།</p> <p>take off your shoes</p>  <p>Take of your shoes</p> <p>ཡང་ན་ Take your shoes off</p> <p>ཡིན་ནའང་། it/ them གཉིས་ནི་ནམ་རྒྱུན་on /of ཡི་ཚུན་བྱ་བའི་སྤྱད་བྱེད་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།</p> <p>Take them off (take off them ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)</p> <p>I'm going to take off my shoes.</p> <p>(ཡང་ན་ take my shoes off)</p> <p>Your shoes are dirty. Take them off.</p>
--	--

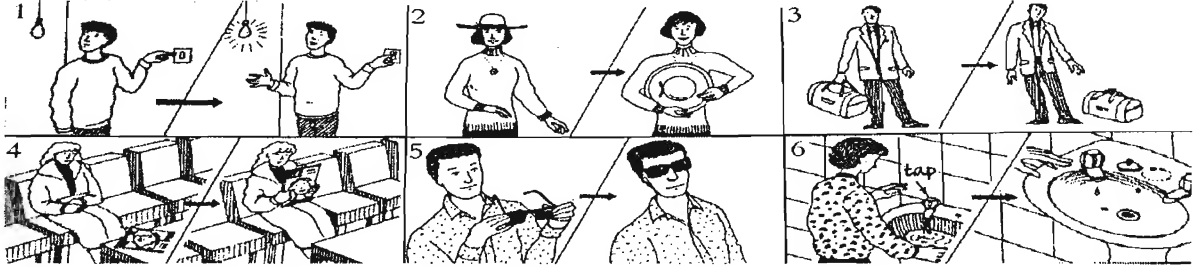
བ ལས་ཚོག་ཚོག་ཚོགས་མང་ཤས་ཀྱི་རྗེས་སུ་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

<p>Turn on / turn off (སྟོག་དང་འཕྲུལ་འཁོར་, རྒྱ་སྤྱད་འཕྲུལ་འཁོར་སྟགས་ལ་བཀོལ་བ་དཔེར་ན།)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > It was dark, so I turned on the light. (ཡང་ན་འདི་ལྟར་འབྲི་དགོས་ I turned the light on) > I don't want to watch this programme. You can turn it off. <p>གཞན་ཡང་switch on / switch off (སྟོག་དང་འཕྲུལ་འཁོར་, རྒྱ་སྤྱད་འཕྲུལ་འཁོར་སྟགས་ལ་བཀོལ་སྤྱད་བྱེད།)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > I switched on the light and switched off the television. 	 <p>ON TURN OFF OFF</p> <p>SWITCH</p>
<p>Pick up / put down:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me? > I stopped reading and put my book down. (ཡང་ན་ put down my book) 	
<p>Bring back / take back / give back / put back:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > You can take my umbrella but please bring it back. > I took my new sweater back to the shop. It was too small for me. > I've got Diane's keys. I must give them back to her. > I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope. 	 <p>TAKE BRING BACK</p>



གཤམ་སྒྱུབ་

108.1 རི་མོ་འོ་ལ་གི་མི་དེ་དག་གིས་ཅི་ཞིག་བྱེད་བཞིན་ཡོད་མེད་ལ་བལྟས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



- | | |
|---|-------------|
| 1. He <u>turned on the light.</u> (or <u>turned the light on.</u>) | 4 She |
| 2. She | 5 He |
| 3. He | 6 She..... |

108.2 གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་འདི་དག་ཁྱོད་ཀྱིས་བཟོ་སྒྲུབ་སྟེ་གསུམ་བཞེད་ལ་ནས་བཟོས་ཆོག

I turned on the radio.	I <u>turned the radio on.</u>	I <u>turned it on.</u>
He put on his jacket.	He	He
She	She took her glasses off.	.....
Put down your pens.	.....	.....
They gave back the money.	.....	.....
.....	I turned the lights off.	.....

108.3 **Bring/pick/switch/Take/turn.** སྤྲོད་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཆེས་སུ་it/ them དང་དེའི་ཆེས་སུ་on/ off/ up/ back སྤྲོད་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

- I wanted to watch something on television. so I turned it on.
- I bought a lamp but it doesn't work. I'm going to to the shop.
- There were some gloves on the floor, so I..... and put them on the table.
- When I finished working on the computer, I
- Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to

108.4 རེ་ལྷ་མིག་གཡས་གཡོན་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཆོག་དག་བཞེད་ལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་རྣམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།
ལས་ཆོག་དེ་དག་གི་ནང་དོན་ཟུར་བཞེད་པར་གསལ།

Your cigarette	a glass	or me/ it/ them	In	up	on	away
a pair of shoes	ten houses		out	down	over	round

- They knocked ten houses down. ཡང་ན་down ten houses when they built the new road.
- That music is very loud. Can you turn it down/
- I knockedand broke it.
- If you want to know what a word means, you can look in a dictionary.
- I want to keep these magazines. Please don't throw
- Somebody gave me a form and told me to fill
- I tried in the shop but I didn't buy them.
- I visited the school. One of the teachers showed
- 'Do you play the piano?' 'No, I started to learn but I gave after a month.'
- You're not allowed to smoke here. Please put



ཆེ་ཆུན་བརྒྱ་དང་དབྱ AND BUT OR SO BECAUSE སྐད་ཀྱིས།

༡ and but or so because

ང་ཆོས་གོང་གསལ་གྱི་ཆོག་འདི་དག་ནི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཐུང་བ་གཉིས་རེ་ཡན་ཚུན་སྤྱད་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་བཟོ་བའི་
སྐབས་སུ་བཤེད་སྟུང་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

ཆོག་གྲུབ་དང་པོ། The car stopped. ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པ། The driver got out.
The car stopped and the driver got out.

ཁ and / but / or

ཆོག་གྲུབ་དང་པོ།		ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པ།
We stayed at home	and	(we)* watched TV.
My sister is married	and	(she)* lives in London.
He doesn't like her	and	she doesn't like him.
I bought a newspaper	but	I didn't read it.
It's a nice house	but	it hasn't got a garden.
Do you want to go out	or	are you too tired.

འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ཁྲིད་དུ་ང་ཆོས་ we དང་she གཉིས་བསྐྱར་སྒྲིབ་བྱེད་མི་དགོས།

གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ལས་ང་ཆོས་ཤེས་ཐུབ་པ་ནི་and དེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་ཆེས་མའི་དོན་གཉིས་ཀྱི་བར་དུ་བཀོལ་བ། དཔེར་ན།

- > I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair and fell sleep.
- > Ann is at work, sue has gone shopping and Chris is playing football.

ག so བྱི་གནད་དོན་ཞིག་གི་མཚུགས་ལྟར་བཤེད་སྟུང་བའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཀོལ་སྟུང་བྱེད། (དེར་བརྟེན་ནས་དེའི་ཕྱིན་ཀྱིས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།

ཆོག་གྲུབ་དང་པོ།		ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པ།
It was very hot,	so	I opened the window.
The water wasn't clean,	so	we didn't go swimming.
They like films,	so	they often go to the cinema.

ང because བྱི་གནད་དོན་ཞིག་གི་རྒྱ་ཕྱིན་ལྟར་བཤེད་སྟུང་བའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཤེད་སྟུང་བྱེད། (རྒྱ་མཚན་ནི་)

ཆོག་གྲུབ་དང་པོ།		ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པ།
I opened the window	because	it was very hot.
We didn't go swimming	because	the water wasn't clean.
Lisa is hungry	because	she didn't have breakfast.

Because བྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་ཡང་བཤེད་སྟུང་བྱས་ཆོག

- > Because the water wasn't clean, we didn't go swimming.

ཅ ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་གི་ནང་དུ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་གཅིག་ལས་མང་བ་ཡོད་སྟེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- > It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.
- > I always enjoy visiting London, but wouldn't like to live there because it's too big.



གསལ་བཤད།

109.1 རེ་བྱ་མིག་གཡས་གཡོན་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་and/ but/ or སྟགས་ཀྱིས་པན་ཚུན་སྐྱེལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཡང་དག་པ་གཅིག་བཟོ་དགོས།

I stayed at home.	I didn't have your number.
I bought a newspaper.	I didn't read it.
I went to the window.	I went by bus this morning.
I wanted to phone you.	I swam to the other side.
I jumped into the river.	I watched television.
I usually drive to work.	I looked out.
Do you want me to come with you?	Shall I wait here?

1. I stayed at home and watched television.
2. I bought a newspaper but I didn't read it.
3. I
4.
5.
6.
7.

109.2 རི་མོར་བལྟས་རྗེས་and/ but/so/because སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཚུལ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།



1. It was very hot, so he opened the window.
2. They didn't play tennis
3. They went to the museum
4. Bill wasn't hungry,
5. Ann was late
6. Sue said

109.3 and/ but སྟགས་བཀོལ་ནས་བྱུང་གིས་ཁ་སང་ཅི་ཞིག་བསྐྱབ་མིན་སྐོར་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2. (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3. (but)
4. (and)
5. (so)
6. (because)



གསལ་ཁྱུང་།

110.1 when ཡི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་བརྒྱུད་སྒྲིལ། རེ་ལུ་མིག་གཉིས་ལས་ཚིག་བདམས་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

I went out	I switched off the TV
I'm tired	I always go to the same place
I phoned her	there were no rooms
I go on holiday	it was raining
The programmer ended	there was no answer
I arrived at the hotel	I like to watch TV

1. When I went out, it was raining.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

110.2 རེ་ལུ་མིག་ལས་ཚིག་བདམས་ནས་གསལ་ཁྱུང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་རྒྱུ་ལང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

Somebody broke into the house	before they came here	when they heard the news
before they crossed the road	while they were away	they didn't believe me
they went to live New Zealand		

1. They looked both ways before they crossed the road.
2. They were very surprised
3. After they got married,
4. The letter arrived
5. Where did they live
6. While they were asleep,
7. When I told them the news,

110.3 བརྒྱུད་ཤ་གཙོང་པ།

1. I stay / I'll stay here until you come/ you'll come back. **I'll stay** and **you come** are right.
2. I'm going to bed when I finish/ I'll finish my work.
3. We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
4. Julia is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves/ she'll leave.
5. Don't go out yet, wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come/ we'll come and visit you when we're/ we'll be in England again.
7. When I come/ I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring/ I'll bring the photographs.
8. I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9. 'Don't forget to give me your address.' 'Ok, I give / I'll give it to you before I go/ I'll go.'

110.4 རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་སྒྲོ་དང་བསྐྱུན་ནས་གསལ་ཁྱུང་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. Can you close the window before **you go out**?
2. What are you going to do when
3. When I have more time,
4. I'll wait for you while
5. When I start my new job,
6. Will you be here when



ཕྱི་ཆ་ཅན་འབྲུ་དང་འབྲུ་གཅིག་ IF WE GO... IF YOU SEE ... སྟགས།

ག



if བོ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་མཚན་དབུས་གཉིས་ཀྱི་གང་རུང་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཆོག་ དཔེར་ན།

If ..., (ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་མཚན་བེད་སྤྱོད་ཕྱིན་པ།)
If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.
If you're hungry, have something to eat.
If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

...if (ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་ཕྱིན་པ།)
It will be cheaper if we go by bus.
You'll miss the train if you don't hurry.
I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
Do you mind if I use your phone? (=Is it OK if I use it?)

ཁ་བརྒྱུད་ཁྱོད་དུ་ང་ཆོས་ནམ་རྒྱན་if ཡོད་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཆ་ཤས་དེ་ཁེར་རྒྱུང་དུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་ཕྱིན། དཔེར་ན།

- 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can get a ticket.'

ཁ ཁྱོད་ཀྱི་སྐད་ཀྱི་མཚན་ལྟར་... སྟགས། .

ང་ཆོས་if ཡི་རྒྱུ་སྐྱུར་བཏང་ད་ལྟ་བུ་ལས་མ་འོངས་པ་བེད་སྤྱོད་ཕྱིན་མི་རུང་། དཔེར་ན།

- If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to phone me?
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. ('if I will be' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.
- What shall we do if it rains? ('if it will rain ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ག if དང་when

If I go out བོ་མ་འོངས་པར་ཕྱི་རུ་འགྲོ་མིན་མོད། འོན་ཀྱང་ངེས་གཏན་གྱི་ཆ་རྒྱུང་ཞུ།

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Perhaps. If I go out, I'll close the window.

When I go out བོ་ཕྱི་རུ་འགྲོ་བར་གཏན་འཁེལ་ཡོད་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་བཞག་ལྟོ་སྤྱོད་ཕྱིན།

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I'll close the window.
- When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. ('when I'm late' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)
- We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain. ('when it doesn't rain ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)





གསལ་བྱུང་།

111.1 if ཡི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོ་བརྒྱུ་མཁུ་སྤྱོད་། རེ་བྱ་མིག་གཉིས་ལས་ཚིག་བདམས་ནས་ཚིག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

You don't hurry	we can have lunch now
You pass the exam	you can have them
You fail the exam	I can lend you some
You don't want this magazine	you'll get a certificate
You want those pictures	you'll be late
You're busy now	I'll throw it away
You're hungry	we can talk later
You need money	you can do it again

1. If you don't hurry, you'll be late.
2. If you pass
3. If
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.

111.2 འགྲིག་མེན་བརྟན་ཤ་གཙོད་པ།

1. If I'm / I'll be late this evening, don't wait for me. **I'm** is right.
2. Will you write to me if I give / I'll give you my address/
3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I phone / I'll phone you in the evening.
5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Martin and Julia get / will get married.
6. Do you go / will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

111.3 རང་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་ཚུལ་ལ་གཞིགས་ནས་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཚུལ་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
2. If you don't hurry you'll miss the train.
3. I don't want to go swimming if
4. If you go to bed early tonight,
5. Turn the television off if
6. Tina won't pass her exams if
7. If I have time tomorrow,
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if

111.4 if དང་ཡང་ན་when བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་ཚིག་གྲུབ་ཚུལ་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
2. I'm going to do some shopping now. I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I'm going to do some shopping now I go, will you come with me?
4. you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5. Do you mind I close the window?
6. John is still at school. he leaves school, he wants to go to university.
7. Shall we have a picnic tomorrow the weather is good?
8. We're going to Madrid next week. We haven't got anywhere to stay – we hope to find a hotel we arrive. I don't know what we'll do we don't find anywhere.



ཕྱི་ཆོན་འབྲུ་དང་འབྲུ་གཉིས། IF I HAD... IF WE WENT... སྟགས།

ག

ཏན་ནི་ཆངས་འཁོར་མཐོགས་པའི་རིགས་ལ་དག་འཛིན། འོན་ཀྱང་ཁོར་ཆངས་
འཁོར་མཐོགས་པ་ཞིག་ད་ལྟ་མེད། རྒྱ་མཚོན་ནི་ཁོར་དཔལ་འདང་ངེས་ཞིག་མེད་
པས་སོ།

If he had the money, he would buy a fast car.

ནཱ་རྒྱན་had གི་འདས་པར་བེད་སྤྱད་ཅིང་མོད། འོན་ཀྱང་། ཆོག་གྲུབ་འདིའི་ནང་དུ་འདས་པའི་དོན་མ་ཡིན། If he had the money གི་གལ་ཏེ་ད་ལྟ་ཁོར་
སྒྲར་མ་ཡོད་ཆོ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན། (ཁོར་སྒྲར་མ་མེད་པའི་དོན།)



If	I You It They etc.	Had / knew / lived / went Didn't have / know / go Was / were..., Could...,	I You It They	Wouldn't Couldn't	buy... be ... have... go...
----	-----------------------------	---	------------------------	----------------------	--------------------------------------

ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

- If he had the money, he would buy a car. (If ...ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་མགོར་བཞག་ལ་བ)
- ཡང་ན། He would buy a car if he had the money. (If...ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་དུ་བཞག་ལ་བ)

I'd / she'd / they'd སྟགས་ནི་I would / she would / they would སྟགས་ཀྱི་བསྐྱུས་འབྲིའི་ནཱ་པ་ཡིན།

- I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. We'd get wet if we went out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She wouldn't be happy if she lived in the country.
- If you didn't have a job, what would you do? (ཡིན་ན་འདྲ་བྱུང་ལ་ལས་ཀ་ཤིག་ཡོད་)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I'd help you if I could. (ཡིན་ན་འདྲ་བྱུང་ངས་མི་ཐུབ་པའི་དོན།)
- If we had a car, we could travel more. (ཡིན་ན་འདྲ་བྱུང་ང་ཚོར་ཆངས་འཁོར་མེད་པས་ང་ཚོ་བརྗེ་སྐྱོར་ཏུ་འགྲོ་མ་ཐུབ།)

བ If (I) was / were...

ང་ཆོས་ if + I / he / she / it + was / were གཉིས་རིས་མེད་དུ་བེད་སྤྱད་བྱས་ཆོག་དཔེར་ན།

- It's cold. If I were you, I'd put your coat on. (ཡང་ན་ if I was you...)
- It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there if I was you. (ཡང་ན་ If I were you)
- It would be nice if the weather were (ཡང་ན་ was) better.

བསྐྱུར་བ།



If I have / if it is སྟགས།	If I had / If it was སྟགས།
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ I must go and see Ann. If I have time, I will go today. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་ང་ལ་དུས་ཚོད་ཡོད་མྱོད་གལ་མྱོད་དེ་ལྟར་ཡིན་ཆོང་བརྗེ་རུ་འགྲོ་ངེས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།) ➤ I like that jacket. I'll buy it if it isn't too expensive. (གལ་ཏེ་ལུ་བ་དེ་གོང་ཆེན་ཞིག་མིན་ཆོང་ས་ཉོ་ངེས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།) ➤ I'll help you if I can. (གཅིག་བྱས་ན་ངས་རོགས་རམ་བྱེད་ཐུབ་ངེས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ I must go and see Ann. If I had time, I would to today. (གལ་ཏེ་དེ་མིང་ང་ལ་དུས་ཚོད་ཡོད་ཆོང་བརྗེ་རུ་འགྲོ་དགོས་མོད་འོན་ཀྱང་ང་ལ་དུས་ཚོད་མེད་པས་འགྲོ་མི་ཐུབ་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།) ➤ I like that jacket but it's very expensive. I'd buy it if it wasn't so expensive. (གལ་ཏེ་ལུ་བ་འདི་དེ་འདྲའི་གོང་ཆེན་ཞིག་མིན་ཆོང་ས་ཉོ་ངེས་ཞེས་པའི་དོན།) ➤ I'd help you if I could but I can't.



ཕྱི་ཚུན་བསྟུང་བ་བཟུ་གཞུ་མ། A PERSON WHO... A THING THAT /WHICH... འབྲེལ་བའི་ཚབ་ཚིག་ ༡

ག



I met a woman. She can speak six languages.

འདི་རྒྱུ་གཞུ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

She - who

འདི་ནི་ཚིག་གཞུ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

I met a woman who can speak six languages.

JIM



Jim was wearing a hat. It was too big for him.

འདི་ནི་ཚིག་གཞུ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

It - that or which

འདི་ནི་ཚིག་གཞུ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him. ཡང་ན།

Jim was wearing a hat which was too big for him

ཁ who བྱི་མི་ཡི་ཚབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

A thief is a person	who steals things?	
Do you know any body	who can play the piano?	
The man	who phoned	didn't give his name.
The people	who work in the office	are very friendly.

ག that བྱི་དངོས་པོ་དང་ཡང་ན་མི་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཚབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

An aero plane is a machine	that flies.	
Emma lives in a house	that is 500years old.	
The people	that work in the office	are very friendly.

ང་ཚོས་that བྱི་མི་ལ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཚིག་མོད། འོན་ཀྱང་ནམ་རྒྱུན་ང་ཚོས་མི་ལ་who བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད།

ང which བྱི་དངོས་པོའི་ཚབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད། དཔེར་ན།

An air plane is a machine	which flies. ('a machine who...' བྱིས་འབྲིམ་ཁུང)
Emma lives in a house	which is 500 years old.

which བྱི་མི་ཡི་ཚབ་ཏུ་བེད་སྤྱོད་བྱེད་མི་རུང། དཔེར་ན།

➤ Do you remember the woman who was playing the piano at the party? ('the woman which...' བྱིས་འབྲིམ་ཁུང)



གཤམ་ཁྱུང་།

113.1 དཔེ་བཅོམ་དང་པོར་བལྟས་ཆེས་རེའུ་མིག་ནང་གི་ཆོག་དག་བཀོལ་ནས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་བཟོ་དགོས།

A thief	a dentist	doesn't tell the truth	is ill in hospital
A butcher	a fool	looks after your teeth	steals things
A musician	a genius	is very intelligent	is very stupid
A patient	a liar	plays a musical instrument	sells meat

1. **A thief is a person who steals things.**
2. A butcher is a person.....
3. A musician
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.

113.2 སྟོང་ཆའི་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་པོ་དེ་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.) **The man who phoned didn't give his name.**
2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.) The woman a yellow dress.
3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.) Most of the students
4. (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.) The

113.3 who དང་ which གཉིས་བཀོལ་ནས་གསུམ་གྱི་སྟོང་ཆ་ཅམས་ཡང་དག་པར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. I met a woman **who** can speak six languages.
2. What's the name of the woman lives next door?
3. What's the name of the river..... flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend is very good at repairing cars.
8. I think everybody went to the party enjoyed it very much.
9. Why does he always wear clothes are too small for him?

113.4 གསུམ་གྱི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་ཅམས་ལས་མི་འགྲིག་པ་དག་ནོར་བཙོས་བྱེད་དགོས།

1. A thief is a person which steals things **A person who steals**
2. An air plane is a machine that flies. **Ok.**
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee
4. Have you seen the money that was on the table?
5. I don't like people which never stop talking.
6. I know somebody that can help you.
7. I know somebody who works in that shop.
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong.



ཕྱི་ཆོས་འབྲུ་དང་འབྲུ་བཞི།

THE PEOPLE WE MET

THE HOTEL YOU STAYED AT

འབྲེལ་བའི་ཆབ་ཆོག་ ༢

ག



The man is carrying a bag.

It's very heavy

ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy.

ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

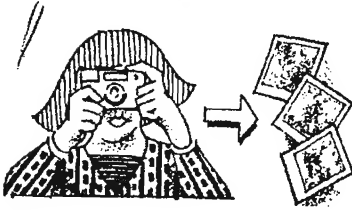
Ann took some photographs.

Have you seen them?

ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཡིན།

Have you seen the photographs (that) Ann took?

ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཉིས་ཡིན།



ང་ཆོས་འདི་ལྟར་བཤད་ཆོག་སྟེ།

- > The bag that he is carrying... ཡང་ན་ The bag he is carrying... (that གི་ཐོད་སྒྱུད་བྱེད་མིན་རང་གི་འདོད་པའོ)
- > ...the photographs that Ann took? ཡང་ན་... the photographs Ann took?

གལ་ཏེ་ཆབ་བྱེད་དགོས་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་གང་ཡིན་པ་དེ་ནི་བྱ་ཡུལ་ཡིན་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཆོས་ that/who/which འདི་དག་
བཞོལ་སྦྱོང་བྱེད་མི་དགོས།

བྱེད་པ་པོ། The man	ལས་ཆོག was carrying	བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ། a bag	the bag (that) the man was carrying
Ann	took	some photographs	the photographs (that) Ann took
You	wanted	the book	the book (that) you wanted
We	met	some people	the people (who) we met

- > Did you find the book you wanted? (ཡང་ན་ ... the book that you wanted?)
- > The people we met were very nice. (ཡང་ན་ the people who we met...)
- > Everything I said was true. (ཡང་ན་ Everything that I said....)

ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།

- > The film we saw was very good. ('the film we saw it was... ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ཁ སྐབས་རེར་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆེས་སུ་འབྲེལ་ཆོག་ཡོང་མི་དེ། དཔེར་ན། (talk + to)

Jill is talking to a man.

Do you know the man Jill is talking to?

We stayed at a hotel.

The hotel we stayed at was near the station.

I told you about some books.

These are the books I told you about.

ཡིད་འཇོག་བྱེད་དགོས་པ།

... the books I told you about ('the books I told you about them' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

ང་ཆོས་ས་ཆའི་ཆབ་ཏུ་ where... ཐོད་སྒྱུད་བྱེད་པ། དཔེར་ན།

- > The hotel where we stayed was near the station. (the hotel we stayed at... དང་མཚུངས་)

ག གལ་ཏེ་ཆབ་བྱེད་དགོས་པའི་མིང་ཆོག་གང་ཡིན་པ་དེ་ནི་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཡིན་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཆོས་ that / who / which སྐགས་ངེས་པར་དུ་
ཐོད་སྒྱུད་བྱེད་དགོས། (ཞེ་ཆན་ 8 དང་11 ལ་སྟོས་)

- > I met a woman who can speak six languages. (who གི་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཡིན་)
- > Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him. (that གི་བྱེད་པ་པོ་ཡིན་)



གཞན་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་

114.1 སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་དེ་གཉིས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (Ann took some photographs. Have seen them?)
Have you seen the photographs Ann took?
2. (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
I've lost the.....
3. (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
I like the.....
4. (I give you some flowers. Where are they?)
Where are the.....
5. (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
I
6. (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
How.....

114.2 སྒྲིམ་ནང་གི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་དེ་གཉིས་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཅིག་ཏུ་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
The bag I was carrying was very heavy.
2. (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
The.....
3. (I'm wearing shoes, they aren't very comfortable.)
The shoes.....
4. (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come)
The.....

114.3 རེ་ལུ་མིག་ནང་གི་གནས་ཚུལ་བཞོལ་ནས་གཤམ་གྱི་སྟངས་ཆ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

I looked a map	they live in house	you were looking some keys
I was sitting on a chair	we were waiting for a bus	you spoke to some people
You stayed at a hotel	Linda is dancing with a man	

- 1) What's the name of **the hotel you stayed at?**
- 2) Who are the people.....?
- 3) Did you find the.....?
- 4) Theis too small for them.
- 5) Thewasn't very clear.
- 6) I fell off.....
- 7)was very late.
- 8) Who is.....?

114.4 གཤམ་གྱི་གནས་སྟངས་བཞུགས་ཐེས་where བཞོལ་ནས་དྲི་བ་ནམས་ཆ་ཆང་བར་བཟོ་དགོས།

1. John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
Did you like **the hotel where you stayed?**
2. Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
What's the name of the restaurant.....
3. Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:
Do you like.....
4. Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
How big.....



ཕྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟོག་པའི་ཆོག་གྲུབ་གཞན་དབང་ཅན་དང་རང་དབང་ཅན།

1. ད་ལྟོ་བ་དང་འདས་པ།

རང་དབང་ཅན།

གཞན་དབང་ཅན།

ཕྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟོག་པ།	We make butter from milk. Somebody cleans these rooms every day. People never invite me to parties. How do they make butter?	Butter is made from milk. These rooms are cleaned every day. I am never invited to parties. How is butter made?
ཕྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟོག་པའི་འདས་པ།	Somebody stole my car last week. Somebody stole my keys yesterday. They didn't invite me to the party. When did they build these houses?	My car was stolen last week. My keys were stolen yesterday. I wasn't invited to the party. When were these houses built?

ད་ལྟོ་བ་ལྟོག་པ།	They are building a new airport at the moment. (ད་ལྟོ་བ་ལྟོག་པ་ཡིན་པ།) They are building some new houses near the river.	A new airport is being built at the moment. Some new houses are being built near the river.
འདས་པའི་ཕྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟོག་པ།	When I was here a few years ago, they were building a new airport. (དེ་མཆོག་གི་འདས་པའི་ཕྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟོག་པ་ཡིན་པ།)	When I was here a few years ago, a new airport was being built.

ཕྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟོག་པ།	Look! They have painted the door. These shirts are clean. Somebody has washed them. Somebody has stolen my car.	Look! The door has been painted. These shirts are clean. They have been washed. My car has been stolen.
ཕྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟོག་པའི་འདས་པ།	Ann said that somebody had stolen her car.	Ann said that her car had been stolen.

2. will/ can/ must/ have to སྟོན་པ།

ཆོག་གྲུབ་རང་དབང་ཅན།

གཞན་དབང་ཅན།

Somebody will clean the office tomorrow. Somebody must clean the office. I think they'll invite you to the party. They can't repair my watch. You should wash this sweater by hand. They are going to build a new airport. Somebody has to wash these clothes. They had to take the injured man to hospital.	The office will be cleaned tomorrow. The office must be cleaned. I think you'll be invited to the party. My watch can't be repaired. This sweater should be washed by hand. A new airport is going to be built. These clothes have to be washed. The injured man had to be taken to hospital.
---	--



རྒྱ་བོད་གཉིས་ལ། གཞུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཚིག་ (ཐུན་ 24 ལ་སྟེ།)

རང་གཞུགས།	འདས་པ།	འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།	རང་གཞུགས།	འདས་པ།	འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།
Be	was/ were	been	Let	Let	Let
Beat	beat	beaten	Lie	Lay	Lain
Become	began	become	Light	Lit	Lit
Begin	became	began	Lose	Lost	Lost
Bite	bit	bitten	Make	Made	Made
Blow	blew	blown	Mean	Meant	Meant
Break	broke	broken	Meet	Met	Met
Bring	brought	bought	Pay	Paid	Paid
Build	built	bought	Put	Put	Put
Buy	bought	built	Read	Read	Read
Catch	caught	caught	Ride	Rode	Ridden
Choose	chose	chosen	Ring	Rang	Rung
Come	came	come	Rise	Rose	Risen
Cost	cost	cost	Run	Ran	Run
Cut	cut	cut	Say	Said	Said
Do	did	done	See	Saw	Seen
Draw	drew	drawn	Sell	Sold	Sold
Drink	drank	drunk	Send	sent	Sent
Drive	ate	eaten	Shine	Shone	Shone
Eat	drove	driven	Shoot	Shot	Shot
Fall	fell	fallen	Show	Showed	Shown
Feel	felt	felt	Shut	Shut	Shut
Fight	fought	fought	Sing	Sang	Sung
Find	found	found	Sit	Sat	Sat
Fly	flew	flown	Sleep	Slept	Slept
Forget	forgot	forgotten	Speak	Spoke	Spoken
Get	got	got	Spend	Spent	Spent
Give	gave	given	Stand	Stood	Stood
Go	went	gone	Steal	Stole	Stolen
Grow	grew	frown	Swim	Swam	Swum
Hang	hung	had	Take	Took	Taken
Have	had	hung	Teach	Taught	Taught
Hear	heard	heard	Tear	Tore	Torn
Hide	hid	hidden	Tell	Told	Told
Hit	hit	hit	Think	Thought	Thought
Hold	held	held	Throw	Threw	Thrown
Hurt	hurt	hurt	Understand	Understood	Understood
Keep	kept	kept	Wake	Woke	Woken
Know	knew	known	Wear	Wore	Worn
Leave	left	left	Win	Won	Won
Lend	lent	lent	write	wrote	written

འཕྲིན་ལྷན་པའི་ལས་ཚིག་འདི་དག་ནི་གཞུགས་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་དང་གཞུགས་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ལས་ཚིག་

གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཚིག་

རང་གཞུགས།	འདས་པ།	འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།
Burn	burned	burnt
Dream	dreamed	dreamt

རང་གཞུགས།	འདས་པ།	འདས་པའི་འདས་པ།
Learn	learned	learnt
Smell	smelled	smelt







There's a big tree in the garden. (= there is)

My sister's working in London. (= my sister is working)

Paul's gone out. (= Paul has gone out)

What color's your car? (= what color is your car?)

4.4 དགག་ཚིག་གི་བསྐྱེད་འབྲིའི་རྣམ་པ།

Isn't (= is not) don't (=do not) can't (= can not)

Aren't (= are not) doesn't (= does not) couldn't (= could not)

Wasn't (=was not) didn't (=did not) won't (= will not)

Weren't (= were not) wouldn't (= would not)

Hasn't (=has not) shouldn't (= should not)

Haven't (=have not) mustn't (= must not)

Hadn't (= had not) needn't (= need not)

- We went to her house but she wasn't at home.
- 'Where's David?' 'I don't know. I haven't seen him.'
- You work all the time. You shouldn't work so hard.
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 's

's ཡི་དོན་མི་འདྲ་ཤིང་།

's བོ་is དང་ཡང་ན། has ཡི་དོན། (བྱུར་བཞོད་འདིའི་དོན་ཚན་4.2 ལ་སྟོན།)

Let's བོ་let us ཡི་བསྐྱེད་འབྲི་ཡིན། (ལྟེ་ཚན་52 ལ་སྟོན།)

- The weather is nice. Let's go out. (= let us go out)

Ann's camera (ནི་མོའི་པར་ཆས་ཀྱི་དོན་) my brother's car (ནི་ངའི་ཕུ་བོའི་རྒྱང་ས་འཁོར་གྱི་དོན་)/ the manger's office (ནི་དོ་དམ་པའི་ལས་ཤག་གི་དོན་)
མགས་ཉེ་ཞིབ་མོར་ལྟེ་ཚན་63 ལ་སྟོན།

བསྐྱེད་པ།

- Ann's camera was very expensive. (Ann's camera བོ་ her camera)
- Ann's a very good photographer. (Ann's བོ་ Ann is)
- Ann's got new camera. (Ann's got བོ་ Ann has got)



བྱིན་པོ་དེ་ལྟ་བུ་ལ། དག་ཆའི་གྲུབ་ཚུལ།

5.1 མིང་ཚིག་གི་རྩིས་སྤྱོད་ཀྱི་དང་ཅེས་བཞུགས་ཚུལ། (birds/ watches)

མིང་ཚིག་མང་ཤས་ཀྱི་རྩིས་སྤྱོད་ཀྱི་རྒྱ་རྒྱུ་ s བཞུགས་ཚིག་ (མང་གུངས་ཡིན།) (ཕྱི་ཚེན་65 ལ་སྟོན།)

Bird birds mistake mistakes hotel hotels

ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྩིས་སྤྱོད་ + s (བྱིན་པོ་དེ་ལྟ་བུ་ལའི་ནང་གི་དེ་ལྟ་པོ་he/she/it སྟེན་པའི་ལས་ཚིག་གི་རྩིས་སྤྱོད་

དེས་པར་དུ་སྟོན་དགོས། ཕྱི་ཚེན་5 ལ་སྟོན།)

Think thinks live lives remember remembers

ཡིན་ནའང་།

གལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་s/sh/ch/x སྟེན་པའི་མིང་ཚིག་དེ་དག་གི་རྩིས་སྤྱོད་དེས་པར་དུ་es བཞུགས་དགོས།

Bus buses pass passes address addresses

Dish dishes wash washes finish finishes

Watch watches teach teaches sandwich sandwiches

Box boxes

གཞན་ཡང་།

Potato potatoes tomato tomatoes

Do does go goes

གལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་f ནང་ཆེ་ཡིན་པའི་སྤྱོད་ཚིག་དེ་གཉིས་v ན་བསྐྱར་རྩིས་སྤྱོད་es བཞུགས་དགོས།

Shelf shelves knife knives bur roof roofs

5.2 གལ་ཏེ་མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་ལས་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་ལ་དེའི་སྟོན་གྱི་ཡི་གེ་དེ་དབྱངས་མིན་ཆེ་དེ་མཆོས་ཀྱི་དེ་།

དེ་བསྐྱར་རྩིས་སྤྱོད་ཀྱི་དང་ཅེས་བཞུགས་ཚུལ།

མིང་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་པའི་སྤྱོད་ཚིག་།

Study studies ('studys' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་) family families (familys ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Story stories city cities baby babies

Try tries marry marries fly flies

ལས་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་པའི་སྤྱོད་ཚིག་། (ཕྱི་ཚེན་11 ལ་སྟོན།)

Study studied ('studied' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Try tried marry married copy copied

བྱང་ཆས་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་པའི་སྤྱོད་ཚིག་། ier/ -iest (ཕྱི་ཚེན་86 ནང་89 གཉིས་ལ་སྟོན།)

Easy easier/ easiest ('easier/ easiest' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Happy happier/ happiest lucky luckier/ luckiest

Heavy heavier/ heaviest funny funnier/ funniest

རྩིས་པའི་སྟོན་པའི་ཚིག་གི་ཚིག་མཐའ་y ཡིན་པའི་སྤྱོད་ཚིག་། ily (ཕྱི་ཚེན་85 ལ་སྟོན།)

Easy easily ('easily' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Happy happily luck luckily heavy heavily



གལ་ཏེ་y ཡི་སྟོན་གྱི་ཆོག་ཏེ་དབྱངས་ཡིག་ཡིན་ཆོང་ཆོས་ཐད་ཀར་s ལྷན་ཆོག་ ay/ ey/ oy/ uy

Holiday holidays ('holidayes' ཞེས་འབྲི་མི་རུང་)

Enjoy enjoys/ enjoyed stay stays/ stayed buy buys key keys

ཡིན་ན་འང་།

Say said pay paid (གཟུགས་འགྱུར་ལས་ཆོག་)

5.3 -ing

གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་e ཡིན་སྐབས་སྤྱི་ཆོས་e དེ་མེད་པར་བྱས་ཇེས་ing བསྟོན་དགོས།

Make making write writing come coming dance dancing

གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་ie ཡིན་སྐབས་སྤྱི་e དེ་y རྩ་བསྐྱར་ཇེས་ing བསྟོན་དགོས།

Lie lying die dying tie tying

5.4 stop-stopped/big- bigger སྟགས།

དབྱངས་དང་གསལ་བཤད།

དབྱངས། a, e, i, o, u

གསལ་བཤད། b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z

ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་ཅུ་དབྱངས་གཅིག་དང་གསལ་བཤད་གཅིག་ཡིན་སྐབས་སྤྱི་ ང་ཆོས་ཆོག་མཐའ་

གསལ་བཤད་དེ་ཡང་བསྐྱར་ཐེངས་གཅིག་བྲིས་ཇེས་ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est སྟགས་བསྟོན་དགོས། དཔེར་ན།

V ཡི་དབྱངས་ཡིག་མཆོན།

C ཡི་གསལ་བཤད་མཆོན།

V +C				
Stop	STOP	p -pp	stopping	stopped
Run	RUN	n- nn	running	
Get	GET	t -tt	getting	
Swim	SWIM	m-mm	swimming	
Big	BIG	g -gg	bigger	biggest
Hot	HOT	t -tt	hotter	hottest
Thin	THIN	n- nn	thinner	thinnest

(1) གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་ཅུ་གསལ་བཤད་གཉིས་ཡོད་ཆོང་ཆོས་ཐད་ཀར་ཅུ་ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est

སྟགས་བསྟོན་ཆོག་

C+C			
He'p	HELP	helping	helped
Work	WORK	working	worked
Fast	FAST	faster	fastest

(2) གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་

གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་ཅུ་

གསལ་བཤད་གཅིག་དང་དེའི་སྟོན་ཅུ་དབྱངས་ཡིག་གཉིས་ཡོད་

སྐབས་སྤྱི་ཡང་ང་ཆོས་ཐད་ཀར་ཅུ་ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est སྟགས་བསྟོན་ཆོག་



	V+V+C		
Need	NEED	needing	needed
Wait	WAIT	waiting	waited
Cheap	CHEAP	cheaper	cheapest

(3) གལ་ཏེ་སྒྲིཨ་ཆོག་ས་གཉིས་ལས་མང་བའི་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་དེའི་སྒྲིཨ་ཚུལ་ཚུང་བའི་སྐབས་སུ་ང་ཆོས་

ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est སྐགས་ཐད་ཀར་དུ་བསྐྱན་ཆོག

Happed	HAP – pen	happing/ happened (not ‘happenned’)
Visit	VIS – it	visiting/ visited
Remember	re- MEM- ber	remembering/ remembered
གལ་ཏེ་ཆོག་མཐའ་དེའི་སྒྲིཨ་ཚུལ་ཆོག་མཐའ་དེ་ཡང་བསྐྱར་ཐེངས་གཅིག་བྱིས་ཇིས་ing/ -ed/ -er/ -est སྐགས་བསྐྱན་ཆོག		
	prefer per- PER	preferring/ preferred
	Begin be- GIN	beginning







(4) གལ་ཏེ་ལས་ཆོག་གི་ཆོག་མཐའ་y ནང་w ཡིན་ལ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་སྒྲིཨ་དུ་དབྱངས་ཡིག་ཡོད་སྐབས་ང་ཆོས་ing/

-ed/ -er/ -est སྐགས་ཐད་ཀར་དུ་བསྐྱལ་ཆོག

Enjoy enjoying/ enjoyed snow/ snowing/ snowed few/ fewer/ fewest



ཕྱིར་བཞོན་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོག་ལ།

Out	look out/ watch out གི་གཟུགས་གཟུགས་དང་དྲགས་ཐོན་གྱི་དོན། > Look out! There's car coming!	
On	come on གི་མཆོག་ལས་པོར་ཞེས་པའི་དོན། > Come on! Everybody is waiting for you. Hold on གི་སྒྱག་པའི་དོན། wait: > Can you hold on a minute? (can you wait? ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།) Carry on གི་རྒྱུན་འཁྱོངས་སམ་སྒྲུབ་ཐུག་པའི་དོན། > Don't stop working. Carry on. (continue working ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།) > A: excuse me, where is the station, please? B: carry on along this road and turn right at the lights. (continue along ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།) go on/ walk on/ drive on སྐོག་ལས་ཀྱི་ལས་ཀ་ཞིག་སྒྲུབ་ཐུག་པའི་དོན། > Don't stop here. Drive on. Get on གི་བདག་གཉེར་རམ་དོན་གྱི་དོན། How are you getting on in your new job? (are you doing ok? ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།)	
Off	take off གི་ས་ཇོས་དང་བྲལ་བའི་དོན་དེ་གནས་གུ་སྐོག་ལས་འཕུར་བའི་དོན། The plane took off 20 minutes late but landed on time.	
Up	wake up གི་གཉིད་སང་པའི་དོན། > I often wake up in the middle of the night. Speak up གི་སྐད་མཐོན་པོས་བཤད་པའི་དོན། Hurry up གི་མཆོག་ལས་པོར་ལས་པའི་དོན། > Hurry up! We haven't got much time. Wash up གི་ཟ་མ་ཐོས་ཆེས་ལྷེར་མ་སྐོག་ལས་བཟུས་པའི་དོན། > Do you want me to wash up? Grow up གི་ནར་སྐྱོད་པའི་དོན། > What does your son want to do when he grow up? Give up གི་སྤང་བའམ་དོར་བའི་དོན། > I know it's difficult but don't give up. (don't stop trying ཞེས་པའི་དོན་དང་འདྲ།)	
Down	slow down གི་ཉ་ཅང་དལ་མོར་བཞུགས་པའི་དོན། (མཆོག་ལས་ཆད་སྐོག་ལས་) > You're driving too fast. Slow down. Break down གི་འབྲུལ་འཁོར་སྐོག་ལས་ཀྱི་ལས་མཆམས་བཞུགས་པའི་དོན། Sue was very late because her car broke down.	
Over	fall over གི་ཁ་བུབ་སྐོག་ལས་པའི་དོན། I fell over because my shoes were too big for me.	



ཟླ་བཀོད་བརྟན་པ། ལས་ཆོག་ཆོག་ཆོགས་ + བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།

In	fill in (a form) རྟོག་ཆས་གསལ་ཆ་ཚང་བར་བཟོས་པའམ་ཡང་ན་སྐོང་བའི་དོན།	
	➤ Can you fill in this form, please?	
Out	put out རྟོ་མེ་སྐགས་གསོད་པའི་དོན། (a fire/ a cigarette):	
	➤ The fire brigade arrived and put the fire out.	
	Cross out རྟོ་སྐགས་འཕྲེན་པའི་དོན། (བསུབ་པ་)	
	➤ If you make a mistake, cross it out.	
On	try on (clothes) རྟོ་གྲན་པ་སྐགས་ཚད་དང་རན་པ་ཡིན་མིན་བརྟག་པའི་དོན།	
	➤ (in a shop) this is a nice jacket. Shall I try it on?	
Up	give up རྟོ་ལས་སྐགས་ལས་མཚན་བཞག་པའི་དོན། (ལྷུང་བའམ་དྲོར་བ་)	
	➤ Tom gave up smoking five years ago. (= he stopped smoking)	
	➤ 'Are you still learning Italian?' 'No, I gave it up.'	
	Ring up ཁ་པར་བཟང་བའི་དོན།	
	➤ Sue rang me up last night. ('Sue rang me last right.' up མེད་པར་བཀོལ་བྱའི་ཆོག་)	
	Look up རྟོ་མེད་ཆོག་སྐགས་ཆོག་མཛད་དུ་འཆོལ་བའི་དོན།	
	➤ I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up in a dictionary.	
	Turn up རྟོ་བརྟན་འཕྲིན་སྐགས་ཀྱི་སྒྲ་ཆེ་བྱ་བཟང་བའི་དོན།	
	➤ Can you turn the radio up? I can't hear it.	
Down	knock down (a building) རྟོ་ཁང་བ་སྐགས་བཞེག་པའི་དོན།	
	➤ They are going to knock down the school and build a new one.	
	Turn down རྟོ་བརྟན་འཕྲིན་སྐགས་ཀྱི་སྒྲ་ཆེ་བྱ་བཟང་བའི་དོན།	
	➤ The music is too loud. Can you turn it down?	
Away	throw away རྟོ་དག་སྐྱེགས་སྐགས་བོ་པའི་དོན།	
	➤ These apples are bad. Shall throw them away?	
	➤ Don't throw away that picture. I want it.	
	Put away རྟོ་དངོས་བོ་སྐགས་ཉར་ཆོགས་བྱས་པའི་དོན།	
	➤ After they finished playing, the children put their toys away.	
Back	pay somebody back རྟོ་དངོས་པོ་འམ་དདུལ་སྐགས་བྱིར་སྤྲད་པའི་དོན།	
	➤ Thank you for lending me the money. I'll pay you back next week.	
Over	knock over རྟོ་མོར་བ་སྐགས་སྒྲིག་པའམ་རྒྱང་ཁ་བྱུབ་པའི་དོན།	
	➤ Be careful. Don't knock your cup over.	
	➤ There was an accident at the end of the road.	
	A man was knocked over by a car. (ཡང་ན་a man was knocked down by a car.)	
Round/	show (somebody) round/ around རྟོ་སྒྲ་སྐོར་དུ་ཁྱེད་པའི་དོན།	
Around	we visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round..	



ཕྱི་ཚེན 1

1.6

2 I'm/ I am hungry . or I'm not hungry.

3 it's / it is warm today or it isn't / it is not warm today.

4 I'm/ I am afraid of dogs. Or I'm not/

ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 2

2.5

2 yes, I am. Or no, I'm not.

3 yes, it is or no, it isn't./ no, it's not.

4 yes, they are. Or no, they aren't/ no, they're not.

5 yes, it is. Or no, it isn't ./ it's not.

6 yes, I am. Or no, I'm not.

ཕྱི་ཆ་ན 3

- 3.4
3. I'm sitting on a chair. Or I'm not sitting on a chair.
4. I'm eating. Or I'm not eating.
- 5 it's raining or it isn't raining/ it's not raining.
- 6 I'm learning English.
- 7 I'm listening to music. Or I'm not listening to music.
- 8 the sun is shining. Or the sun isn't shining.
- 9 I'm wearing shoes. Or I'm not wearing shoes.
- 10 I'm not reading a newspaper.

ཕྱི་ཆོན་ 4

4.1

2 are you going now?

3 is it raining?

4 are you enjoying the film?

5 is that lock working?

6 are you writing a letter?



- 4.2
2 where is she going?
3 what are you eating?
4 are you enjoying the film?
5 is that clock working?
6 are you writing a letter?
4.2
2 where is she going?
3 what are you eating?
4 why are you crying?
5 what are they looking at?
6 why is he laughing?
4.3
3 are you listening to me?
4 where are your friends going?
5 are your parents watching television?
6 what is Ann cooking?
7 why are you looking at me?
8 is the bus coming?
4.4
2 yes, I am or no, I'm not.
3 yes, I am or no, I'm not.
4 yes, it is. Or no, it isn't/ no, it's not.
5 yes, I am. Or no, I'm not.
6 yes, I am. Or no, I'm not.

ཞེ་ཚན་ 5

- 5.1
2 thanks 5 has
3 flies 6 finishes
4 dances
5.2
2 live 5 they go
3 she eats 6 he sleeps
4 they play
5.3
2 open 7 costs
3 closes 8 cost
4 teachers 9 boils
5 meet 10 like... likes
6 washes
5.4
2 I often play basketball.
3 Margaret usually works hard.

- 4 Jenny always wears nice clothes.
5 we always have dinner at 7.30.
6 Tim never watches television.
7 children usually like chocolate.
8 Julia always enjoys parties.
5.5
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས།
2 I usually read in bed.
3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.
4 I never go to work by bus.
5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

ཞེ་ཚན་ 6

- 6.1
2 Jane doesn't play the piano very well.
3 they don't know my phone number.
4 we don't work very hard.
5 he doesn't have a bath every day.
6 you don't do the same thing every day.
6.2
2 Carol doesn't like classical music. I like (or I don't like) classical music.
3 Bill and Rose don't like boxing. Carol likes boxing. I like (or I don't like) boxing.
4 Bill and Rose like horror films. Carol doesn't like horror films. I like (or I don't like) horror films.
6.3
2-5 you can use:
I never ... (go/ ride etc.) or I often ...
or I don't ... very often.
6.4
2 doesn't use
3 don't go
4 doesn't wear
5 don't know
6 doesn't cost
7 don't see
6.5
2 don't know
3 doesn't talk
4 drinks

- 5 don't believe
6 like
7 doesn't eat
ཞེ་ཚན་ 7
7.1
2 do you play tennis?
3 does Ann play tennis?
4 do your friends live near here?
5 does your brother speak English?
6 do you do exercises every morning?
7 does Paul often go away?
8 do you want to be famous?
9 does Linda work hard?
7.2
3 how often do you watch TV?
4 what do you want for dinner?
5 do you like football?
6 does your brother like football?
7 what do you do in the evening?
8 where does your sister work?
9 do you often go to the cinema?
10 what does this word mean?
11 does it often snow here?
12 what time do you usually go to bed?
13 how much does it cost to phone New York?
14 what do you usually have for breakfast?
7.3
2 do you enjoy/ do you like
3 do you start
4 do you work
5 do you go
6 does he do
7 does he teach
8 does he enjoy/ does he like
7.4
2 yes, I do. Or no, I don't.
3 yes, I do. Or no, I don't
4 yes, it does. Or no, it doesn't
5 yes, I do. Or no, I don't.

ཞེ་ཚན་ 8

- 8.1



2 no, she isn't.	7 what kind of car has Julia got?	10.2
yes, she does.	Or ... does Julia have?	2 is ... was 6 are
She's playing the piano.	9.3	3 am 7 was
3 yes, he does.	2 Tina hasn't got a bicycle./ Tina	4 was 8 was
Yes, he is.	doesn't have a bicycle.	5 were 9 are.. were
He's cleaning a window.	I've got a bicycle./ I have a bicycle.	10.3
4 no, they aren't.	Or I haven't got a bicycle. / I don't	2 wasn't ... was
Yes, they aren't.	have a bicycle.	3 was...were
They teach.	3 Tin has got long hair./ Tina has long	4 were... was... wasn't
8.2	hair.	5 were
2 don't 6 do	I've got long hair./ I have long hair.	6 weren't ... were
3 are 7 does	Or I haven't got long hair./ I don't	10.4
4 does 8 doesn't	have long hair.	2 was your exam difficult?
5 's/is ... don't	4 Tina has got two sisters and two	3 where were Ann and Chris last
8.3	brothers./ Tina has two... (འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་	week?
4 is singing	ཆོག) I've got two brothers and one	4 how much was your new camera?
5 she wants	sister.	5 why were you angry yesterday?
6 do you read	9.4	6 was the weather nice last week?
7 you're/ you are sitting	3 's got/ has got	
8 I don't understand	4 haven't got	ཐེ་ཆོན་ 11
9 I'm going... are you coming	5 've got/ have got	11.1
10 does your father	6 haven't got	2 opened
11 I'm not listening	7 hasn't got	3 started... finished
12 he's/ he is cooking	9.5	4 wanted
13 doesn't usually drive ... usually	3 have got four wheels (or have four	5 happened
walks.	wheels)	6 rained
14 doesn't like... she prefers	4 's got/ has got a lot of friends (or has	7 enjoyed... stayed
	a lot of friends)	8 died
ཐེ་ཆོན་ 9	5 've got/ have got a toothache. (or	11.2
9.1	have a toothache)	2 saw 8 thought
2 he's got	6 hasn't got a key (or doesn't have a	3 played 9 copied
3 they've got	key)	4 paid 10 knew
4 they've got	7 has got six legs (or has six legs)	5 visited 11 put
5 it's got	8 haven't got much time (or don't	6 bought 12 spoke
6 I haven't got	have much time)	7 went
9.2		11.3
2 have you got a passport? Or do you	ཐེ་ཆོན་ 10	2 got 9 had
have...?	10.1	3 had 10 went
3 has your father got a car? Or does	2 Carol and Jack were at / in the	4 left 11 waited
your father have...?	cinema.	5 drove 12 departed
4 has Carol got many friends? Or does	3 Sue was at the station.	6 arrived 13 arrived
Carol have...?	4 Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in/ at a	7 parked 14 took
5 have you got any brother or sister?	restaurant.	8 went
Or do you have ...?	5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach/	11.4
6 how much money have we got?	at the seaside.,	2 lost her keys
Or ... do we have?	6 (འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆོག) I was at work.	3 met her friends



4 bought two newspapers.

5 went to the cinema

6 ate an orange

7 had a shower

8 came (to see us)

11.5

འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆག

2 I got up late yesterday.

3 I met some friends at lunchtime.

4 I played volleyball.

5 I wrote a letter.

6 I lost my keys.

ཞེ་ཚན་ 12

12.1

2 didn't work

3 didn't go

4 didn't have

5 didn't do

12.2

2 did you enjoy the party?

3 did you have a good holiday?

4 did you finish work early?

5 did you sleep well last night?

12.3

2 I got up before 7 o'clock. Or I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.

3 I had a shower. Or I didn't have a shower.

4 I bought a magazine. Or I didn't buy a magazine.

5 I ate meat. Or I didn't eat meat.

6 I went to bed before 10.30. or I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

12.4

2 did you arrive

3 did you win

4 did you go

5 did it cost

6 did you go to bed late

7 did you have a nice time

8 did it happen / did that happen

12.5

2 bought

3 did it rain

4 didn't stay

5 opened

6 didn't have

7 did you do

ཞེ་ཚན་ 13

13.1

2 Carol and Jack were at / in the cinema. They were watching a film.

3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.

4 Catherine was at the station. She was waiting for a train.

5 Mr. and Mrs. Hall were in the park. They were walking.

6 I was in café. I was having a drink with some friends.

13.2

2 the was swimming/ she was having a swim.

3 she was reading a / the newspaper

4 she was cooking (lunch)

5 she was having breakfast.

6 she was listening to music/ listening to the radio.

13.3

2 what were you doing

3 was it raining

4 why was Ann driving so fast

5 was Tim wearing suit

13.4

2 he was carrying a bag

3 he wasn't going to the dentist.

4 he was eating an ice-cream.

5 he wasn't carrying an umbrella

6 he was't going home.

7 he was wearing a hat

8 he wasn't riding a bicycle

ཞེ་ཚན་ 14

14.1

1 happened ... was painting ... fell

2 arrived... got... were waiting

3 was walking ... met... was going ... was carrying... stopped

14.2

2 was studying

3 did the post arrive ... came ... was

having

4 didn't go

5 were you driving... stopped ... wasn't driving

6 did your team win ... didn't play

7 did you break the window... were playing ... kicked... hit

8 did you see ... was wearing

9 were you doing

10 lost.. did you get ... climbed

ཞེ་ཚན་ 15

15.1

2 she has closed the door

3 they have gone to bed

4 it has stopped raining

5 he has had a bath

6 the picture has fallen down

15.2

2 've bought / have bought

3 's gone/ has gone

4 have you seen

5 has broken

6 've told / have told

7 has taken

8 has she gone

9 've forgotten/ have forgotten

10 's invited/ has invited

11 have you decided

12 haven't seen

ཞེ་ཚན་ 16

16.1

2 he's / he has just got up

3 they've/ they have just bought a car.

4 the race has just started

16.2

2 they've/ they have already seen it.

3 I've/ I have already phoned him

4 he's / he has already gone (away)

5 I've / I have already read it

6 she's / she has already started (it)

16.3

2 the bus has just gone

3 the bus hasn't gone yet

4 he hasn't opened it yet



5 they've just finished their dinner

6 it hasn't stopped raining yet

16.4

2 have you met your new neighbors yet?

3 have you written the letter yet?

4 has he / Tom sold his car yet?

ཕྱི་ཆ་བློ་ཆོད་ 17

17.1

3 have you ever been to Australia?

4 have you ever lost your passport?

5 have you ever flown in a helicopter?

6 have you ever eaten Chinese food?

7 have you ever been to New York?

8 have you ever driven a bus?

9 have you ever broken your leg?

17.2

Helen

2 Helen has never been to Australia

3 Helen/ she has eaten Chinese food a few times.

4 Helen/ she has never driven a bus.

You (example answers):

5 I've/ I have never been to New York

6 I've/ I have played tennis many times

7 I've/ I have never flown in a helicopter.

8 I've/ I have been late for work a few times.

17.3

2-6

She has done a lot of interesting things.

She has traveled all over the world. Or she has been all over the world.

She has been married three times.

She has written ten books.

She has met a lot of interesting people.

17.4

2 gone

3 been... been

4 been

5 gone

6 been

7 been

8 gone

ཕྱི་ཆ་བློ་ཆོད་ 18

18.1

3 have been

4 has been

5 have lived/ have been living

6 has worked/ has been working

7 has had

8 have been learning

18.2

2 how long have they been there / in Brazil

3 how long have you known her?

4 how long has she been learning Italian?

5 how long has he lived in Canada? / how long has he been living...?

6 how long have you been a teacher?

7 how long has it been raining?

18.3

2 she has lived in Wales all her life.

3 they have been on holiday since Sunday.

4 the sun has been shining all day

5 she has been waiting for ten minutes.

6 he has had a beard since he was 20

18.4

2 know

3 have know

4 have you been

5 works

6 has been

7 have you lived

8 I've had

9 is... has been

ཕྱི་ཆ་བློ་ཆོད་ 19

19.1

3 for 6 for

4 since 7 for

5 since 8 for... Sincerely yours,

19.2

འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆོག

2 a year ago

3 a few days ago

4 two hours ago

5 six months ago

19.3

3 for 20 years

4 20 years ago

5 ten minutes ago

6 an hour ago

7 for six months

8 for a long time

9 a few days ago

19.4

2 been here since Tuesday.

3 raining for an hour

4 known Sue for two years

5 had my/ a camera since 1989

6 been married for six months

7 been studying medicine (at university) for three years.

8 played / been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5

འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆོག

1 I've lived in ... all my life.

2 I've been in the same job for ten years.

3 I've been learning English for six months

4 I've known Chris for a long time.

5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

ཕྱི་ཆ་བློ་ཆོད་ 20

20.1

2 I started (it) last week.

3 they arrived at 5 o'clock

4 she went (away) on Friday.

5 I wore them yesterday.

20.2

3 WRONG – I finished

4 RIGHT

5 WRONG – did you ...



6 RIGHT	6 how many languages are spoken...	6 is 10 are
7 WRONG – Jim's grandmother died	7 ... but nothing was stolen	23.2
8 WRONG – where were you	8 when was the bicycle invented?	2 don't 6 doesn't
20.3	21.3	3'm/ am not 7'm/am not
3 played	3 is made	4 isn't 8 aren't
4 did you go	4 were damaged	5 don't
5 have you ever met	5 was given	23.3
6 wasn't	6 are shown	2 did 7 were
7 've/ have just washed	7 were invited	3 were 8 has
8 washed	8 was made	4 was 9 did
9 's/ has visited	9 was stolen ... was found	5 has 10 have
10 hasn't come	21.4	6 did
20.4	2 Sally was born in Birmingham	23.4
1 Did you have	3 her parents were born in Ireland	2 was6 've/ have
Was	4 I was born in ...	3 have 7 is
2 have you seen	5 my mother was born in ...	4 are 8 was
Went		5 were 9 has
Haven't seen		23.5
3 has worked/ has been working	22.1	3 eaten
Was	2 a bridge is being built	4 enjoying
Worked	3 the window are being cleaned	5 damaged
Didn't enjoy	4 the grass is being cut	6 use
4 've/ have never spoken met	22.2	7 gone away
	3 the window has been broken.	8 understand
	4 the roof is being repaired	9 listening
	5 the car has been damaged	10 pronounced
	6 the housed are being knocked down	11 open
	7 the trees have been cut down	
	8 they have been invited to a party	
	22.3	24.1
	3 has been repaired	3 got
	4 was repaired	4 brought
	5 are made	5 paid
	6 were they built	6 enjoyed
	7 is the computer being used (or is anybody using the computer)	7 bought
	8 are they called	8 sat
	9 were blown	9 left
	10 was damaged ... hasn't been repaired	10 happened
		11 heard
		12 put
		13 caught
		14 watched
		15 understood
		24.2
		2 began begun
		3 ate eaten

ཐེ་ཚན 21

ཐེ་ཚན 22

ཐེ་ཚན 24

ཐེ་ཚན 23



4 drank drunk
5 drove driven
6 ran run
7 spoke spoken
8 wrote written
9 came come
10 knew know
11 took taken
12 went gone
13 gave given
14 threw thrown
15 forgot forgotten
24.3
3 slept
4 saw
5 rained
6 lost... seen
7 stolen
8 went
9 finished
10 built
11 learnt/ learned
12 ridden
13 known
14 fell... hurt
24.4
2 told
3 won
4 met
5 woken up
6 swam
7 thought
8 spoken
9 cost
10 driven
11 sold
12 flew

ཞེ་ཚན་ 25

25.1
2 he used to play football
3 she used to be a taxi driver
4 they used to live in the country
5 he used to wear glasses
6 this building used to be a hotel
25.2

2-5
She used to play volleyball
She used to go out most
Evenings/ she used to go out in the
evenings
She used to play the guitar
She used to read a lot/ she used to like
reading
She used to go away two or three
times a year/ she used to travel a lot.
25.3
3 used to have
4 used to be
5 go
6 used to eat
7 watches
8 used to live
9 get
10 did you use to play

ཞེ་ཚན་ 26

26.1
2 Richard is going to the cinema.
3 Barbara is meeting Dave
4 Denise is having lunch with ken
5 tom and sue are going to a party
26.2
2 are you working next week?
3 what are you doing tomorrow
evening?
4 what time are your friends arriving?
5 when is Liz going on holiday?
26.3
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས།
3 I'm going away at the weekend
4 I'm playing basketball
5 I'm meeting a friend this evening
6 I'm going to the cinema in Thursday
evening
26.4
3 she's getting
4 are going ... are they going
5 finishes
6 I'm not going
7 I'm going ... we're meeting
8 are you getting ... leaves

9 does the film begin
10 are you doing... I'm working

ཞེ་ཚན་ 27

27.1
2 I'm going to buy a newspaper
3 we're going to play football
4 I'm going to have a bath
27.2
3 'm /am going to walk
4 's/is going to stay
5 'm/am going to eat
6 're/ are going to give
7 's/is going to lie down
8 are you going to watch
9 is Rachel going to do
27.3
2 the shelf is going go fall (down)
3 the car is going to turn (left)
4 he's / he is going to kick the ball
27.4
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས།
1 I'm going to phone Ann this evening
2 I'm going to get up early tomorrow
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes
tomorrow

ཞེ་ཚན་ 28

28.1
2 she'll be 5 she's
3 she was 6 she was
4 she'll be 7 she'll be
28.2
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས།
2 I'll be at home.
3 I'll probably be in bed.
4 I'll be at work.
5 I don't know where I'll be.
28.3
2'll /will 5 'll/ will
3 won't 6 'll/will
4 won't 7 won't
28.4
3 I think we'll win the game.
4 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.
5 I think Sue will like her present.



6 I don't think they'll get married.
7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.
28.5
2 are you doing
3 they're going
4 she'll lend
5 I'm going
6 will phone
7 he's working
8 will

ཐེ་ཚན 29

29.1
2 I'll send 5 I'll do
3 I'll eat 6 I'll stay
4 I'll sit 7 I'll show
29.2
2 I think I'll have
3 I don't think I'll play.
4 I don't think I'll buy
29.3
2 I'll do
3 I watch
4 I'll go
5 is going to buy
6 I'll give
7 are you doing ... I'm going
29.4
2 shall turn off the television?
3 shall make some sandwiches?
4 shall turn on the light?
29.5
2 where shall we go?
3 what shall we buy
4 who shall we invite?

ཐེ་ཚན 30

30.1
2 I might see you tomorrow.
3 Ann might forget to phone
4 It might snow today
5 I might be late tonight.
6 Mary might not be here.
7 I might not have time to meet you.
30.2
2 I might go away

3 I might see her on Monday
4 I might have fish
5 I might get/ take a taxi. Or ... go by taxi.
6 I might buy a new car.
30.3
3 he might get early.
4 he isn't/ he's not working tomorrow
5 he might be at home tomorrow morning.
6 he might watch television
7 he's going out in the afternoon.
8 he might go shopping
30.4

Example answers:

1 I might read a newspaper
2 I might go for a drink with some friends.
3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

ཐེ་ཚན 31

31.1
2 can you ski?
3 can you play chess?
4 can you run ten kilometers?
5 can you drive?
6 can you ride a horse?
7 I can/ can't swim.
8 I can/ can't ski
9 I can/can't play chess.
10 I can/ can't run ten kilometers.
11 I can/ can't drive.
12 I can/ can't ride a horse.
31. 2
2 can see 4 can't find
3 can't hear 5 can speak
31.3

2 couldn't eat
3 can't decide
4 couldn't find
5 can't go
6 couldn't go
31.4
2 can / could you pass the salt. (please)?
3 can / could you turn off the radio.

(please)?
4 can/ could I have tomato soup, (please)?
5 can / could you give me your phone number, (please)?
6 can/ could I borrow your pen, (please)?
Can/ could you lend me...?

ཐེ་ཚན 32

32.1
2 must meet
3 must wash
4 must learn
5 must go
6 must win
7 must be
32.2
2 I must 5 I had to
3 I had to 6 I had to
4 I must 7 I must
32.3
2 needn't hurry
3 mustn't lose
4 needn't wait
5 mustn't forget
6 needn't write
32.4
2 C 4 E
3 A 5 B
32.5
3 needn't 7 must
4 had to 8 had to
5 must 9 needn't
6 mustn't

ཐེ་ཚན 33

33.1
2 you should go
3 you should clean
4 you should visit
5 you should wear
6 you should take
33.2
2 he shouldn't eat so much.
3 she shouldn't work so hard.



4 he shouldn't drive so fast.

33.3

2 do you think I should learn (to drive)?

3 do you think I should get another job?

4 do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

33.4

3 I think you should sell it.

4 I think she should have a holiday.

5 I don't think you should get married.

6 I don't think you should go to work

7 I think he should go to the doctor

8 I don't think we should stay there

33.5

འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆོག

I think everybody should have enough food.

3 I think people should drive carefully.

4. I don't think the police should carry guns

5 I think I should do more exercise

ཞེ་ཆ་ 34

34.1

2 have to do

3 has to read

4 have to speak

5 has to travel

34.2

2 have to go

3 had to buy

4 have to change

5 had to answer

34.4

2 doesn't have to wait.

3 didn't have to get up early.

4 doesn't have to work (so) hard.

5 don't have to leave now.

34.5

3 have to pay

4 had to borrow

5 must stop or have to stop

6 has to meet

7 must tell or have to tell

34.6

2 I have to go to work every day.

3 I have to write a letter tomorrow

4 I had to go the dentist yesterday.

ཞེ་ཆ་ 35

35. 1

2 would you like an apple

3 would you like some coffee? / .. a cup of coffee?

4 would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?

5 would you like a sandwich?

6 would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?

35.2

2 would you like to play tennis tomorrow?

3 would you like to see my holiday photographs?

4 would you like to go to a concert next, week?

5 would you like to borrow my umbrella?

35.3

2 do you like

3 2 would you like

4 would you like

5 would you like

6 I like

7 would you like

8 would you like

9 do you like

10 I'd like

ཞེ་ཆ་ 36

36.1

3 there's / there is a hospital.

4 there isn't a swimming pool.

5 there ate two cinemas.

6 there isn't a university.

7 there aren't any big hotels.

36.2

འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆོག

3 there is a university in ...

4 there are a lot of big shops

5 there isn't an airport.

6 there aren't many factories

36.3

2 there's / there is

3 is there

4 there are

5 are there

6 there isn't

7 is there

8 are there

There's / there is... there aren't

36.4

2-6

There are nine planets in the solar system.

There are fifteen players in a rugby team.

There are twenty – six letters in the English alphabet

There are thirty days in September

There are fifty states in the USA.

36.5

2 it's

3 there's

4 there's... is it

5 is there ... there's

6 it's

7 is there

ཞེ་ཆ་ 37

37.1

2 there was a carpet

3 there were three pictures

4 there was a small table

5 there were some flowers

6 there were some books

7 there was an armchair

8 there was a sofa

37.2

3 there was

4 was there

5 there weren't

6 there wasn't

7 were there

8 there wasn't



9 there was	6 it's dangerous to go out alone	4 can't she?
10 there weren't		5 were you?
37.3	ལྷོ་ཆོན་ 39	6 didn't you?
2 there are	39.1	7 is there?
3 there was	2 is 5 will	8 aren't you?
4 there's / there is	3 can 6 was	9 did you?
5 there's/ there has been	4 has	10 does she?
6 there was	39.2	11 won't you?
7 there will be	2'm not 5 isn't	12 isn't it?
8 there were ... there are	3 weren't 6 hasn't	40.3
9 there have been	4 haven't	2 aren't they
10 there will be (or there are)	39.3	3 wasn't she
ལྷོ་ཆོན་ 38	3 doesn't 6 does	4 haven't you
38.1	4 do 7 don't	5 don't you
2 it's cold	5 did 8 didn't	6 doesn't he
3 it's windy	39.4	7 won't you
4 It's sunny/ fine	འདི་ལྟར་བྱིས་ཆོག	40.4
5 it's snowing	2 I like sport but my sister doesn't	2 are you
6 it's cloudy.	3 I don't eat meat but Jenny does	6 didn't she
38.2	4 I'm American but my husband isn't	3 isn't she 7 was it
2 it's / it is	5 I haven't been to Japan but jenny has	4 can't you 8 doesn't she
3 is it	39.5	5 do you? 9 will you?
4 is it ... it's/ it is	2 wasn't 7 has	ལྷོ་ཆོན་ 41
5 it's / it is	3 are 8 do	41.1
6 is it	4 has 9 hasn't	2 either 5 either
7 is it	5 can't 10 will	3 too 6 either
8 it's/ it is	6 did 11 might	4 too 7 too
9 it's / it is	39.6	41.2
38.3	2 yes, I have. Or no, I haven't.	2 so am I.
2 how far is it from the hotel to the beach?	3 yes, I do. Or no, I don't.	3 so have I.
3 how far is it from New York to Washington?	4 yes, it is. Or no, it isn't.	4 so do I.
4 how far is it from your house to the airport?	5 yes, I am. Or no, I am not.	5 so will I.
38.4	6 yes, I do. Or no, I don't	6 so was I.
3 it 6 it	7 yes, I will. Or no, I won't.	7 neither can I.
4 there 7 there	8 yes, I have. Or no, I haven't.	8 neither did I.
5 it 8 it	9 yes, I did. Or no, I didn't.	9 neither have I.
38.5	10 yes, I was. Or no, I wasn't.	10 neither am I.
2 it's nice to see you again	ལྷོ་ཆོན་ 40	11 neither do I.
3 it's impossible to work in this office	40.1	41.3
4 It's easy to make friends.	2 do you? 5 do I?	1 so am I.
5 it's interesting to visit different places	3 didn't you? 6 did she?	2 so can I. or I can't.
	4 doesn't she?	3 neither am I. or I am.
	40.2	4 so do I. or I don't.
	3 have you?	5 neither do I. or I do.
		6 so did I. or I didn't.



7 neither have I . or I have.

8 neither do I . I do.

9 so am I . or I'm not.

10 neither have I . or I have.

11 neither did I . or I did.

12 so do I . or I don't.

ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 42

42.1

2 they aren't / they're not married.

3 I haven't had dinner.

4 it isn't cold today.

5 we won't be late.

6 you shouldn't go.

42.2

2 I don't like cheese.

3 they didn't understand.

4 he doesn't live here.

5 don't go away!

6 I didn't do the shopping.

42.3

2 they haven't arrived.

3 I didn't go to the bank.

4 he doesn't speak German.

5 we weren't angry.

6 he won't be pleased.

7 don't phone me tonight.

8 it didn't rain yesterday.

9 I couldn't hear them.

10 I don't believe you.

42.4

2 'm not/ am not

3 can't

4 doesn't

5 isn't/ 's not

6 don't ... haven't

7 don't

8 didn't

9 haven't

10 won't

11 didn't

12 weren't

42.5

3 he wasn't born in London.

4 he doesn't like London.

5 he'd like to live in the country.

6 he can drive.

7 he hasn't got a car.

8 he doesn't read newspapers.

9 he isn't interested in politics.

10 he watches TV most evenings.

11 he didn't watch TV last night,

12 he went out last night.

ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 43

43.1

3 were you late this morning.

4 has Ann got a key?

5 will you be here tomorrow?

6 is Paul going out this evening?

7 do you like your job?

8 does Linda live near here?

9 did you have a shower this morning?

43.2

2 do you use it a lot?

3 did you use it yesterday?

4 do you enjoy driving?

5 are you a good driver?

6 have you ever had an accident?

43.3

3 what are the children doing?

4 how is cheese made?

5 is your sister coming to the party?

6 why don't you tell the truth?

7 have your guests arrive yet?

8 what time does your train leave/

9 was your car damaged in the accident?

10 why didn't Ann go to work?

43.4

3 what are you reading?

4 what time did she go (to bed)?

5 when are they going?

6 where did you meet him?

7 where has she gone?

8 why can't you come (to the party)?

9 how much do you need?

10 why doesn't she like you?

11 how often does it rain?

12 when did you do the shopping?

ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 44

44.1

2 what fell off the shelf?

3 who wants to see me?

4 who took your umbrella?

5 what make you ill?

6 who is / who's coming?

44.2

3 who did you phone?

4 what happened last night?]

5 who knows the answer?

6 Who did the washing-up?

7 what did Jill do?

8 what woke you up?

9 who saw the accident?

10 who did you see?

11 who has got/ who's got your pen?

12 what does this word mean?

44.3

2 who phoned you?

What did she want?

3 who did you ask?

What did he say?

4 who got married?

Who told you?

5 who did you meet?

What did she tell you?

6 who won?

What did you do (after the game)?

7 who gave you a book?

What did Catherine give you?

ཕྱི་ཚུན་ 45

45.1

2 what are you looking for?

3 Who did you go to the cinema with?

4 What/ who was the film about?

5 who did you give the money to?

6 who was the book written by?

45.2

2 what are they looking at?

3 who is he writing to?

4 what are they talking about?

5 what is she listening to?

6 which bus are they waiting for?



45.3	2 how long does it take by car from Rome to Milan?	3 what Peter said
2 which hotel did you stay at?		4 why he went home early
3 which (football) team does he play for?	3 how long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?	5 what time the film begins
4 which school did you go to?	4 how long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?	6 how the accident happened
45.4		48.3
What is the food like?	47.2	2 are you
3 what are the people like?	འདི་ལྟར་བྱིས་ཆེད།	3 they are
4 what is the weather like?	2 it takes ... hours to fly from... to new York.	4 the museum is
45.5		5 do you want
2 What was the film like?	3 it takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ...	6 elephants eat
3 What were the lessons like?	4 it takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.	48.4
4 What was the hotel like?	5 it takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.	2 do you know if/ whether they are married?
ཐེ་ཆོན་ 46		3 do you know if / whether Sue knows Bill?
46.1	47.3	4 do you know if / whether George will be here tomorrow?
3 what colour is it?	2 how long did it take you to walk to the station/	5 do you know if/ whether he passed his exam?
4 what time did you get up?	3 who long did it take him to clean the windows?	48.5
5 what type of music do you like?	4 how long did it take you to learn to ski?	2 do you know where Paula is?
6 what kind of car do you want (to buy)?	5 how long did it take them to repair the car/	3 do you know if / whether she is working today?/ ... she's working today?
46.2	47.4	4 do you know what time she starts work?
2 which coat	2 it took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.	5 do you know if/ whether the shop are open tomorrow?
3 which film	3 it took me six months to learn to drive.	6 do you know where Sarah and Tim live?
4 which bus	4 it took Mark / him two hours to drive to London.	7 do you know if/ whether they went to Ann's party?
46.3	5 it took Linda a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.	48.6
3 which 8 who	6 it took me ... to ...	འདི་ལྟར་བྱིས་ཆེད།
4 what 9 what		2 do you know what time the bus leaves?
5 which 10 which	ཐེ་ཆོན་ 48	3 excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
6 what 11 what	48.1	4 I don't know what I'm going to do this evening.
7 which	2 I don't know where she is.	5 do you know if tom is working today?
46.4	3 I don't know how old it is.	
2 how far	4 I don't know when he'll be here.	ཐེ་ཆོན་ 49
3 how old	5 I don't know why he was angry.	49.1
4 how often	6 I don't know how long she has lived here.	2 she said (that) she was very busy.
5 how deep	48.2	
6 how long	2 where Susan works	
46.5		
2 how heavy is this box?		
3 how old are you?		
4 how much did you spend?		
5 how often do you watch TV?		
6 how far is it from Paris to Moscow?		
ཐེ་ཆོན་ 47		
47.1		



3 she said (that) she couldn't go to the party.

50-2
3 get

5 to send
6 walking

4 he said (that) he had to go out.

4 going

7 to lose

5 he said (that) he was learning Russian.

5 watch
6 flying

8 to help

6 she said (that) she didn't feel very well.

7 listening
8 eat

9 to go
10 watching / to watch

7 they said (that) they would be home late./ ... they'd be...

9 waiting
10 wear

11 to wait
12 raining

8 she said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she'd just come back...

11 doing ... staying
50.3

2 going / to go museums.

9 she said (that) she was going to buy a computer.

4 to go
5 rain

3 writing / go write letters.
4 to go (there)

10 they said (that) they hadn't got a key. / they said (that) they didn't have a key.

6 to leave
7 help
8 studying
9 to go

5 traveling by train
6 going to ... go eat at

49.2

10 wearing

51.3

2 she said (that) she wasn't hungry.

11 to stay

1 I enjoy cooking

3 he said (that) he needed it.

12 have

2 I don't like driving

4 she said (that) she didn't want to go.

13 having

3 if it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to have a picnic by the lake.

5 she said (that) I could have it.

14 to have

4 when I'm on holiday, I like to do very little.

6 he said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he'd send...

15 hear
16 go

5 I don't mind travelling alone but I prefer to travel with somebody.

7 Linda said (that) he had gone home./ ... he'd gone home.

17 listening
18 to make

6 I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

8 he said (that) he wanted to watch TV.

19 to know... tell
20 use

ཕྱི་ཚེན 52

52.1

9 she said (that) she was going to the cinema.

ཕྱི་ཚེན 51

2 I want you to listen carefully.

49.3

3 to see

3 I don't want you to be angry

3 said 7 said

4 so swim

4 do you want me to wait for you?

4 told 8 told

5 cleaning

5 I don't want you to phone me

5 tell 9 tell

6 to go

tonight

6 say 10 say

7 visiting

6 I want you to meet Sarah.

ཕྱི་ཚེན 50

52.2

50.1

10 waiting

2 a woman told me to turn left after the bridge

3 phone

11 to do

3 I advised him to go to the doctor

4 phone Paul

12 to speak

4 she asked me to help her.

5 to phone Paul

13 to ask

5 I told Tom to come back in ten minutes

6 to phone Paul

14 crying/ to cry

6 Paul let me use his phone

7 phone Paul

15 to work ... talking

7 I told her not to phone before 8 o'clock

8 to phone Paul

51.2

8 Ann's mother taught her to play the piano.

9 phone Paul

3 reading

10 phone Paul

4 to see



52.3	5 – (no preposition)	6 get old
2 to repeat	6 for	7 got better
3 wait	7 to	8 get nervous
4 to arrive	8 on ... to	55.4
5 to get	9 for	2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
6 go	10 on	3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
7 borrow	11 to	4 (འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚག) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.
8 to tell	12 – (no preposition)	55.5
9 to make (or to get)	13 on	2 got off
10 think	14 for	3 got our of
ཐོ་ཚན་ 53	15 on	4 got on
53.1	54.2	
2-4	2 went fishing	ཐོ་ཚན་ 56
I want to the café to meet a friend.	3 goes swimming	56.1
I went to the post office to get some stamps	4 going skiing	2 do 7 done
I went to the supermarket to buy some food.	5 go shopping	3 make 8 make
53.2	6 went jogging	4 made 9 making
2 to read the newspaper	54.3	5 did 10 do
3 to open this door.	2 to the bank	6 do 11 doing
4 to get some fresh air	3 shopping	56.2
5 to wake him up	4 to sleep	2 they're / they are doing (their) homework.
6 to see who it was	5 home	3 he's/ he is doing the shopping. Or he is shopping.
53.3	6 skiing	4 she's/ she is making a jacket.
(འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚག)	7 riding	5 they're/ they are doing an exam/ examination. (or ... taking an exam)
2 to talk to you now	8 for a walk	6 she's/ shè is doing exercises.
3 to tell her about the party.	9 on holiday ... to Portugal	7 she's / she is making a phone call. Or she's / she is phoning somebody.
4 to do some shopping..	ཐོ་ཚན་ 55	8 he's/ he is making the / his bed.
5 to buy car.	55.1	9 she's/ she is doing the washing- up. Or she is washing up./ she is doing the dishes. / she is washing thc dishes.
53.4	2 get your jacket	10 he's/ he is making a (shopping) list.
2 to 7 to	3 get a doctor	11 they're / they are making a film.
3 to 8 to	4 get a taxi	12 he's / he is taking a photograph.
4 for 9 for	5 get the job	56.3
5 to 10 to... for	6 get some milk	2 make 7 did
6 for	7 get a ticket	3 do 8 do
53.5	8 gets a good salary	4 done 9 making
2 for the film to begin	55.2	5 made 10 made
3 for it to arrive	2 getting dark	6 doing 11 make ... do
4 for you to tell me	3 getting married	
ཐོ་ཚན་ 54	4 getting ready	
54.1	5 getting late	
3 to	55.3	
4 to	2 get wet	
	3 got married	
	4 get angry	
	5 got lost	



ཞེ་ཚན་ 57

57.1

3 he hasn't got / he doesn't have

4 George had

5 have you got / do you have

6 we didn't have

7 she hasn't got/ she doesn't have

8 did you have

57.2

2 she's/ she is having a cup of tea.

3 he's / he is having a rest.

4 they're / they are having a mice time

5 they're they are having dinner

6 he's / he is having a bath

57.3

2 have a nice / good journey!

3 did you have a mice / good weekend?

4 did you have a nice / good game (of tennis)?

5 have a nice / good meal!

57.4

2 have something to eat

3 had a glass or water

4 have a walk

5 had an accident

6 have a look

ཞེ་ཚན་ 58

58.1

2 him5 him

3them 6 them

4 her 7 her

58.2

2 I ... them

3 he ... her

4 they ... us

5 we ... him

6 she ... them

7 they ... me

8 she ... you

58.3

2 I like him

3 I don't like it

4 do you like it?

5 I don't like her

6 do you like them?

58.4

2 him7 them

3 them 8 me

4 they 9 her

5 us 10 he ... it

6 she

58.5

2 can you give it to him?

3 can you give them to her?

4 can you give it to me?

5 can you give it to them?

6 can you give them to us?

ཞེ་ཚན་ 59

59.1

2 her hands

3 our hands

4 his hands

5 their hands

6 your hands

59.2

2 they live with their parents.

3 we live with our parents.

4 Julia lives with her parents.

5 I live with my parents.

6 John lives with his parents.

7 do you live with your parents?

8 most children live with their patents.

59.3

2 their 6 their

3 their 7 her

4 his 8 their

5 her

59.4

2 his 8 her

3 their 9 their

4 our 10 my

5 her 11 its

6 my 12 his ... his

7 your

59.5

2 my key

3 her husband

4 your coat

5 their homework

6 his name

7 our house

ཞེ་ཚན་ 60

60.1

2 mine 6 yours

3 ours 7 mine

4 hers 8 his

5 their

60.2

2 yours

3 my ... Mine

4 yours ... mine

5 her

6 my ... hers

7 their

8 ours

60.3

3 of hers

4 friends of ours

5 friend of mine

6 friend of his

7 friends or yours

60.4

2 whose camera is this? It's hers.

3 whose gloves are these? They're mine.

4 whose hat is this? It's his.

5 whose money is this? It's yours.

6 whose books are these? They're ours.

ཞེ་ཚན་ 61

61.1

2 yes, I know her but I can't remember her name.

3 yes, I know them but I can't remember their manes.

4 yes, I know you but I can't remember your name.

61.2

2 to stay with him at his house

3 to stay with them at their house

4 to stay with me at my house

5 to stay with her at her house



6 to stay with you at your house?
61.3
2 I give her my address and she gave me hers.
3 he gave me his address and I gave him mine.
4 we gave them our address and they gave us theirs.
5 she gave him her address and he gave her his.
6 you gave us your address and we gave you ours.
7 they gave you their address and you gave them yours.
61.4
2 them
3 him
4 our
5 yours
6 us
7 her
8 their
9 mine

ཞེ་ཚན་ 62

62.1
2 myself 6 himself
3 herself 7 yourself
4themselves8 yourselves
5 myself
62.2
2 when I saw him. he was by himself.
3 don't go out by yourself
4 I went to the cinema by myself
5 my sister lives by herself
6 many people live by themselves.
62.3
2 they can't see each other
3 they often write to each other
4 they don't know each other
5 they're / they are sitting next to each other.
6 they gave each other presents/ a present.
62.4
3 each other

4 yourselves
5 us
6 ourselves
7each other
8 each other
9 them
10 themselves

ཞེ་ཚན་ 63

63.1
3 Mary is Brian's wife
4 James is Julia's brother.
5 James is Daniel's uncle.
6 Julia is Paul's wife.
7 Mary is Daniel's grandmother.
8 Julia is James's sister.
9 Paul is Julia's husband.
10 Paul is Daniel's father.
11 Daniel is James's nephew.
63.2
2 Andy's 5 Diane's
3 David's 6 Alice's
4 Jane's

63.3
3 ok
4 Bill's phone number
5 my brother's job
6 ok
7 ok
8 Paula's favorite colour
9 your mother's birthday
10 my parents' house
11 ok
12 ok
13 Silvia's party
14 ok

ཞེ་ཚན་ 64

64.1
2 a 5 a 8 an
3 a 6 an 9 an
4 an 7 an
64.2
2 a vegetable
3 a game
4 a tool

5 a mountain
6 a planet
7 a fruit
8 a river
9 a flower
10 a musical instrument
64.3
2 he's a shop assistant
3 she's a photographer
4 she's a taxi driver
5 he's an electrician
6 she's a nurse
7 he's a private detective
8 I'm a / an ...
64.4
2-8
Tom never wears a hat
I can't ride a bicycle.
My brother is an artist
Barbara works in a bookshop.
Ann wants to learn a foreign language
Jim lives in an old house
This evening I'm going to a party

ཞེ་ཚན་ 65

65.1
2 boats
3 women
4 cities
5 umbrellas
6 addresses
7 knives
8 sandwiches
9 families
10 feet
11 holidays
12 potatoes
65.2
2 teeth 5 fish
3people 6 leaves
4 children
65.3
3 ... with a lot of beautiful trees.
4 ... with two men
5 ok
6 ... three children



7 most of my friends are students
8 he put on his pajamas...
9 ok
10 do you know many people ...
11 I like your trousers. Where did you
get them
12 ... full of tourists
13 ok
14 these scissors aren't ...
65.4
2 are 7 do
3 don't 8 are
4 watch 9 them
5 were 10 some
6 live

ཐེ་ཚན 66

66.1
3 a jug
4 milk
5 toothpaste
6 a toothbrush
7 an egg
8 money
9 a wallet
10 sand
11 a bucket
12 an envelope
66.2
3 ... a hat
4 ... a job?
5 ok
6 ... an apple ...
7 ... a party ...
8 ... a wonderful thing.
9 ... an island.
10 ... a key
11 ok
12 a good idea
13 ... a car?
14 ... a cup of coffee?
15 ok
16 ... an umbrella.

66.3
2 a piece of wood
3 a glass or water

4 a bar of chocolate
5 a cup of tea
6 a piece of paper
7 a bowl of soup
8 a loaf of bread
9 a jar of honey

ཐེ་ཚན 67

67.1
2 I bought a newspaper (or a paper),
some flowers (or bunch of flowers)
and a pen.
3 I bought some stamps, some
postcards and some bread (or a loaf of
bread).
4 I bought some toothpaste, some
soap (or a bar of soap) and a comb.
67.2
2 would you like some coffee? (or ...
a cup or coffee)
3 would you like a biscuit?
4 would you like some bread?(or ... a
piece of bread?/ a slice of bread?)
5 would you like a chocolate?
6 would you like some chocolate?
(or ... a piece of chocolate?)

67.3
2 some ... some
3 some
4 a ... some
5 an ... some
6 a ... a ... some
7 some
8 some
9 some ... a

67.4
2 eyes
3 hair
4 information
5 chairs
6 furniture
7 job
8 lovely weather

ཐེ་ཚན 68

68.1

3 a
4 the
5 an
6 the ... the
7 a ... a
8 a ... a
9 ... a student ... a journalist ... a flat
near the college ... the flat is ...
10 ... two children, a boy and a girl.
The boy is seven years old and the girl
is three ... in a factory ... hasn't got a
job ...
68.2
2 the airport
3 a cup
4 a nice picture
5 the radio
6 the floor
68.3
2 ... send me a postcard.
3 what is the name of ...
4 ... a very big country.
5 what is the largest ...
6 ... the colour of the carpet
7 ... a headache.
8 ... an old house near the station.
9 ... the name of the director of the
film ...

ཐེ་ཚན 69

69.1
3 ... the second floor.
4 ... the moon?
5 the best hotel in this town?
6 ok
7 ... the city centre
8 ... the end of may
9 ok
10 ... the first time I met her.
11 ok
12 what's the biggest city in the
world?
13 ok
14 my dictionary is on the top shelf on
the right.
15 we live in the country about five



miles from the nearest village.	7 the bank	20 money ... happiness
69.2	8 ok	ཞེ་ཚན་ 72
2 the same time	9 ok	
3 the same age	10 the city centre	72.1
4 the same colour	11 the station	3 Sweden
5 the same problem	12 ok	4 the Amazon
69.3	13 ok'	5 Asia
2 the guitar	14 ok	6 the Pacific
3 breakfast	15 the theatre	7 the Rhine
4 the radio	ཞེ་ཚན་ 71	8 Kenya
5 television / TV		9 the United States
6 the sea	71.1	10 the Andes
69.4	འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས་	11 Tokyo
2 the name	2 I don't like dogs.	12 the Alps
3 the sky	3 I don't mind museums.	13 the Red Sea
4 television	4 I love big cities.	14 Malta
5 the police	5 I like basketball.	15 the Bahamas
6 the capital	6 I love TV quiz shows.	72.2
7 lunch	7 I don't like loud music.	3 ok
8 the middle	8 I hate computer games.	4 the Philippines
ཞེ་ཚན་ 70	71.2	5 the south of France
	འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས་	6 the regal cinema
70.1	2 I'm not interested in politics	7 ok
2 the cinema	3 I'm interested in sport.	8 the museum or modern art
3 hospital	4 I don't know much about art.	9 ok
4 the airport	5 I don't know anything about astronomy.	10 Belgium is smaller than the Netherlands.
5 home	6 I know a little about economics.	11 the Mississippi ... the Nile
6 prison	71.3	12 the National gallery
70.2	3 friends	13 the park hotel in Hudson road
3 school	4 parties	14 ok
4 the station	5 the shops	15 the Rocky Mountains are in North America.
5 home	6 the milk	16 ok
6 bed	7 milk	17 the Panama Canal joins the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean.
7 the post office	8 football	18 the United States
70.3	9 computers	19 the west of Ireland
2 the cinema	10 the water	20 ok
3 go to bed	11 cold water	ཞེ་ཚན་ 73
4 go to prison	12 the salt	
5 go to the dentist	13 the people	73.1
6 go to university / college	14 vegetables	2 that house
7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital	15 the children	3 these postcards
70.4	16 the words	4 those birds
3 the doctor	17 photographs	5 this seat
4 ok	18 the photographs	
5 ok	19 English ... international business	
6 ok		



6there isn't any tea in the pot

7 there aren't any buses today

8 tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

76.2

ཕྱི་ཚེན 75

2 any 8 no

3 any 9 any

4 no 10 no

5 any 11 none

6 no 12 any

7 any

76.3

2 no money

3 any questions

4 no friends

5 no difference

ཕྱི་ཆར་ 74

6 any furniture

7 no answer

8 any heating

9 any photographs... no film

76.4

འདི་ལྟར་བྱས་ཆོག

2 three

3 two cups

4 none

5 none'

ཕྱེ་ཆོན་ 77

ཐེ་ཆོན་ 77

77.1

2 there's nobody in the office.

3 I've got nothing to do

4 there's nothing on TV

5 there was no – one at home.

6 we found nothing.

77.2

2 there wasn't anybody on the bus.

3 I haven't got anything to read

4 there's nothing on TV

5 there was no – one at home

ཐེ་ཆན 76

6 we found nothing

77.2

2 there wasn't anybody on the bus.

3 I haven't got anything to read.

5 she didn't hear anything.

6 we haven't got anything for dinner.



77.3	5 somebody / someone	8 everything
3a nothing	6 something	79.5
4a nobody./ no – one.	7 anybody/ anyone... nobody/ no	2 is 5 has
5a nobody ./ no – one	–one	3 has 6 was
6a nothing.	8 anything	4 likes 7 makes
7a nothing	9 nobody/ no- one	ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 80
8a nobody. / no – one	10 anybody/ anyone	
	11 nothing	80.1
3b I don't want anything.	12 anywhere	3 some 10 most
4b I didn't meet anybody / anyone	13 somewhere	4 most of 11 most of
5b nobody / no – one know the answer.	14 anything	5 most 12 some
6b I didn't buy anything	15 anybody/ anyone	6 any of 13 all or all of
7b nothing happened	78.4	7 all or all or 14 some of
8b nobody/ no – one was late.	2 anything to eat	8 none of 15 most of
77.4	3 nothing to do	9 any of
3 anything	4 anywhere to sit	80.2
4 nobody/ no- one	5 something to drink	2 all of them
5 nothing	6 nowhere to stay	3 some of them
6 anything	7 something to read	4 none of them
7 anybody/ anyone	8 somewhere to play	5 most of them
8 nothing	ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 79	6 none of it
9 anything		80.3
10 anything	79.1	3 some people...
11 nobody/ no-one	2 every day	4 some of the questions ... or some questions...
12 anything	3 every time	5 ok
13 nothing	4 every room	6 all insects
14 nobody/ no –one ... anybody / anyone	5 every word	7 ok (or ... all of these books)
ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 78	79.2	8 most of the students... or most students...
	2 every day	9 ok
78.1	3 all day	10 ... most of the night
2 something	4 every day	ཕྱི་ཚེན་ 81
3 somewhere	5 all day	
4 somebody/ someone	6 every day	81.1
78.2	7 all day	3 both 9 neither
2a nowhere	79.3	4 neither 10 either of
3a nothing	2 every 6 all	5 neither 11 both
4a nobody./ no-one	3 all 7 every	6 both 12 neither of
2b I'm not going anywhere	4 all 8 all	7 either 13 both
3b I don't want anything	5 every 9 every	8 neither of 14 either of
4b I'm not looking for anybody/ anyone.	79.4	81.2
78.3	2 everything	2 both windows are open.
3 anything	3 everybody/ everyone	3 neither man is wearing a hat.
4 anything	4 everything	4 both men have (got) cameras. Or ... are carrying cameras.
	5 everywhere	
	6 everybody/ everyone	
	7 everywhere	



5 both buses go to the airport. Or ...
are going to the airport.

6 neither answer is right.

81.3

3 both of them are students.

4 neither of them has (got) a car.

5 both of them live in London.

6 both of them like cooking.

7 neither of them can play the piano.

8 both of them read newspapers.

9 neither of them is interested in sport.

ཞེ་ཆ་ 82

82.2

2 many 8 many

3 much 9 how many

4 many 10 how much

5 many 11 how much

6 much 12 how many

7 much

82.2

2 much time

3 many countries

4 many people

5 much luggage

6 many times

82.3

2 a lot of interesting things.

3 a lot of accidents

4 a lot of fun

5 a lot of traffic

82.4

3 a lot of snow

4 ok

5 a lot of money

6 ok

7 ok

8 a lot

82.5

3 she plays tennis a lot.

4 he doesn't use his car much. (or ... a lot)

5 he doesn't go out much. (or ... a lot.)

6 she travels a lot

ཞེ་ཆ་ 83

83.1

2 a few

5 a little

3 a little

6 a few

4 a few

83.2

2 a little milk

3 a few days

4 a little Russian

5 a few friends

6 a few times

7 a few chairs

8 a little fresh air

83.3

2 very little coffee

3 very little rain

4 very few hotels

5 very little time

6 very few people

7 very little work

83.4

2 a few

5 few

3 a little

6 a little

4 little

7 little

83.5

2 ... a little lunch

3 ... a few things

4 ok

5 ... a few questions

6 ... few people

ཞེ་ཆ་ 84

84.1

2 I like that green jacket.

3 do you like classical music?

4 I had a wonderful holiday.

5 we went to a Chinese restaurant.

84.2

2 black clouds

3 long holiday

4 hot water

5 fresh air

6 sharp knife

7 dangerous job

84.3

2 it looks new

3 I feel ill.

4 you look surprised

5 they smell nice

6 it tastes horrible

84.4

2 it doesn't look new.

3 you don't sound American

4 I don't feel cold

5 they don't look heavy

6 it doesn't taste good

ཞེ་ཆ་ 85

85.1

2 badly

5 fast

3 quietly

6 dangerously

4 angrily

85.2

2 come quickly

3 work hard

4 sleep well

5 win easily

6 think carefully

7 know her very well

8 explain things very clearly / well

85.3

2 angry

7 suddenly

3 slowly

8 quite

4 slow

9 badly

5 careful

10 nice

6 hard

85.4

2 well

5 well

3 good

6 good ... good

4 well

ཞེ་ཆ་ 86

86.1

2 bigger

3 slower

4 more expensive

5 higher

6 more dangerous

86.2

2 stronger

3 happier



4 more modern	is.	not as much as A or but less (money)
5 more important	3 you work harder than him. / ... than	than A
6 better	I do	6 C works harder than A but not as
7 larger	4 you watch TV more than him. / ...	hard as B
8 more serious	than he does.	88.2
9 prettier	5 you're better cook than me. / ...	2 your room isn't as big as mine./ ...
10 more crowded	than I am. Or you cook better than me.	as my room
86.3	/ ... than I do.	3 I didn't get up as early as you. / ...
2 hotter / warmer	6 you know more people than us. / ...	as you did
3 more expensive	than we do.	4 they didn't play as well as us./ ... as
4 worse	7 you've got more money than them.	we did.
5 further	/ ... than they have	5 you haven't been here as long as
6 more difficult or harder	8 you can run faster than me./ ... than	me./ ... as I have
86.4	I can.	6 he isn't as nervous as her./ ... as she
3 taller	9 you've been here longer than	is.
4 harder	her./ ... than she has.	88.3
5 more comfortable	10 you got up earlier than them. / ...	2 as 6 than
6 better	than they did.	3 than 7 as
7 nicer	11 you were more surprised than him.	4 than 8 than
8 heavier	/ than he was.	5 as
9 more interested	87.3	88.4
10 warmer	2 Jack's mother is much younger than	2 Julia lives in the same street as
11 better	his father.	Caroline.
12 bigger	3 my camera cost a bit more than	3 Julia got up at the same time as
13 more beautiful	yours./ than your camera. Or my	Andrew
14 sharper	camera was a bit more expensive	4 Andrew's car is the same colour as
15 more polite	than...	Caroline's

ཐེ་ཆོན་ 87

- 87.1
- 3 Liz is taller than Ben
- 4 Liz starts work earlier than Ben
- 5 Ben works harder than Liz
- 6 Ben has got more money than Liz
- 7 Liz is better driver than Ben
- 8 Ben is more patient than Liz
- 9 Ben is a better dancer than Liz
- / Ben dances better than Liz
- 10 Liz is more intelligent than Ben
- 11 Liz speaks French better than Ben.
- / Liz speaks better French than Ben. /
- Liz's French is better than Ben's
- 12 Ben goes to the cinema more than
- Liz. / ... more often than Liz.
- 87.2
- 2 you're older than her. / ... than she

ཐེ་ཆོན་ 88

- 88.1
- 2 A is longer than B but not as long as
- C
- 3 C is heavier than A but not as heavy
- as B
- 4 A is older than C but not as old as B
- 5 B has got more money than C but

ཐེ་ཆོན་ 89

- 89.1
- 2 C is longer than A
- D is the longest
- B is the shortest
- 3 D is younger than C
- B is the youngest
- C is the oldest
- 4 D is more expensive than
- A
- C is the most expensive
- A is the cheapest
- 5 A is better than C
- A is the best
- D is the worst
- 89.2
- 2 the happiest day
- 3 the best film



4 the most popular singer
5 the worst mistake
6 the prettiest village
7 the coldest day
8 the most boring person
89.3
2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world
3-6
Alaska is the largest state in the USA
Brazil is the largest country in south America
Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system
The Nile is the longest river in Africa.
/ ... in the world.

ཞེ་ཚན་ 90

90.1
2 enough chairs
3 enough paint
4 enough wind
90.2
2 the car isn't big enough
3 his legs aren't long enough
4 he isn't strong enough
90.3
3 old enough
4 enough time
5 big enough
6 cat enough
7 enough fruit
8 tired enough
9 practise enough
90.4
2 sharp enough to cut
3 warm enough to have
4 enough bread to make
5 well enough to win
6 enough time to read

ཞེ་ཚན་ 91

91.1
2 too heavy
3 too low
4 too fast

5 too big
6 too crowded
91.2
3 enough 8 enough
4 too many 9 too
5 too 10 too many
6 enough 11 too much
7 too much
91.3
3 it's too far
4 it's too expensive
5 it isn't / it's not big enough
6 it was too difficult
7 it isn't good enough
8 I'm too busy
9 it was too long
91.4
2 too early to go to bed
3 too young to get married
4 too dangerous to go out at night
5 too late to phone Ann (now)
6 too surprised to say anything

ཞེ་ཚན་ 92

92.1
3 I like this picture very much.
4 Tom started his new job last week
5 ok
6 Jane bought a present for her friend.
Or Jane bought her friend a present
7 I drink three cups of coffee every day
8 ok
9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother
92.2
2 I wrote two letters this morning
3 Paul passed the exam easily
4 Ann doesn't speak French very well
5 I did a lot of work yesterday
6 do you know London well?
7 we enjoyed the party very much
8 I explained the problem carefully
9 we met some friends at the airport
10 did you buy that jacket in England?
11 we do the same thing every day

12 I don't like football very much
92.3
2 I arrived at the hotel early
3 Julia goes to Italy every year
4 we have lived here since 1988
5 Sue was born in London in 1960
6 Paul didn't go to work yesterday
7 Ann went to the bank yesterday afternoon
8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning
9 Barbara is going to university in October
10 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning
11 my parents have been to the United States many times
12 I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night
13 are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
14 I took the children to school this morning.

ཞེ་ཚན་ 93

93.1
2 he always get up early
3 he's/ he is never late for work
4 he sometimes gets angry
5 he often goes swimming
6 he's / he is usually at home in the evenings.
93.2
2 Susan is always polite
3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
4 Jill has just started a new job.
5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6 the bus isn't usually late.
7 I don't often ear fish.
8 I will never forget what you said.
9 have you ever lost your passport?
10 do you still work in the same place?
11 they always stay in the same hotel.
12 Diane doesn't usually work on



Saturdays.	3 have you got your (exam) results yet?	4 on 12 in
13 is Tina already here?	/ have you had your ... / have you	5 in 13 on
14 what do you usually have for breakfast?	received your...	6 in 14 on
15 I can never remember his name.	4 have you decided where to go yet?/	7 on 15 at
93.3	do you know where you're going yet? ·	8 on 16 at
2 yes, and also speak French.	94.4	9 at 17 at
3 yes, and I'm also hungry.	3 she's / she has already gone/ left.	10 on 18 in
4 yes, and I've also been to Ireland.	4 I've already got one. / I already have	96.2
5 yes, and I also bought some books.	one.	2 on 11 at
93.4	5 I've/ I have already paid (it).	3 at 12 on
1 they both play football. They're / they are both students.	6 he already knows.	4 in 13 in
They've both got cars. / they both have cars.	ཐེ་ཚན་ 95	5 in 14 at
2 they are / they're all married they were all born in England they all live in new York.	95.1	6 in 15 in
	2 he gave it to Gary.	7 on 16 on
	3 he gave them to Sarah.	8 on 17 in
	4 he gave it to his sister.	9 in 18 at
	5 he gave them to Robert.	10 at 19 at
	6 he gave it to a neighbor.	96.3
	95.2	2 on Friday
	2 I gave Joanna a plant.	3 on Monday
	3 I gave Richard some gloves / a pair of gloves.	4 at 4 o'clock on Thursday / or Thursday at 4 o'clock
	4 I gave Diane some chocolates a box of chocolates	5 on Saturday evening
	5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.	6 at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30
	6 I gave Kevin a pen.	96.4
	95.3	2 I'll phone you in three days.
	2 can you lend me an umbrella?	3 my exam is in two weeks.
	3 can you give me your address?	4 tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.
	4 can you lend me ten pounds?	96.5
	5 can you send me some information?	3 in
	6 can you show me the letter?	4 – (no preposition)
	7 can you get me some stamps?	5 – (no preposition)
	95.4	6 in
	2 lend you some money	7 at
	3 send the letter to me	8 – (no preposition)
	4 buy you a present	9 – (no preposition)
	5 pass me the sugar	10 on
	6 give it to her	11 in
	7 the policeman my identity card	12 at
	ཐེ་ཚན་ 96	
	96.1	97.1
	3 at 11 at	2 Alex lived in Canada until 1990
		3 Alex has lived in England since

ཐེ་ཚན་ 97



1990	7 while	14 at
4 Alice lived in France until 1991	8 for	15 on the wall in the living room
5 Alice has lived in Switzerland since 1991	9 during	ཕྱི་ཆ་ལྟ 100
6 Carols worked in a hotel from 1990 to 1993.	10 while	
7 Carol has worked in a restaurant since 1993.	98.3	100.1
8 Gerry was a teacher from 1983 to 1989	2 eating	2 at the airport.
9 Gerry has been a salesman since 1989.	3 answering	3 in bed
11 Alex has lived in England for Years.	4 having / taking	4 on a ship
12 Alice has lived in Switzerland for years.	5 finishing / doing	5 in the sky
13 Carol worked in a hotel for three years.	6 going / traveling	6 at a party
14 Carol has worked in a restaurant for years.	98.4	7 at the doctor's
15 Gerry was a teacher for six years.	2 John worked in a bookshop for two years after leaving school.	8 on the second floor
16 Gerry has been a salesman for years.	3 before going to sleep, I read a few pages of my book.	9 at work
	4 after walking for three hours, we were very tired.	10 on a plane
	5 let's have a cup of coffee before going out.	11 in a taxi
	ཕྱི་ཆ་ལྟ 99	12 at a wedding.
	99.1	100.2
97.2	2 in the box	2 in 9 in
2 until 9 Since	3 on the box	3 in 10 in
3 for 10 until	4 on the wall	4 at 11 on
4 Since 11 for	5 at the bus stop	5 at 12 on
5 until 12 until	6 in the field	6 in 13 at
6 for 13 Since	7 on the balcony	7 at 14 in
7 for 14 for	8 in the pool	8 at 15 on
8 until	9 at the window	ཕྱི་ཆ་ལྟ 101
	10 on the ceiling	
ཕྱི་ཆ་ལྟ 98	11 on the table	101.1
	12 at the table	2 to 6 to
98.1	99.2	3 in 7 to
2 after lunch	2 in	4 to 8 in
3 before the end	3 on	5 in
4 during the course	4 in	101.2
5 before they went to Australia	5 on	3 to
6 during the night	6 at	4 to
7 while you are waiting	7 in	5 at home To work
8 after the concert	8 in	6 at
98.2	9 at	7 - (no preposition)
3 while	10 at	8 to
4 for	11 in	9 at
5 while	12 at	10 At restaurant ... to the hotel
6 during	13 on	101.3
		2 to
		3 to
		4 in
		5 to
		6 to



7 at	2 the fountain is in front of the theatre	4 on the phone
8 to	3 the bank / bookshop is opposite the	5 on television
9 to	theatre. Or Paul's office is opposite	104.2
10 at	the theatre. Or the theatre is	2 by
11 at	opposite ...	3 with
12 to Mary's house ... home	4 the bank / bookshop / supermarket is	4 about
13 – (no preposition)	next to ...	5 on
14 study at ... go to	5 Paul's office is above the bookshop.	6 by
101.4	6 the bookshop is between the bank	7 at
1 to	and the supermarket.	8 on
2 – (no preposition)		9 with
3 at		10 about grammar by Vera P. bull
4 in		104.3
5 to	103.1	1 with 9 at
6 – (no preposition)	2 go under the bridge.	2 without 10 by
101.5	3 go up the hill.	3 by 11 about
Example answers:	4 go down the steps.	4 about 12 by
2 to work	5 go along this street.	5 at 13 on
3 at work	6 go into the hotel.	6 by 14 with
4 to Canada	7 go past the hotel.	7 on 15 by
5 to parties	8 go out of the hotel.	8 with 16 by
6 at a friend's house.	9 go over the bridge.	
	10 go through the park.	
	103.2	
	2 off	105.1
	3 over	2 in
	4 out or	3 to
	5 across	4 at
	6 round / around	5 with
	7 through	6 of
	8 on	105.2
	9 round / around	2 at
	10 into the house through a window.	3 to
	103.3	4 about
	1 out or	5 of
	2 round / around	6 of
	3 in	7 from
	4 from here to the airport	8 in
	5 round / around	9 of
	6 on/ over	10 about
	7 over	11 of
	8 out of	12 for getting angry with you
		105.3
		2 interested in going
		3 good at getting
		4 fed up with waiting
		5 sorry for waking

ཐེ་ཚན 103

ཐེ་ཚན 102

ཐེ་ཚན 105

ཐེ་ཚན 104



105.4

2 Sue walked past me without speaking.

3 don't anything without asking me first.

4 I went out without locking the door.

105.5

འདྲི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས།

2 I'm afraid of the dark.

3 I'm not very good at drawing

4 I'm not interested in cars.

5 I'm fed up with living in London.

ཐེ་ཚན་ 106

106.1

2 to 5 at 3 for 6 for

4 to

106.2

2 to 3 to' 4 for 5 to 6 of/ about

7 for 8 on 9 to 10 for

11 to 12 - (no preposition)

13 to 14 on 15 of/ about

106.3

1 at 4 after

2 after 5 at

3 for 6 for

106.4

འདྲི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས།

3 it depends on the programmer.

4 it depends (on) what it is.

5 it depends on the weather.

6 it depends (on) how much you want.

ཐེ་ཚན་ 107

107.1

2 went in

3 looked up

4 rode off

5 turned round / around or looked round / around

6 got off

7 sat down

8 got out

107.2

2 away/ out

3 round / around

4 going out ... be back

5 down

6 over

7 back

8 in

9 up

10 going away ... coming back

107.3

2 hold on

3 slowed down

4 takes off

5 get on

6 speak up

7 broken down

8 fall over / fall down

9 carried on

10 gave up

ཐེ་ཚན་ 108

108.1

2 she took off her hat or she took her hat off.

3 he put down his bag. Or he put his bag down

4 she picked up the magazine. Or she picked the magazine up.

5 she put on his sunglasses. Or he put his sunglasses on.

6 she turned off the tap. Or she turned the tap off.

108.2

2 he put his jacket on. He put it on.

3 she took off her glasses. She took them off.

4 put your pens down. Put them down.

5 they gave the money back. They gave it back.

6 I turned off the lights. I turned them off.

108.3

2 take it back

3 picked them up

4 switched it off

5 bring them back

108.4

3 I knocked over a glass / I knocked a

glass over

4 look it up

5 throw them away

6 fill it in

7 tried on a pair of shoes / tried a pair of shoes on

8 showed me round (or around)

9 gave it up or gave up (without it)

10 put out your cigarette/ put your cigarette out

ཐེ་ཚན་ 109

109.1

3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.

4 I wanted to phone you but I didn't have your number.

5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.

6 I usually drive to work but I went by bus this morning.

7 do you want me to come with you or shall I wait here?

109.2

འདྲི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཚུགས།

2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.

3 but it was closed.

4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.

5 because there was a lot of traffic / because the traffic was bad.

6 Sue said goodbye. got into her car and drove off / away.

109.3

Example answers:

3 I went to the cinema but the film wasn't very good.

4 I went to a café and met some friends of mine.

5 there was a film on television, so I watched it.

6 I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn't sleep.

ཐེ་ཚན་ 110



110.1

- 2 when I'm tired, I like to watch TV.
3 when I phoned her, there was no answer.
4 when I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.
5 when the programmer ended, I switched off the TV.
6 when I arrived at the hotel, there were no rooms.

110.2

- 2 when they heard the news
3 they went to live in New Zealand
4 while they were away
5 before they came here
6 somebody broke into the house
7 they didn't believe me

110.3

- 2 I finish 3 it's 4 I'll be ... she leaves 5 stops 6 we'll come ... we're 7 I come ... I'll bring
8 I'm 9 I'll give ... I go

110.4

- འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆེད།
2 you finish your work?
3 I'll write some letters.
4 you get ready.
5 I won't have much free time.
6 I come back?

ཐེ་ཚན་ 111

111.1

- 2 if you pass the exam, you'll get a certificate.
3 if you fail the exam, you can do it again.
4 if you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it away.
5 if you want those pictures, you can have them.
6 if you're busy now, we can talk later.
7 if you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
8 if you need money, I can lend you some.

111.2

- 2 I give 3 is 4 I'll phone
5 I'll be ... get
6 will you go ... they invite
111.3
འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ཆེད།
3 ... the water is dirty.
4 ... you'll feel better in the morning.
5 ... you're not watching it.
6 ... she doesn't study.
7 ... I'll go and see Chris.
8 ... the weather is good.

111.4

- 2 when 3 if 4 if 5 if
6 when 7 if 8 when ... if

ཐེ་ཚན་ 112

112.1

- 3 wanted 4 had 5 was / were
6 didn't enjoy 7 could 8 spoke
9 didn't have

112.2

- 3 I'd go / I would go
4 she know 5 we had
6 you won 7 I wouldn't stay
8 we lived 9 it would be

10 the salary was / were

11 I wouldn't know

12 would you change

112.3

- 2 I'd watch it / I would watch it
3 we had some pictures on the wall
4 the air would be cleaner
5 every day was / were the same
6 I'd be bored / I would be bored
7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
8 we would / could buy a bigger house

112.4

Example answers:

- 2 I'd go to Antarctica
3 I didn't have any friends
4 I had enough money
5 I'd call the police
6 there were no guns

ཐེ་ཚན་ 113

113.1

- 2 a butcher is person who sells meat.
3 a musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4 a patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
5 a dentist is a person who looks after your teeth.
6 a fool is a person who is very stupid.
7 a genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8 a liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

113.2

- 2 the woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3 most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
4 the policeman who stopped out car wasn't very friendly.

113.3

- 2 who 3 which 4 which
5 who 6 which 7 who
8 who 9 which
That is also correct in all these sentences.

113.4

- 3 ... a machine that / which makes coffee.
4 ok (which is also correct)
5 ... people who / that never stop talking.
6 ok (who is also correct)
7 ok (that is also correct)
8 ... the sentences that / which are wrong.

ཐེ་ཚན་ 114

114.1

- 2 I've lost the pen you gave me.
3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
4 where are the flowers I gave you?
5 I didn't believe the story he told us.
6 how much were the oranges you



bought?

114.2

2 the meal you cooked was excellent.

3 the shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.

4 the people we invited to dinner didn't come.

114.3

2 who are the people you spoke to?

3 did you find the keys you were looking for?

4 the house they live in is too small for them.

5 the map I looked at wasn't very clear.

6 I fell off the chair I was sitting on.

7 the bus we were waiting for was very late.

8 who is the man Linda is dancing with?

114.4

2 what's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?

3 do you like the village where you live?

4 how big is the factory where you work?